



Junos[®] OS

Authentication and Integrated User Firewalls Feature Guide for Security Devices



Modified: 2017-05-04

Juniper Networks, Inc.
1133 Innovation Way
Sunnyvale, California 94089
USA
408-745-2000
www.juniper.net

Juniper Networks, Junos, Steel-Belted Radius, NetScreen, and ScreenOS are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. The Juniper Networks Logo, the Junos logo, and JunosE are trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Junos[®] OS Authentication and Integrated User Firewalls Feature Guide for Security Devices
Copyright © 2017, Juniper Networks, Inc.
All rights reserved.

The information in this document is current as of the date on the title page.

YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. Junos OS has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

The Juniper Networks product that is the subject of this technical documentation consists of (or is intended for use with) Juniper Networks software. Use of such software is subject to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement ("EULA") posted at <http://www.juniper.net/support/eula.html>. By downloading, installing or using such software, you agree to the terms and conditions of that EULA.

Table of Contents

	About the Documentation	xxi
	Documentation and Release Notes	xxi
	Supported Platforms	xxi
	Using the Examples in This Manual	xxii
	Merging a Full Example	xxii
	Merging a Snippet	xxiii
	Documentation Conventions	xxiii
	Documentation Feedback	xxv
	Requesting Technical Support	xxvi
	Self-Help Online Tools and Resources	xxvi
	Opening a Case with JTAC	xxvi
Part 1	Overview	
Chapter 1	Introduction to User Authentication	3
	Understanding User Authentication for Security Devices	3
Part 2	Configuring Firewall User Authentication	
Chapter 2	Understanding Firewall Authentication	7
	Firewall User Authentication Overview	7
	Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication	9
Chapter 3	Configuring Encrypted Files Using SSL Proxy	11
	SSL Proxy Overview	11
	Supported Ciphers in Proxy Mode	13
	Server Authentication	14
	Trusted CA List	15
	Root CA	16
	Client Authentication	16
	Whitelists	16
	Dynamic Resolution of Domain Names	16
	Session Resumption	16
	Session Renegotiation	17
	SSL Proxy Logs	17
	Leveraging Dynamic Application Identification	18
	Logical Systems Support	19
	Limitations	19
	Configuring SSL Proxy	21
	SSL Proxy Configuration Overview	21
	Configuring a Root CA Certificate	22
	Configuring a CA Profile Group	24

	Configuring a Trusted CA Profile	25
	Importing a Root CA Certificate into a Browser	26
	Applying an SSL Proxy Profile to a Security Policy	27
	Creating a Whitelist of Exempted Destinations	28
	Configuring SSL Proxy Logging	30
	Configuring Ciphers	31
	Exporting Certificates to a Specified Location	31
	Ignoring Server Authentication	31
	Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy	32
Chapter 4	Configuring Pass-Through Authentication	35
	Understanding Pass-Through Authentication	35
	Example: Configuring Pass-Through Authentication	37
	Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Pass-Through Authentication	43
Chapter 5	Configuring Web Authentication	51
	Understanding Web Authentication	51
	Example: Configuring Web Authentication	53
	Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Web Authentication	60
Chapter 6	Configuring External Authentication Servers	67
	Understanding External Authentication Servers	67
	Understanding SecurID User Authentication	68
	Example: Configuring RADIUS and LDAP User Authentication	68
	Example: Configuring SecurID User Authentication	73
	Example: Deleting the SecurID Node Secret File	76
	Enabling LDAP Authentication with TLS/SSL for Secure Connections	78
Chapter 7	Configuring Client Groups	81
	Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication	81
	Example: Configuring Local Users for Client Groups	81
Chapter 8	Customizing the Firewall Authentication Banner	85
	Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization	85
	Example: Customizing a Firewall Authentication Banner	85
Part 3	Configuring Infranet Authentication	
Chapter 9	Configuring UAC in a Junos OS Environment	91
	Understanding UAC in a Junos OS Environment	91
	Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment (CLI Procedure)	93
Chapter 10	Establishing Communications Between Devices	95
	Understanding Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance	95
	Understanding Communications Between Junos OS Enforcer and a Cluster of IC Series UAC Appliances	96
	Configuring Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance (CLI Procedure)	96

Chapter 11	Configuring Policy Enforcement	99
	Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement	99
	Configuring Junos OS Enforcer Failover Options (CLI Procedure)	100
	Testing Junos OS Enforcer Policy Access Decisions Using Test-Only Mode (CLI Procedure)	101
	Verifying Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement	102
	Displaying IC Series UAC Appliance Authentication Table Entries from the Junos OS Enforcer	102
	Displaying IC Series UAC Appliance Resource Access Policies from the Junos OS Enforcer	102
Chapter 12	Classifying Traffic with User Roles	103
	Understanding Unified Access Control	103
	Acquiring User Role Information from an Active Directory Authentication Server	103
Chapter 13	Configuring Endpoint Security	121
	Understanding Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer	121
	Configuring Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer	122
Chapter 14	Configuring IPsec	123
	Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Implementations Using IPsec	123
	Example: Configuring the Device as a Junos OS Enforcer Using IPsec (CLI)	124
Chapter 15	Configuring Captive Portal	133
	Understanding the Captive Portal on the Junos OS Enforcer	133
	Understanding Captive Portal Configuration on the Junos OS Enforcer	135
	Understanding the Captive Portal Redirect URL Options	135
	Example: Creating a Captive Portal Policy on the Junos OS Enforcer	136
Part 4	Configuring Integrated User Firewall	
Chapter 16	Understanding Integrated User Firewall	143
	Overview of Integrated User Firewall	143
	Integrated User Firewall and Authentication Sources	143
	Benefits of Integrated User Firewall	144
	How the Integrated User Firewall Works	144
	Deployment Scenario for User Firewall Integration with Windows Active Directory	145
	Limitations	146
	Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables	146
	Active Directory Authentication as an Authentication Source	147
	Active Directory Authentication Tables	147
	State Information for Active Directory Authentication Table Entries	149
	Active Directory Authentication Table Management	150
	Timeout Interval for Table Entries	151

	LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall	152
	Role of LDAP in Integrated User Firewall	152
	LDAP Server Configuration and Base Distinguished Name	153
	LDAP's Authentication Method	153
	LDAP Server's Username, Password, and Server Address	153
	Caching and Calculation of User-to-Group Mappings	153
	Updating Group Information in the Authentication Entry Table	154
	LDAP Server Status and Statistics	154
	Active Directory Autodiscovery	154
	Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall	155
	Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Use Web-Redirect for Unauthenticated and Unknown Users	164
	Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Use Web-Redirect-to-HTTPS for Unauthenticated and Unknown Users	167
	Understanding SRX Series Assured Captive Portal Support for Unauthenticated Browser Users	171
Chapter 17	Managing Event Logs	175
	Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller	175
	Windows Management Instrumentation Client	175
	WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller	176
	Specifying IP Filters to Limit IP-to-User Mapping	176
	Event Log Verification and Statistics	176
	Using Firewall Authentication as an Alternative to WMIC	177
	WMIC Limitations	177
	Firewall Authentication as a Backup Method for IP Address-to-User Mappings	177
	Understanding Integrated User Firewall Domain PC Probing	178
	Overview of Domain PC Probing	178
	Probing Domain PCs for User Information	178
	Probe Response	179
	Probe Configuration	180
	Probe Rate and Statistics	180
Chapter 18	Logging User Identity Information Based on Zones	183
	Understanding How to Include User Identity Information in the Session Log File Based on the Source Zone	183
	Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Write User Identity to the Session Log Based On the Source Zone	184

Chapter 19	Configuring Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication for Access Control	191
	Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information	191
	Why Use Device Identity Information to Control Access to Your Network . . .	191
	Background	192
	Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User	
	Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature	194
	Device Identity	194
	Device Identity Profile Contents	194
	Predefined Device Identity Attributes	196
	Characteristics of Device Identity Profiles, and Attributes and Target	
	Scaling	197
	Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries	198
	The Device Identity Authentication Table	199
	Why the Device Identity Authentication Table Content Changes	199
	Security Policy Matching and Device Identity Profiles	202
	Understanding Security Policy Matching with Device Identity Profiles	203
	Understanding How the SRX Series Obtains the Authenticated Device Identity	
	Information From Windows Active Directory for Network Access Control . .	204
	Understanding the Device Identity XML Solution for Third-Party NAC	
	Authentication Systems	205
	The SRX Series XML Web API Implementation	206
	Ensuring the Integrity of Data Sent from the NAC Service to the SRX	
	Series	206
	Data Size Restrictions and Other Constraints	206
	Example: Configuring a Device Identity Profile to Control Network Access	207
	Example: Configuring the SRX Series Device Identity Feature in an Active Directory	
	Environment	212
Part 5	Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	
Chapter 20	Understanding Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement . .	225
	Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and	
	Enforcement Feature	225
	Why You Need to Protect Your Environment With the SRX Series Integrated	
	ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature	225
	How the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	
	Feature Can Protect Your Network Environment	226
Chapter 21	Configuring Communication with ClearPass Using the WebAPI	
	Feature	229
	Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User	
	Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API . .	229
	Web API	229
	ClearPass Authentication Table	230
	Using HTTPS or HTTP for the Connection Protocol Between ClearPass and	
	the SRX Series Device	230

	Ensuring the Integrity of Data Sent from ClearPass to the SRX Series Device	231
	Data Size Restrictions and Other Constraints	231
	Posture States and the Posture Group	231
	Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass	232
Chapter 22	Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	243
	Understanding Enforcement of ClearPass User and Group Authentication on the SRX Series Devices	243
	Understanding How the SRX Series Device Manages the ClearPass Authentication Table	243
	User Authentication Entries in the ClearPass Authentication Table	244
	Communication Between ClearPass and the SRX Series Device	246
	Understanding Domains and Interested Groups	248
	When a User Has Already Been Authenticated By Another Source	251
	Example: Enforcing SRX Series Security Policies Using Aruba ClearPass as the Authentication Source	252
Chapter 23	Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function	271
	Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function	271
	Example: Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function	274
Chapter 24	Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Threat and Attack Function	285
	Understanding How the Integrated ClearPass Feature Detects Threats and Attacks and Notifies the CPPM	285
	SRX Series Threat and Attack Logs Sent to Aruba ClearPass	287
	Example: Configuring Integrated ClearPass to Filter and Rate-limit Threat and Attack Logs	289
Part 6	Configuration Statements and Operational Commands	
Chapter 25	Configuration Statements	297
	actions (Services SSL Proxy)	302
	active-directory-access	304
	active-directory-authentication-table	306
	address (Services)	307
	address (Services User Identification)	307
	admin-search	308
	application (Security Policies)	309
	application-services (Security Policies)	310
	assemble	311
	auth-only-browser	312
	auth-user-agent	313
	authentication-entry-timeout (Services User Identification)	314
	authentication-source (Services User Identification ClearPass)	315

authentication-source (Services User Identification Device Identity)	316
banner (Access FTP HTTP Telnet Authentication)	317
banner (Access Web Authentication)	318
base-distinguished-name	318
ca-certificate (Services User Identification)	319
ca-profile (Services)	319
captive-portal (Services UAC)	320
captive-portal (Services UAC Policy)	320
certificate (System Services)	321
certificate-key (System Services)	322
certificate-verification	323
client (System Services)	324
client-id (Services User Identification)	324
client-group	325
client-idle-timeout (Access Profile)	325
client-name-filter	326
client-secret (Services User Identification)	327
client-session-timeout (Access Profile)	327
configuration-file	328
connect-method (Services User Identification)	328
count	329
custom-ciphers	330
debug-level (System Services)	331
debug-log (System Services)	332
default-certificate (System Services)	332
default-profile	333
delay-query-time (Services User Identification)	334
distinguished-name (Access)	335
domain-name (Access Profile)	335
enable-flow-tracing (Services)	336
enable-session-cache	336
end-user-profile	337
fail	338
file (Services)	339
files (Services)	340
file (Services User Identification)	341
file (System Logging)	342
filter (Security)	344
firewall-authentication	345
firewall-authentication (Security)	346
firewall-authentication (Security Policies)	347
firewall-authentication (User Identification)	348
firewall-authentication-service	349
firewall-user	349
flag (Services)	350
from-zone (Security Policies)	351
ftp (Access)	353
group-profile (Access)	354
http (Access)	355

http (Services)	356
http (Services User Identification)	357
http (System Services)	358
https (Services)	359
https (Services User Identification)	360
https (System Services)	362
infranet-controller	363
interface (Services)	364
interval (Services)	365
ip-address (Access Profile)	365
ip-user-mapping	366
ldap-options	367
ldap-server	368
level (Services)	369
level (Services User Identification)	370
lifetime-seconds (Security IKE)	371
link (Access)	371
local-authentication-table	372
log (Services)	373
login (Access)	374
match (Services)	374
network (Access)	375
no-remote-trace (Services)	375
no-remote-trace (Services User Identification)	376
no-user-query (Services User Identification)	376
no-tls-certificate-check	377
pass-through	378
password (Access)	379
password (Services)	379
password (System Services)	380
permit (Security Policies)	381
pki-local-certificate (Services)	382
policies	383
pool (Access)	388
port (Access LDAP)	389
port (Services)	390
port (System Services)	391
preferred-ciphers	392
prefix (Access IPv6)	392
priority (Security User Identification)	393
protocol-version	394
query-api (Services User Identification)	395
radius-options (Access)	396
radius-server (Access)	397
range (Access)	398
rate-limit (Security Log)	399
redirect-traffic	400
redirect-url	401
retry (Access LDAP)	402

retry (Access RADIUS)	403
revert-interval (Access LDAP)	403
revert-interval (Access RADIUS)	404
root-ca (Services)	404
routing-instance (Access LDAP)	405
routing-instance (Access RADIUS)	405
search	406
search-filter	407
secret (Access Profile)	407
securid-server	408
separator	409
server-certificate (Services)	409
server-certificate-subject	410
session-options (Access Profile)	410
size (Services)	411
source-address (Access LDAP)	411
source-address (Access RADIUS)	412
source-end-user-profile	413
source-identity-log (Security)	414
ssl (Services)	415
ssl-termination-profile	417
success	417
system-generated-certificate	418
telnet (Access)	418
termination (Services)	419
test-only-mode	420
then (Security Policies)	421
timeout (Access LDAP)	423
timeout (Access RADIUS)	423
timeout (Services)	424
timeout-action	425
tls-min-version	426
tls-peer-name	426
tls-timeout	427
tls-type	428
token-api (Services User Identification)	429
to-zone (Security Policies)	430
traceoptions (Access)	433
traceoptions (Active Directory Access)	435
traceoptions (Security Firewall Authentication)	437
traceoptions (Services SSL)	438
traceoptions (Services UAC)	440
traceoptions (Services User Identification)	441
trusted-ca (Services)	442
uac-policy (Application Services)	443
uac-service	444
unified-access-control (Security)	445
unified-access-control (Services)	446
user-group-mapping	447

	user-identification (Services)	449
	webapi (System Services)	452
	webapi-clear-text (Security)	453
	webapi-ssl (Security)	453
	web-authentication	454
	web-authentication (Access)	455
	web-authentication (Interfaces)	456
	web-management (System Services)	457
	web-redirect	460
	web-redirect-to-https	460
	web-server (Services)	461
	whitelist (Services)	461
	wins-server (Access)	462
Chapter 26	Operational Commands	463
	clear network-access requests pending	465
	clear network-access requests statistics	466
	clear network-access securid-node-secret-file	467
	clear security firewall-authentication history	468
	clear security firewall-authentication history address	469
	clear security firewall-authentication history identifier	471
	clear security firewall-authentication users	473
	clear security firewall-authentication users address	475
	clear security firewall-authentication users identifier	477
	clear security user-identification local-authentication-table	479
	clear services user-identification active-directory-access	480
	clear services user-identification authentication-table	481
	request services user-identification active-directory-access	
	active-directory-authentication-table delete	482
	request services user-identification active-directory-access	
	domain-controller	483
	request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe	484
	request services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass	
	user-query	485
	request services user-identification authentication-table delete	486
	show network-access requests pending	493
	show network-access requests statistics	495
	show network-access securid-node-secret-file	497
	show security firewall-authentication history	498
	show security firewall-authentication history address	500
	show security firewall-authentication history identifier	503
	show security firewall-authentication users	506
	show security firewall-authentication users address	508
	show security firewall-authentication users identifier	511
	show security policies	514
	show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass	
	user-query counters	523
	show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass	
	user-query status	525

show services unified-access-control authentication-table	526
show services user-identification authentication-table	529
show services user-identification device-information table	537
show services unified-access-control counters	540
show services unified-access-control policies	542
show services unified-access-control roles	544
show services unified-access-control status	545
show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table	546
show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status	550
show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics	553
show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping	556

List of Figures

Part 2	Configuring Firewall User Authentication	
Chapter 3	Configuring Encrypted Files Using SSL Proxy	11
	Figure 1: SSL Inspection on an Existing SRX Series IDP Module	12
	Figure 2: SSL Proxy on an Encrypted Payload	13
	Figure 3: SSL Proxy Configuration Overview	22
	Figure 4: Applying an SSL Proxy Profile to a Security Policy	28
Chapter 4	Configuring Pass-Through Authentication	35
	Figure 5: Policy Lookup for a User	36
	Figure 6: Configuring Pass-Through Firewall Authentication	38
	Figure 7: Pass-Through Authentication Using HTTPS Traffic	45
Chapter 5	Configuring Web Authentication	51
	Figure 8: Web Authentication Example	52
	Figure 9: Web Authentication Example	54
	Figure 10: Web Authentication Success Banner	54
	Figure 11: Web Authentication Using HTTPS Traffic	62
Chapter 8	Customizing the Firewall Authentication Banner	85
	Figure 12: Banner Customization	85
Part 3	Configuring Infranet Authentication	
Chapter 9	Configuring UAC in a Junos OS Environment	91
	Figure 13: Integrating a Junos OS Security Device into a Unified Access Control Network	92
Chapter 12	Classifying Traffic with User Roles	103
	Figure 14: Single Sign-On Support Topology	106
Chapter 15	Configuring Captive Portal	133
	Figure 15: Enabling the Captive Portal Feature on a Junos OS Enforcer	134
Part 4	Configuring Integrated User Firewall	
Chapter 16	Understanding Integrated User Firewall	143
	Figure 16: Scenario for Integrated User Firewall	145
Chapter 19	Configuring Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication for Access Control	191
	Figure 17: Using a Third-Party Network Access Control (NAC) System for Device Identity Authentication	193

	Figure 18: Topology for the Device Identity Feature with Active Directory as the Authentication Source	216
Part 5	Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	
Chapter 21	Configuring Communication with ClearPass Using the WebAPI Feature	229
	Figure 19: ClearPass and SRX Series Device Communication and User Authentication Process	234
	Figure 20: Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Deployment Topology	237
Chapter 22	Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	243
	Figure 21: User Information from the CPPM to the SRX Series Device Routing Engine Synchronized to the ClearPass Authentication Table	246
	Figure 22: ClearPass and SRX Series Device Communication and User Authentication Process	247
	Figure 23: Topology for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Enforcement Through Security Policies Example	257
Chapter 23	Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function	271
	Figure 24: The SRX Series ClearPass Integration User Query Function	272
	Figure 25: User Query Function Process	276
	Figure 26: Topology for the Overall Deployment that Includes User Query	278
Chapter 24	Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Threat and Attack Function	285
	Figure 27: Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Deployment Topology	291

List of Tables

	About the Documentation	xxi
	Table 1: Notice Icons	xxiv
	Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions	xxiv
Part 2	Configuring Firewall User Authentication	
Chapter 3	Configuring Encrypted Files Using SSL Proxy	11
	Table 3: Supported SSL Cipher List	14
	Table 4: SSL Proxy Logs	17
	Table 5: SSL Proxy Log Prefixes	18
	Table 6: Trace Levels	32
	Table 7: Supported Flags in Trace	33
Part 3	Configuring Infranet Authentication	
Chapter 15	Configuring Captive Portal	133
	Table 8: Redirect URL String Options	136
Part 4	Configuring Integrated User Firewall	
Chapter 16	Understanding Integrated User Firewall	143
	Table 9: Active Directory Authentication Table Support by SRX Series Devices	148
	Table 10: Events Triggering Active Directory Authentication Table Updates	150
Chapter 17	Managing Event Logs	175
	Table 11: Probe Responses and Associated Active Directory Authentication Table Actions	179
Chapter 18	Logging User Identity Information Based on Zones	183
	Table 12: Supported Platforms	184
	Table 13: Session Log Components Specific to the Source Identity Log Function	188
Chapter 19	Configuring Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication for Access Control	191
	Table 14: Platform-Independent Scaling	197
	Table 15: Platform-Dependent Scaling	198
	Table 16: Group Changes for Devices in the Active Directory LDAP and the SRX Series Response	200
	Table 17: Changes to Device Identity Entries Based on Security Policy Specifications	201

	Table 18: Changes to Device Identity Authentication Table Resulting From LDAP and Security Policy Changes	201
Part 5	Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	
Chapter 21	Configuring Communication with ClearPass Using the WebAPI Feature	229
	Table 19: SRX Series Device Authentication Tables Search Priority Assignment	241
Chapter 22	Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement	243
	Table 20: Assigning a Domain to a Group	249
	Table 21: Interested Groups: Effect on the ClearPass Authentication Table	251
	Table 22: Authenticated User Information for Security Policy Example	256
Chapter 23	Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function	271
	Table 23: Relationship Between User Query Function and Active Directory Authentication as Processed by the CLI	273
	Table 24: Time Stamp Components as Defined by ISO 8601	274
Chapter 24	Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Threat and Attack Function	285
	Table 25: Attack Log Fields Using Example Log	286
	Table 26: Threat and Attack Log Entries Generated by SRX Series Components	288
Part 6	Configuration Statements and Operational Commands	
Chapter 26	Operational Commands	463
	Table 27: show network-access requests pending Output Fields	493
	Table 28: show network-access requests statistics Output Fields	495
	Table 29: show network-access securid-node-secret-file Output Fields	497
	Table 30: show security firewall-authentication history Output Fields	498
	Table 31: show security firewall-authentication history address Output Fields . .	500
	Table 32: show security firewall-authentication history identifier Output Fields	503
	Table 33: show security firewall-authentication users Output Fields	506
	Table 34: show security firewall-authentication users address Output Fields . .	508
	Table 35: show security firewall-authentication users identifier Output Fields . .	511
	Table 36: show security policies Output Fields	515
	Table 37: show services user-identification device-information table Output Fields	538
	Table 38: show services unified-access-control counters Output Fields	540
	Table 39: show services unified-access-control roles Output Fields	544
	Table 40: show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all extensive Output Fields	547
	Table 41: show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller Output Fields	550

Table 42: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping Output Fields	553
Table 43: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe Output Fields	554
Table 44: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping Output Fields	554
Table 45: show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group Output Fields	556
Table 46: show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status Output Fields	557
Table 47: show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping user Output Fields	557

About the Documentation

- [Documentation and Release Notes on page xxi](#)
- [Supported Platforms on page xxi](#)
- [Using the Examples in This Manual on page xxii](#)
- [Documentation Conventions on page xxiii](#)
- [Documentation Feedback on page xxv](#)
- [Requesting Technical Support on page xxvi](#)

Documentation and Release Notes

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks® technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks website at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>.

If the information in the latest release notes differs from the information in the documentation, follow the product Release Notes.

Juniper Networks Books publishes books by Juniper Networks engineers and subject matter experts. These books go beyond the technical documentation to explore the nuances of network architecture, deployment, and administration. The current list can be viewed at <http://www.juniper.net/books>.

Supported Platforms

For the features described in this document, the following platforms are supported:

- [SRX5800](#)
- [SRX5600](#)
- [SRX5400](#)
- [SRX1500](#)
- [SRX550M](#)
- [SRX345](#)
- [SRX340](#)
- [SRX320](#)

- [SRX300](#)
- [SRX Series](#)

Using the Examples in This Manual

If you want to use the examples in this manual, you can use the **load merge** or the **load merge relative** command. These commands cause the software to merge the incoming configuration into the current candidate configuration. The example does not become active until you commit the candidate configuration.

If the example configuration contains the top level of the hierarchy (or multiple hierarchies), the example is a *full example*. In this case, use the **load merge** command.

If the example configuration does not start at the top level of the hierarchy, the example is a *snippet*. In this case, use the **load merge relative** command. These procedures are described in the following sections.

Merging a Full Example

To merge a full example, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration example into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following configuration to a file and name the file **ex-script.conf**. Copy the **ex-script.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
system {
  scripts {
    commit {
      file ex-script.xml;
    }
  }
}
interfaces {
  fxp0 {
    disable;
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.0.0.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

2. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge** configuration mode command:

```
[edit]
user@host# load merge /var/tmp/ex-script.conf
load complete
```

Merging a Snippet

To merge a snippet, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration snippet into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following snippet to a file and name the file **ex-script-snippet.conf**. Copy the **ex-script-snippet.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
commit {  
  file ex-script-snippet.xml; }
```

2. Move to the hierarchy level that is relevant for this snippet by issuing the following configuration mode command:

```
[edit]  
user@host# edit system scripts  
[edit system scripts]
```

3. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge relative** configuration mode command:

```
[edit system scripts]  
user@host# load merge relative /var/tmp/ex-script-snippet.conf  
load complete
```

For more information about the **load** command, see [CLI Explorer](#).

Documentation Conventions

[Table 1 on page xxiv](#) defines notice icons used in this guide.

Table 1: Notice Icons

Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.
	Tip	Indicates helpful information.
	Best practice	Alerts you to a recommended use or implementation.

Table 2 on page xxiv defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions

Convention	Description	Examples
Bold text like this	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the configure command: user@host> configure
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	user@host> show chassis alarms No alarms currently active
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduces or emphasizes important new terms. Identifies guide names. Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions. <i>Junos OS CLI User Guide</i> RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name: [edit] root@# set system domain-name <i>domain-name</i>

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
Text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">To configure a stub area, include the stub statement at the [edit protocols ospf area area-id] hierarchy level.The console port is labeled CONSOLE.
< > (angle brackets)	Encloses optional keywords or variables.	stub <default-metric <i>metric</i>>;
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	broadcast multicast (<i>string1</i> <i>string2</i> <i>string3</i>)
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only
[] (square brackets)	Encloses a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	community name members [<i>community-ids</i>]
Indentation and braces ({ })	Identifies a level in the configuration hierarchy.	<pre>[edit] routing-options { static { route default { nexthop <i>address</i>; retain; } } }</pre>
;(semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
GUI Conventions		
Bold text like this	Represents graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">In the Logical Interfaces box, select All Interfaces.To cancel the configuration, click Cancel.
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of menu selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select Protocols>Ospf .

Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can provide feedback by using either of the following methods:

- Online feedback rating system—On any page of the Juniper Networks TechLibrary site at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/index.html>, simply click the stars to rate the content, and use the pop-up form to provide us with information about your experience. Alternately, you can use the online feedback form at <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/feedback/>.

- E-mail—Send your comments to techpubs-comments@juniper.net. Include the document or topic name, URL or page number, and software version (if applicable).

Requesting Technical Support

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or Partner Support Service support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need post-sales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the *JTAC User Guide* located at <http://www.juniper.net/us/en/local/pdf/resource-guides/7100059-en.pdf>.
- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <http://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/>.
- JTAC hours of operation—The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

Self-Help Online Tools and Resources

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <http://www2.juniper.net/kb/>
- Find product documentation: <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base: <http://kb.juniper.net/>
- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications: <http://kb.juniper.net/InfoCenter/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum: <http://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool: <https://tools.juniper.net/SerialNumberEntitlementSearch/>

Opening a Case with JTAC

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>.
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, see <http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting-support.html>.

PART 1

Overview

- [Introduction to User Authentication on page 3](#)

CHAPTER 1

Introduction to User Authentication

- [Understanding User Authentication for Security Devices on page 3](#)

Understanding User Authentication for Security Devices

Firewall user authentication lets you define firewall users and create policies that require the users to authenticate themselves through one of two authentication schemes: pass-through authentication or web authentication.

User role firewall policies can be integrated with firewall authentication both to authenticate users and to retrieve username and role information. The information is mapped to the IP address of the traffic, stored in the firewall authentication table, and used for user role firewall policy enforcement.

Infranet authentication occurs when an SRX Series device acts as an Infranet Enforcer for an IC Series device. You deploy the Infranet Enforcer in front of the servers and resources that you want to protect. Authentication occurs on the IC Series device and provides policies to the Enforcer to determine whether or not to allow an endpoint access to protected resources.

PART 2

Configuring Firewall User Authentication

- [Understanding Firewall Authentication on page 7](#)
- [Configuring Encrypted Files Using SSL Proxy on page 11](#)
- [Configuring Pass-Through Authentication on page 35](#)
- [Configuring Web Authentication on page 51](#)
- [Configuring External Authentication Servers on page 67](#)
- [Configuring Client Groups on page 81](#)
- [Customizing the Firewall Authentication Banner on page 85](#)

CHAPTER 2

Understanding Firewall Authentication

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9](#)

Firewall User Authentication Overview

A firewall user is a network user who must provide a username and password for authentication when initiating a connection across the firewall. Junos OS enables administrators to restrict and permit firewall users to access protected resources (different zones) behind a firewall based on their source IP address and other credentials.

Junos OS also supports the administrator and Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) user types.



NOTE: Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40, HTTPS-based authentication is introduced on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways.

After you define firewall users, you can create a policy that requires the users to authenticate themselves through one of three authentication schemes:

- **Pass-through authentication**—A host or a user from one zone tries to access resources on another zone. You must use an FTP client, a Telnet client, an HTTP client, or an HTTPS client to access the IP address of the protected resource and to get authenticated by the firewall. The device uses FTP, Telnet, HTTP, or HTTPS to collect username and password information, and subsequent traffic from the user or host is allowed or denied based on the result of this authentication. When the device is using an HTTPS server, and after the authentication is done, the subsequent traffic from the user is always terminated whether the authentication is successful or not.



NOTE: Starting with Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10, support for HTTPS-based authentication is introduced for high-end SRX Series Services Gateways. It is not supported on SRX Series branch devices. For branch devices, you must use HTTP-based authentication.

- **Pass-through with web-redirect authentication**—This authentication scheme is for HTTP and HTTPS. When firewall authentication is performed using the pass-through

authentication scheme for HTTP and HTTPS clients, the **web-redirect** feature optionally, redirects HTTP or HTTPS requests to the device's internal webserver by sending a redirect HTTP or HTTPS response to the client system to reconnect to the webserver for user authentication. The interface on which the client's request arrived is the interface to which the request is redirected.

Using this feature allows for a richer user login experience. For example, instead of a popup prompt asking for username and password, users can get the login page in a browser. Enabling **web-redirect** has the same effect as users typing the Web authentication IP address in a client browser. Using **web-redirect** provides a more seamless authentication experience because users do not need to know the Web authentication IP address but only the IP address of the resource they are trying to access. After the user has been authenticated this way, traffic from user's IP address is authenticated to go through the **web-redirect** method.

When you web-redirect, you http or https the destination url, the authentication page prompts you after successful authentication.

A message is displayed to inform you about the successful authentication. After successful authentication, the browser launches your original destination URL without your needing to retype the URL.

The following message is displayed:

Redirecting to the original url, please wait

- Web authentication—Users try to connect, using HTTP or HTTPS, to an IP address on the device that is enabled for Web authentication; in this scenario, you do not use HTTP or HTTPS to get to the IP address of the protected resource. You are prompted for the username and password that are verified by the device. Subsequent traffic from the user or host to the protected resource is allowed or denied based on the result of this authentication.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D40	Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40, HTTPS-based authentication is introduced on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways.
12.1X44	Starting with Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10, support for HTTPS-based authentication is introduced for high-end SRX Series Services Gateways.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Pass-Through Authentication on page 35](#)
- [Understanding Web Authentication on page 51](#)
- [Understanding External Authentication Servers on page 67](#)
- [Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21](#)

Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication

User role firewall policies can be integrated with firewall authentication both to authenticate users and to retrieve username and role information. The information is mapped to the IP address of the traffic, stored in the firewall authentication table, and used for user role firewall policy enforcement.

The following CLI statements configure firewall authentication for user role firewall enforcement.

1. If not already established, define the access profile to be used for firewall authentication. You can skip this step if an existing access profile provides the client data needed for your implementation.

The access profile is configured in the **[edit access profile]** hierarchy as with other firewall authentication types. It defines clients as firewall users and the passwords that provide them access. Use the following command to define a profile and add client names and passwords for firewall authentication.

```
set access profile profile-name client client-name firewall-user password pwd
```

2. If HTTPS traffic is expected, define the access profile to be used for SSL termination services. You can skip this step if an existing SSL termination profile provides the services needed for your implementation.

The SSL termination profile is configured in the **[edit services ssl]** hierarchy.

```
set services ssl termination profile ssl-profile-name server-certificate certificate-type
```

3. Enable the firewall authentication table as an authentication source.

```
set security user-identification authentication-source firewall-authentication priority priority
```

The priority value determines the sequence in which authentication sources are checked. The default value is 150 for the firewall authentication table. (It is 100 for the local authentication table and 200 for the Unified Access Control (UAC) authentication table.) By default, the local authentication table is checked first, the firewall authentication table is next, and the UAC authentication table is third if it is enabled. You can change this sequence by changing the priority value of one or more of the tables.

4. Configure policies that permit traffic for user firewall authentication.

```
edit security policies from-zone zone to-zone zone policy policy-name
set match source-identity unauthenticated-user
set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile profile-name
ssl-termination-profile profile-name
```

When unauthenticated traffic is permitted for firewall authentication, the user is authenticated based on the access profile configured in this statement. The **ssl-termination-profile** option is needed only for HTTPS traffic.

By specifying the authentication type **user-firewall**, the firewall authentication table is propagated with the IP address, the username, and any group names associated with the authenticated user. (Group names from firewall authentication are interpreted as roles by the user role firewall.) Any further traffic from this IP address will match the IP address in the firewall authentication table, and not require authentication. The associated username and roles are retrieved from the table for use as potential match criteria in subsequent security policies.

Related Documentation

- *Understanding the User Identification Table*

CHAPTER 3

Configuring Encrypted Files Using SSL Proxy

- [SSL Proxy Overview on page 11](#)
- [Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21](#)
- [Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy on page 32](#)

SSL Proxy Overview

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that provides encryption technology for the Internet. SSL, also called Transport Layer Security (TLS), ensures the secure transmission of data between a client and a server through a combination of privacy, authentication, confidentiality, and data integrity. SSL relies on certificates and private-public key exchange pairs for this level of security. SSL is supported on the SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and the SRX5800 devices.

Server authentication guards against fraudulent transmissions by enabling a Web browser to validate the identity of a webserver. Confidentiality mechanisms ensure that communications are private. SSL enforces confidentiality by encrypting data to prevent unauthorized users from eavesdropping on electronic communications. Finally, message integrity ensures that the contents of a communication have not been tampered with.

SSL proxy is transparent; that is, it performs SSL encryption and decryption between the client and the server, but neither the server nor the client can detect its presence. Existing features like SSL offload and SSL inspection require the servers to share their secret keys to be able to decrypt the SSL traffic. However, sharing server keys is sometimes not feasible or might not be available in certain circumstances, in which case the SSL traffic cannot be decrypted.

SSL proxy addresses this problem by ensuring that it has the keys to encrypt and decrypt the payload:

- For the server, SSL proxy acts as a client—Because SSL proxy generates the shared pre-master key, it determines the keys to encrypt and decrypt.
- For the client, SSL proxy acts as a server—SSL proxy first authenticates the original server and replaces the public key in the original server certificate with a key that is known to it. It then generates a new certificate by replacing the original issuer of the

certificate with its own identity and signs this new certificate with its own public key (provided as a part of the proxy profile configuration). When the client accepts such a certificate, it sends a shared pre-master key encrypted with the public key on the certificate. Because SSL proxy replaced the original key with its own key, it is able to receive the shared pre-master key. Decryption and encryption take place in each direction (client and server), and the keys are different for both encryption and decryption.

Figure 1 on page 12 depicts how SSL inspection (on an existing SRX Series IDP module) is typically used to protect servers. SSL inspection requires access to the private keys used by the servers so that the SRX Series device can decrypt the encrypted traffic.

Figure 1: SSL Inspection on an Existing SRX Series IDP Module

SSL inspection

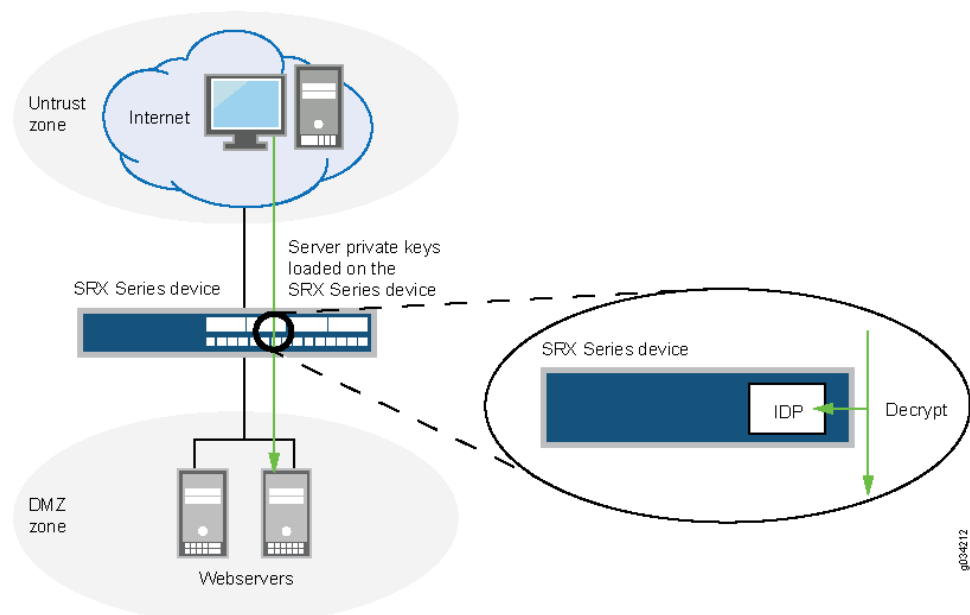


Figure 2 on page 13 shows how SSL proxy works on an encrypted payload. When application firewall (AppFW), Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), or application tracking (AppTrack) is configured, the SSL proxy acts as an SSL server by terminating the SSL session from the client and establishing a new SSL session to the server, the SRX Series device decrypts and then reencrypts all SSL proxy traffic. SSL proxy uses the following:

- SSL-T-SSL terminator on the client side.
- SSL-I-SSL initiator on the server side.
- Configured AppFW, IDP, or AppTrack services use the decrypted SSL sessions.



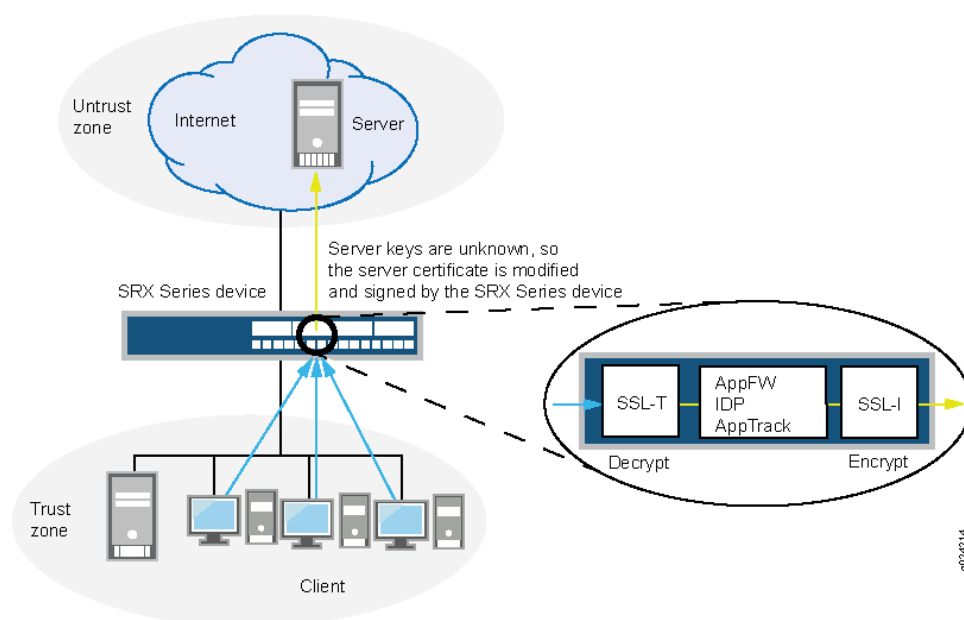
NOTE: If none of the services (AppFW, IDP, or AppTrack) are configured, then SSL proxy services are bypassed even if an SSL proxy profile is attached to a firewall policy.



NOTE: The IDP module will not perform its SSL inspection on a session if SSL proxy is enabled for that session. That is, if both SSL inspection and SSL proxy are enabled on a session, SSL proxy will always take precedence.

Figure 2: SSL Proxy on an Encrypted Payload

SSL forward proxy



Supported Ciphers in Proxy Mode

An SSL cipher comprises encryption ciphers, authentication method, and compression. [Table 3 on page 14](#) displays a list of supported ciphers. NULL ciphers are excluded.

The following SSL protocols are supported on SRX Series devices:

- TLS version 1.0—Provides secure communication over networks by providing privacy and data integrity between communicating applications
- TLS version 1.1—This enhanced version of TLS provides protection against cipher-block chaining (CBC) attacks.
- TLS version 1.2 — This enhanced version of TLS provides improved flexibility for negotiation of cryptographic algorithms.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, TLS version 1.1 and TLS version 1.2 protocols are supported on SRX Series devices along with TLS version 1.0.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D20, the SSL protocol 3.0 (SSLv3) support is deprecated.

Table 3: Supported SSL Cipher List

SSL Cipher	Key Exchange Algorithm	Data Encryption	Message Integrity
RSA_WITH_RC4_128_MD5	RSA key exchange	128-bit RC4	Message Digest 5 (MD5) hash
RSA_WITH_RC4_128_SHA	RSA key exchange	128-bit RC4	Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA) hash
RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA	RSA key exchange	DES CBC	SHA hash
RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA	RSA key exchange	3DES EDE/CBC	SHA hash
RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA	RSA key exchange	128-bit AES/CBC	SHA hash
RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	RSA key exchange	256-bit AES/CBC	SHA hash
RSA_EXPORT_WITH_RC4_40_MD5	RSA-export	40-bit RC4	MD5 hash
RSA_EXPORT_WITH_DES40_CBC_SHA	RSA-export	40-bit DES/CBC	SHA hash
RSA_EXPORT1024_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA	RSA 1024 bit export	DES/CBC	SHA hash
RSA_EXPORT1024_WITH_RC4_56_MD5	RSA 1024 bit export	56-bit RC4	MD5 hash
RSA_EXPORT1024_WITH_RC4_56_SHA	RSA 1024 bit export	56-bit RC4	SHA hash



NOTE: Cipher suites that have “export” in the title are intended for use outside of the United States and might have encryption algorithms with limited key sizes.

Export ciphers are not enabled by default. You need to either configure the export ciphers to enable or install a domestic package.



NOTE: Supported SSL ciphers for HTTPS firewall authentication are RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA, RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA, and RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA.

Server Authentication

Implicit trust between the client and the device (because the client accepts the certificate generated by the device) is an important aspect of SSL proxy. It is extremely important

that server authentication is not compromised; however, in reality, self-signed certificates and certificates with anomalies are in abundance. Anomalies can include expired certificates, instances of common name not matching a domain name, and so forth. Server authentication is governed by setting the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option in the SSL proxy.

- By default, the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option is not defined as an action in the SSL proxy profile, and the following occurs:
 - If authentication succeeds, a new certificate is generated by replacing the keys and changing the issuer name to the issuer name that is configured in the root CA certificate in the proxy profile.
 - If authentication fails, the connection is dropped.
- If the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option is defined as an action in the SSL proxy profile, the following occurs:
 - If the certificate is self-signed, a new certificate is generated by replacing the keys only. The issuer name is not changed. This ensures that the client browser displays a warning that the certificate is not valid.
 - If the certificate has expired or if the common name does not match the domain name, a new certificate is generated by replacing the keys and changing the issuer name to `SSL-PROXY: DUMMY_CERT:GENERATED DUE TO SRVR AUTH FAILURE`. This ensures that the client browser displays a warning that the certificate is not valid.

Trusted CA List

SSL proxy ensures secure transmission of data between a client and a server. Before establishing a secure connection, SSL proxy checks CA certificates to verify signatures on server certificates. For this reason, a reasonable list of trusted CA certificates is required to effectively authenticate servers.

Junos OS provides the following options for trusted CA certificates:

- Loading the default trusted CA list—Junos OS provides a default list of certificates that contains well-known trusted CA certificates similar to the default certificates used by most common browsers. Without these default certificates, browsers would not be able to validate the identity of most websites and would mark them as untrusted sites.

The Junos OS package contains the default CA certificates as a PEM file (for example, `trusted_CA.pem`). After you download the package and reboot your device, you can easily load the default certificates on your system using a CLI command.

We recommend you load the default trusted CA list if you want to trust the same CA certificates as common browsers and avoid importing CA certificates manually.

- Importing the trusted CA list manually—You can import your own trusted CA certificates using the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI). The PKI helps verify and authenticate the validity of the trusted CA certificates. You create CA profile groups that include trusted CA certificates, then import the group on your device for server authentication.

- Ignoring server authentication—You can use the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option to ignore server authentication completely. In this case, SSL proxy ignores errors encountered during the server certificate verification process (such as CA signature verification failure, self-signed certificates, and certificate expiry).

We do not recommend this option for authentication, because configuring it results in websites not being authenticated at all. However, you can use this option to effectively identify the root cause for dropped SSL sessions. See [“Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy” on page 32](#).

Root CA

In a public key infrastructure (PKI) hierarchy, the root CA is at the top of the trust path. The root CA identifies the server certificate as a trusted certificate.

Client Authentication

Currently, client authentication is not supported in SSL proxy. If a server requests client authentication, a warning is issued that a certificate is not available. The warning lets the server determine whether to continue or to exit.

Whitelists

Because SSL encryption and decryption are complicated and expensive procedures, network administrators can selectively bypass SSL proxy processing for some sessions. Such sessions mostly include connections and transactions with trusted servers or domains with which network administrators are very familiar. There are also legal requirements to exempt financial and banking sites. Such exemptions are achieved by configuring the IP addresses or domain names of the servers under whitelists.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D80, the whitelisting feature is extended to include URL categories supported by UTM in the whitelist configuration of SSL forward proxy. In this implementation, the Server Name Indication (SNI) field is extracted by the UTM module from client hello messages to determine the URL category. Each URL category has a unique ID. The list of URL categories under whitelist is parsed and the corresponding category IDs are pushed to the Packet Forwarding Engine for each SSL forward proxy profile. The SSL forward proxy then determines through APIs whether to accept, and proxy, or to ignore the session.

Dynamic Resolution of Domain Names

The IP addresses associated with domain names are dynamic and can change at any time. Whenever a domain IP address changes, it is propagated to the SSL proxy configuration (similar to what is done in the firewall policy configuration).

Session Resumption

An SSL session refers to the set of parameters and encryption keys created by performing a full handshake. A connection is the conversation or active data transfer that occurs within the session. The computational overhead of a complete SSL handshake and generation of master keys is considerable. In short-lived sessions, the time taken for the SSL handshake can be more than the time for data transfer.

To improve throughput and still maintain an appropriate level of security, SSL session resumption provides a session caching mechanism so that session information, such as the pre-master secret key and agreed-upon ciphers, can be cached for both the client and server. The cached information is identified by a session ID. In subsequent connections both parties agree to use the session ID to retrieve the information rather than create a new pre-master secret key. Session resumption shortens the handshake process and accelerates SSL transactions.

Session Renegotiation

After a session is created and SSL tunnel transport has been established, a change in SSL parameters requires renegotiation. SSL proxy supports both secure (RFC 5746) and nonsecure (TLS v1.0, TLS v1.1, and TLS v1.2) renegotiation. When session resumption is enabled, session renegotiation is useful in the following situations:

- Cipher keys need to be refreshed after a prolonged SSL session.
- Stronger ciphers need to be applied for a more secure connection.

A change in an SSL proxy profile that modifies a certificate, cipher strength, or trusted CA list flushes cache entries when the modified policy is committed. When a session is resumed, the SSL parameters associated with its session ID are retrieved from the cache. If the SSL proxy profile is not altered, cache entries corresponding to that profile are not flushed and the session continues. If the cache has been flushed, however, a full handshake must be performed to establish the new SSL parameters. (There is no impact to non-SSL sessions.)

SSL Proxy Logs

When logging is enabled in an SSL proxy profile, SSL proxy can generate the messages shown in [Table 4 on page 17](#).

Table 4: SSL Proxy Logs

Syslog Type	Description
SSL_PROXY_SSL_SESSION_DROP	Logs generated when a session is dropped by SSL proxy.
SSL_PROXY_SSL_SESSION_ALLOW	Logs generated when a session is processed by SSL proxy even after encountering some minor errors.
SSL_PROXY_SESSION_IGNORE	Logs generated if non-SSL sessions are initially mistaken as SSL sessions.
SSL_PROXY_SESSION_WHITELIST	Logs generated when a session is whitelisted.
SSL_PROXY_ERROR	Logs used for reporting errors.
SSL_PROXY_WARNING	Logs used for reporting warnings.
SSL_PROXY_INFO	Logs used for reporting general information.

All logs contain similar information as shown in the following example (actual order of appearance):

logical-system-name, session-id, source-ip-address, source-port, destination-ip-address, destination-port, nat-source-ip-address, nat-source-port, nat-destination-ip-address, nat-destination-port, proxy profile name, source-zone-name, source-interface-name, destination-zone-name, destination-interface-name, message

The **message** field contains the reason for the log generation. One of three prefixes shown in [Table 5 on page 18](#) identifies the source of the message. Other fields are descriptively labeled.

Table 5: SSL Proxy Log Prefixes

Prefix	Description
system	Logs generated due to errors related to the device or an action taken as part of the SSL proxy profile. Most logs fall into this category.
openssl error	Logs generated during the handshaking process if an error is detected by the openssl library.
certificate error	Logs generated during the handshaking process if an error is detected in the certificate (x509 related errors).

Sample logs:

```
Jun  1 05:11:13 4.0.0.254 junos-ssl-proxy: SSL_PROXY_SESSION_DROP: lsys:root
23 < 203.0.113.1/35090->192.0.2.1/443> NAT:< 203.0.113.1/35090->192.0.2.1/443>
ssl-inspect-profile <untrust:ge-0/0/0.0->trust:ge-0/0/1.0> message:certificate
error: self signed certificate
```



NOTE: These logs capture sessions that are dropped by SSL proxy, not sessions that are marked by other modules that also use SSL proxy services.

For SSL_PROXY_SESSION_WHITELIST messages, an additional **host** field is included after the **session-id** and contains the IP address of the server or domain that has been whitelisted.

```
Jun  1 05:25:36 4.0.0.254 junos-ssl-proxy: SSL_PROXY_SESSION_WHITELIST: lsys:root
24 host:192.0.2.1/443<203.0.113.1/35090->192.0.2.1/443> NAT:<
203.0.113.1/35090->192.0.2.1/443 > ssl-inspect-profile
<untrust:ge-0/0/0.0->trust:ge-0/0/1.0> message:system: session whitelisted
```

Leveraging Dynamic Application Identification

SSL proxy uses application identification services to dynamically detect if a particular session is SSL encrypted. SSL proxies are allowed only if a session is SSL encrypted. The following rules apply for a session:

- Session is marked **Encrypted=Yes** in the application system cache. If the session is marked **Encrypted=Yes**, it indicates that the final match from application identification for that session is SSL encrypted, and SSL proxy transitions to a state where proxy functionality can be initiated.
- Session is marked **Encrypted=No** in the application system cache. If a non-SSL entry is found in the application system cache, it indicates that the final match from application identification for that session is non-SSL and SSL proxy ignores the session.
- An entry is not found in the application system cache. This can happen on the first session, or when the application system cache has been cleaned or has expired. In such a scenario, SSL proxy cannot wait for the final match (requires traffic in both directions). In SSL proxy, traffic in reverse direction happens only if SSL proxy has initiated an SSL handshake. Initially, for such a scenario SSL proxy tries to leverage prematch or aggressive match results from application identification, and if the results indicate SSL, SSL proxy will go ahead with the handshake.
- Application identification fails due to resource constraints and other errors. Whenever the result from application identification is not available, SSL proxy will assume static port binding and will try to initiate SSL handshake on the session. This will succeed for actual SSL sessions, but it will result in dropped sessions for non SSL sessions.

Logical Systems Support

It is possible to enable SSL proxy on firewall policies that are configured using logical systems; however, note the following limitations:

- The “services” category is currently not supported in logical systems configuration. Because SSL proxy is under “services,” you cannot configure SSL proxy profiles on a per-logical-system basis.
- Because proxy profiles configured at a global level (within “services ssl proxy”) are visible across logical system configurations, it is possible to configure proxy profiles at a global level and then attach them to the firewall policies of one or more logical systems.

Limitations



NOTE:

- Starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, certificate revocation list (CRL) checks are supported.
- Starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, server certificates that have key size greater than 4096 are supported. Prior to Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, server certificates with key size greater than 2048 bits were not supported because of cryptography hardware limitations.



NOTE: On SRX Series devices, for a particular session, the SSL proxy is only enabled if a relevant feature related to SSL traffic is also enabled. Features that are related to SSL traffic are IDP, application identification, application firewall, and application tracking. If none of the above listed features are active on a session, the SSL proxy bypasses the session and logs are not generated in this scenario.



NOTE: On all SRX Series devices, the current SSL proxy implementation has the following connectivity limitations:

- The SSLv3.0 protocol support is deprecated.
- The SSLv2 protocol is not supported. SSL sessions using SSLv2 are dropped.
- Only X.509v3 certificate is supported.
- Client authentication of SSL handshake is not supported.
- SSL sessions where client certificate authentication is mandatory are dropped.
- SSL sessions where renegotiation is requested are dropped.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D80	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D80, the whitelisting feature is extended to include URL categories supported by UTM in the whitelist configuration of SSL forward proxy. In this implementation, the Server Name Indication (SNI) field is extracted by the UTM module from client hello messages to determine the URL category. Each URL category has a unique ID. The list of URL categories under whitelist is parsed and the corresponding category IDs are pushed to the Packet Forwarding Engine for each SSL forward proxy profile. The SSL forward proxy then determines through APIs whether to accept, and proxy, or to ignore the session.
15.1X49-D30	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, TLS version 1.1 and TLS version 1.2 protocols are supported on SRX Series devices along with TLS version 1.0.
15.1X49-D30	Starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, certificate revocation list (CRL) checks are supported.
15.1X49-D30	Starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30, server certificates that have key size greater than 4096 are supported.
15.1X49-D20	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D20, the SSL protocol 3.0 (SSLv3) support is deprecated.

Related Documentation

- *Understanding Address Books*
- *Understanding Global Address Books*

- [Understanding Self-Signed Certificates](#)
- [Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21](#)

Configuring SSL Proxy

SSL proxy works transparently between the client and the server. All requests from a client first go to the proxy server; the proxy server evaluates the request, and if the request is valid, forwards the request to the outbound side. Similarly, inbound requests are also evaluated by the proxy server. Both client and server interpret that they are communicating with each other; however, it is the SSL proxy that functions between the two. SSL proxy is supported on the SRX550M, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices.

SSL proxies provide encryption and decryption by residing between the server and the client. Because SSL proxies are hidden from both the server and the client, secret keys are shared between the two to decrypt the SSL traffic. Proxies are known as *forward proxies* because proxy servers are used to hide any detailed information from the servers.

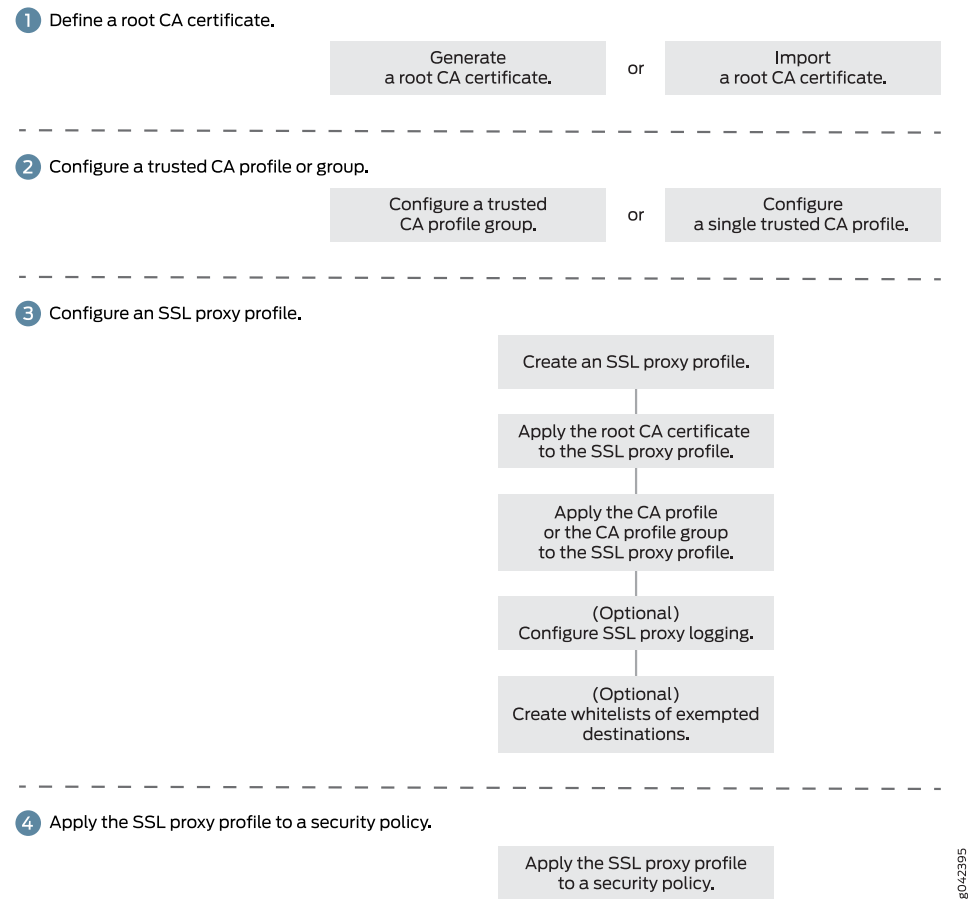
Integrity, confidentiality, and authenticity of traffic are validated through PKI, which includes digital certificates issued by the CA, certificate validity and expiration dates, details about the certificate owner and issuer, and security policies.

- [SSL Proxy Configuration Overview on page 21](#)
- [Configuring a Root CA Certificate on page 22](#)
- [Configuring a CA Profile Group on page 24](#)
- [Configuring a Trusted CA Profile on page 25](#)
- [Importing a Root CA Certificate into a Browser on page 26](#)
- [Applying an SSL Proxy Profile to a Security Policy on page 27](#)
- [Creating a Whitelist of Exempted Destinations on page 28](#)
- [Configuring SSL Proxy Logging on page 30](#)
- [Configuring Ciphers on page 31](#)
- [Exporting Certificates to a Specified Location on page 31](#)
- [Ignoring Server Authentication on page 31](#)

SSL Proxy Configuration Overview

[Figure 3 on page 22](#) displays an overview of how SSL proxy is configured. It includes some required steps, such as configuring the root CA certificate, loading a CA profile group, and applying an SSL proxy profile to a security policy, and some optional steps, such as creating whitelists and SSL proxy logging.

Figure 3: SSL Proxy Configuration Overview



Configuring a Root CA Certificate

A CA can issue multiple certificates in the form of a tree structure. A root certificate is the topmost certificate of the tree, the private key of which is used to *sign* other certificates. All certificates immediately below the root certificate inherit the signature or trustworthiness of the root certificate. This is somewhat like the *notarizing* of an identity.

You can configure a root CA certificate by first obtaining a root CA certificate (by either generating a self-signed one or importing one) and then applying it to an SSL proxy profile. There are two ways you can obtain a root CA certificate—by using the Junos OS CLI on an SRX Series device or by using OpenSSL on a UNIX device.

To generate a root CA certificate using the Junos OS CLI, follow these steps on an SRX Series device:

1. From operational mode, generate a PKI public/private key pair for a local digital certificate.

```
user@host>request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id certificate-id size size
type type
```

- From operational mode, define a self-signed certificate. Specify certificate details such as the certificate identifier (generated in the previous step), a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) for the certificate, and an e-mail address of the entity owning the certificate. You can also specify other information such as the common name and the organization involved. By configuring the **add-ca-constraint** option, you make sure that the certificate can be used for signing other certificates.

```
user@host>request security pki local-certificate generate-self-signed certificate-id
certificate-id domain-name domain-name subject subject email email-id
add-ca-constraint
```

- From configuration mode, apply the loaded certificate as root-ca in the SSL proxy profile.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name root-ca certificate-id
```

- Import the root CA as a trusted CA into client browsers. This is required for the client browsers to trust the certificates signed by the SRX Series device. See [“Importing a Root CA Certificate into a Browser” on page 26](#).

To generate a root CA certificate using OpenSSL, follow these steps on a UNIX device:

- Create folders **keys** and **certs**.

```
mkdir /etc/pki/tls/keys
mkdir /etc/pki/tls/certs
```

- Change to the **openssl** directory.

```
cd /etc/pki/tls
```

- Create a CA certificate key. The following command creates an RSA key using the 3DES encryption named **ca.key** that is 2048 in length. You also need to enter a password that is used to encrypt the private key. This is critical to security if the key is lost because it will still be encrypted.

```
% openssl genrsa -des3 -out keys/ssl-proxy-ca.key 2048
```

- Create a CA certificate based on the CA private key (created in the previous step). The expiration date for this certificate is 3 years or 1095 days. However, you can set it to a different value. When creating the certificate, you need to enter the password and the certificate information that includes distinguished name (DN), country name, and so forth.

```
% openssl req -new -x509 -days 1095 -key keys/ssl-proxy-ca.key -out
certs/ssl-inspect-ca.cer
```

- Import the CA private and public keys into the SRX Series device. Copy the **ca.key** and **ca.cer** keys to the **/var/tmp** directory on the SRX Series device. You can copy using

SCP, or open the files and copy them into “vi” on the SRX Series device to create new files.

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate load certificate-id ssl-inspect-ca key
/var/tmp/ssl-inspect-ca.key filename /var/tmp/ssl-inspect-ca.cer passphrase
password
```

6. From configuration mode, apply the loaded certificate as root-ca in the SSL proxy profile.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile root-ca ssl-inspect-ca
```

7. Import the root CA as a trusted CA into client browsers. This is required for the client browsers to trust the certificates signed by the SRX Series device. See [“Importing a Root CA Certificate into a Browser” on page 26](#).

Configuring a CA Profile Group

The CA profile defines the certificate information to be used for authentication. It includes the public key that SSL proxy uses when generating a new certificate. Junos OS allows you to create a group of CA profiles and load multiple certificates in one action, view information about all certificates in a group, and delete unwanted CA groups.

You can load a group of CA profiles by obtaining a list of trusted CA certificates, defining a CA group, and attaching the CA group to the SSL proxy profile.

1. Obtain a list of trusted CA certificates by following one of these methods:
 - Junos OS provides a default list of trusted CA certificates that you can load on your system using the **default** command option. The Junos OS package contains the default CA certificates as a PEM file (for example, **trusted_CA.pem**). After you download the Junos OS package and reboot your device, the default certificates are available on your system.

From operational mode, load the default trusted CA certificates (the group name identifies the CA profile group):

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate ca-profile-group load ca-group-name
group-name filename default
```

- Alternatively, you can define your own list of trusted CA certificates and import them on your system. You get the list of trusted CAs in a single PEM file (for example **IE-all.pem**) and save the PEM file in a specific location (for example, **/var/tmp**). See [Knowledge Base Article KB23144](#).

From operational mode, load the trusted list to the device (the group name identifies the CA profile group):

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate ca-profile-group load ca-group-name
group-name filename /var/tmp/IE-all.pem
```

2. From configuration mode, attach the CA profile group to the SSL proxy profile. You can attach one or all CA profile groups at a time:

- To attach one CA profile group (the group name identifies the CA profile group):

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name trusted-ca group-name
```

- To attach all CA profile groups:

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name trusted-ca all
```

You can easily display information about all certificates in a CA profile group:

```
user@host> show security pki ca-certificates ca-profile-group group-name
```

You can delete a CA profile group. Remember that deleting a CA profile group deletes all certificates that belong to that group:

```
user@host> clear security pki ca-certificates ca-profile-group group-name
```

Configuring a Trusted CA Profile

Typically, you import a list of trusted CA certificates by creating a group of CA profiles. However, you can also configure a single CA profile (containing one or multiple certificates) and import it using PKI commands. This section shows you how to import a trusted CA certificate from your browser's certificate store into your SRX Series device. The certificate that is configured under the trusted CA is loaded using the PKI commands and is used for validating the server certificate chain.

1. From configuration mode, configure the CA profile used for loading the certificate.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security pki ca-profile profile-name ca-identity ca-identity
```

2. From operational mode, load the certificate using PKI commands.

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate load ca-profile profile-name filename
filename
```

3. From configuration mode, disable the revocation check.



NOTE: CRL checks are not supported; we recommend that you disable revocation checks.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security pki ca-profile profile-name ca-identity ca-identity
revocation-check disable
```

4. From configuration mode, configure the loaded certificate as a trusted CA in the SSL proxy profile.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-proxy-profile-name trusted-ca
ca-profile-name
```



NOTE: More than one trusted CA can be configured for a profile.

5. (Optional) If you have multiple trusted CA certificates, you do not have to specify each trusted CA separately. You can load *all* the trusted CA certificates using the following command from configuration mode.

[edit]

```
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-proxy-profile-name trusted-ca all
```



NOTE: Alternatively, you can import a set of trusted CAs from your browser into the SRX Series device. See [Knowledge Base article KB23144](#).

Importing a Root CA Certificate into a Browser

In order to have your browser or system automatically trust all certificates signed by the root CA configured in the SSL proxy profile, you must instruct your platform or browser to trust the CA root certificate.

To import a root CA certificate:

1. Generate a PEM format file for the configured root CA.

```
request security pki local-certificate export certificate-id root-ca type pem filename  
path/file-name.pem
```

2. Import a root CA certificate into a browser.

From Internet Explorer (version 8.0):

- a. From the Tools menu, choose **Internet Options**.
- b. On the Content tab, click **Certificates**.
- c. Select the **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** tab and click **Import**.
- d. In the Certificate Import Wizard, navigate to the required root CA certificate and select it.

From Firefox (version 39.0):

- a. From the Tools menu, choose **Options**.
- b. From the Advanced menu, select the **Certificates** tab and click **View Certificate**.

- c. In the Certificate Manager window, select the **Authorities** tab and click **Import**.
- d. Navigate to the required root CA certificate and select it.

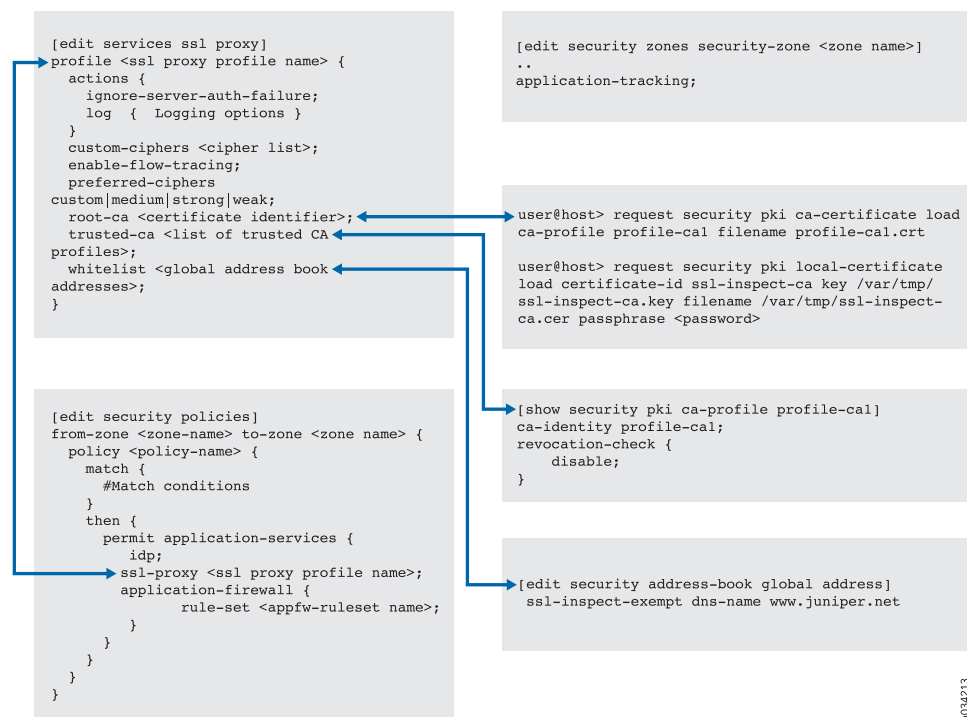
From Google Chrome (45.0):

- a. From the Settings menu, choose **Show Advanced Settings**.
- b. From the Advanced menu, select the **Certificates** tab and click **View Certificate**.
- c. Under HTTPS/SSL, click **Manage Certificates**.
- d. In the Certificate window, select **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** and click **Import**.
- e. In the Certificate Import Wizard, navigate to the required root CA certificate and select it.

Applying an SSL Proxy Profile to a Security Policy

SSL proxy is enabled as an application service within a security policy. In a security policy, you specify the traffic that you want the SSL proxy enabled on as match criteria and then specify the SSL proxy CA profile to be applied to the traffic. [Figure 4 on page 28](#) displays a graphical view of SSL proxy profile and security policy configuration.

Figure 4: Applying an SSL Proxy Profile to a Security Policy



9034213

To enable SSL proxy in a security policy:

1. Create a security policy and specify the match criteria for the policy. As match criteria, specify the traffic for which you want to enable SSL proxy.

```

[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy policy-name
match source-address source-address
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy policy-name
match destination-address destination-address
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy policy-name
match application application

```

2. Apply the SSL proxy profile to the security policy.

```

[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy policy-name
then permit application-services ssl-proxy profile-name profile-name

```

Creating a Whitelist of Exempted Destinations

SSL encryption and decryption are complicated and expensive procedures. You can selectively bypass SSL proxy processing for some sessions by configuring a whitelist. Typically, you would configure the whitelist to include trusted servers or domains with which you are very familiar. You might also include financial and banking sites that you are legally required to include.

Whitelists include addresses that you want to exempt from undergoing SSL proxy processing. For example, if you want to exempt all sessions to **www.mycompany.com**, then you would include it in the whitelist. To configure the whitelist, you specify the domain that you want to exempt in an address book and then configure the address in the SSL proxy profile.

1. Configure the domain in the address book.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address address dns-name
www.mycompany.com
```

2. Specify the global address book address in the SSL proxy profile.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name whitelist address
```

Whitelist addresses and address sets are created under the global address book. The following type of addresses (from the global address book) are supported:

- IPv4 addresses (plain text). For example:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address address-name ipv4-prefix
```

- IPv4 address range. For example:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address address-name range-address
range-low to range-high
```

- IPv4 wildcard. For example:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address address-name wildcard-address
addr/netmask
```

Noncontiguous netmasks are not supported. For example:

- 203.0.113.9/255.255.0.0 is supported.
- 203.0.113.9/255.255.0.255 is NOT supported.

- IPv6 address (plain text). For example:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address address-name ipv6-prefix
```

- DNS name. For example:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address address-name dns-name
domain-name
```

- Translated IP addresses. Sessions are whitelisted based on the actual IP address and not on the translated IP address. Because of this, in the whitelist configuration of the SSL proxy profile, the actual IP address should be provided and not the translated IP addresses.

For example, consider a destination NAT rule that translates destination IP address 192.0.2.10/24 to 198.51.100.8/24 using the following commands:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security nat destination pool d1 address 198.51.100.8/24
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set dst-nat rule r1 match
destination-address 192.0.2.10/24
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set dst-nat rule r1 then destination-nat
pool d1
```

In this scenario, to exempt a session from SSL proxy inspection, the following IP address should be added to the whitelist:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security address-book global address ssl-proxy-exempted-addr
192.0.2.10/24
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile whitelist
ssl-proxy-exempted-addr
```

Whitelist URL categories. the whitelisting feature is extended to include URL categories supported by UTM in the whitelist configuration of SSL forward proxy. In this implementation, the Server Name Indication (SNI) field is extracted by the UTM module from client hello messages to determine the URL category. Each URL category has a unique ID. The list of URL categories under whitelist is parsed and the corresponding category IDs are pushed to the Packet Forwarding Engine for each SSL forward proxy profile. The SSL forward proxy then determines through APIs whether to accept, and proxy, or to ignore the session.

In this example, Enhanced_Financial_Data_and_Services is one of the supported url categories:

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profilesslfp_url_whitelist
whitelist-url-categoriesEnhanced_Financial_Data_and_Services
```



NOTE: The predefined url categories depends on UTM. To enable url based whitelisting in SSL proxy, the following basic url configurations are required:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering type
juniper-enhanced
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmpolicy web-filtering http-profile
junos-wf-enhanced-default
```

Configuring SSL Proxy Logging

When configuring SSL proxy, you can choose to set the option to receive some or all of the logs. SSL proxy logs contain the logical system name, SSL proxy whitelists, policy information, SSL proxy information, and other information that helps you troubleshoot when there is an error.

You can configure logging of *all* or specific events, such as error, warning, and information events. You can also configure logging of sessions that are whitelisted, dropped, ignored, or allowed after an error occurs.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name actions log all
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name actions log sessions-whitelisted
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name actions log sessions-allowed
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name actions log errors
```

You can use **enable-flow-tracing** option to enable debug tracing.

Configuring Ciphers

You can configure the following ciphers for an SSL proxy profile:

- **preferred-ciphers**—Preferred ciphers allow you to define an SSL cipher that can be used with acceptable key strength. Ciphers are divided in three categories depending on their key strength: strong, medium, or weak.
- **custom-ciphers**—Custom ciphers allow you to define your own cipher list. If you do not want to use one of the three categories, you can select ciphers from each of the categories to form a custom cipher set. To configure custom ciphers, you must set **preferred-ciphers** to custom.

The following example shows how to create a custom cipher. In this example, you set **preferred-cipher** to custom and add the cipher list (rsa-with-3des-ede-cbc-sha and rsa-with-aes-256-cbc-sha):

```
set services ssl proxy profile profile-name preferred-ciphers custom
set services ssl proxy profile profile-name custom-ciphers rsa-with-3des-ede-cbc-sha
set services ssl proxy profile profile-name custom-ciphers rsa-with-aes-256-cbc-sha
```

Exporting Certificates to a Specified Location

When a self-signed certificate is generated using a PKI command, the newly generated certificate is stored in a predefined location (**var/db/certs/common/local**).

Use the following command to export the certificate to a specific location (within the device). You can specify the certificate ID, the filename, and the type of file format (DER/PEM):

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate export certificate-id certificate-id
user@host> request security pki local-certificate export filename filename
user@host> request security pki local-certificate export type der
```

Ignoring Server Authentication

Junos OS allows you to configure an option to ignore server authentication completely. If you configure your system to ignore authentication, then any errors encountered during server certificate verification at the time of the SSL handshake are ignored. Commonly ignored errors include the inability to verify CA signature, incorrect certificate expiration dates, and so forth. If this option is not set, all the sessions where the server sends self-signed certificates are dropped when errors are encountered.

We do not recommend using this option for authentication because configuring it results in websites not being authenticated at all. However, you can use this option to effectively identify the root cause of dropped SSL sessions.

From configuration mode, specify to ignore server authentication:

```
[edit]
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile profile-name actions ignore-server-auth-failure
```

Related Documentation

- [SSL Proxy Overview on page 11](#)
- [Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy on page 32](#)
- [Understanding Self-Signed Certificates](#)
- [show services ssl proxy statistics](#)
- [clear services ssl proxy statistics](#)

Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy

Debug tracing on both Routing Engine and the Packet Forwarding Engine can be enabled for SSL proxy by setting the following configuration:

```
user@host# set services ssl traceoptions
```

This feature is supported on the SRX550M, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices. [Table 6 on page 32](#) shows the supported levels for trace options.

Table 6: Trace Levels

Cause Type	Description
Brief	Only error traces on both the Routing Engine and the Packet Forwarding Engine.
Detail	Packet Forwarding Engine—Only event details up to the handshake should be traced. Routing Engine—Traces related to commit. No periodic traces on the Routing Engine will be available
Extensive	Packet Forwarding Engine—Data transfer summary available. Routing Engine—Traces related to commit (more extensive). No periodic traces on the Routing Engine will be available.
Verbose	All traces are available.

[Table 7 on page 33](#) shows the flags that are supported.

Table 7: Supported Flags in Trace

Cause Type	Description
cli-configuration	Configuration-related traces only.
initiation	Enable tracing on the SSL-I plug-in.
proxy	Enable tracing on the SSL-Proxy-Policy plug-in.
termination	Enable tracing on the SSL-T plug-in.
selected-profile	Enable tracing only for profiles that have enable-flow-tracing set.

You can enable logs in the SSL proxy profile to get to the root cause for the drop. The following errors are some of the most common:

- Server certification validation error. Check the trusted CA configuration to verify your configuration.
- System failures such as memory allocation failures.
- Ciphers do not match.
- SSL versions do not match.
- SSL options are not supported.
- Root CA has expired. You need to load a new root CA.

You can enable the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option in the SSL proxy profile to ensure that certificate validation, root CA expiration dates, and other such issues are ignored. If sessions are inspected after the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option is enabled, the problem is localized.

- Related Documentation**
- [SSL Proxy Overview on page 11](#)
 - [Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21](#)

CHAPTER 4

Configuring Pass-Through Authentication

- [Understanding Pass-Through Authentication on page 35](#)
- [Example: Configuring Pass-Through Authentication on page 37](#)
- [Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Pass-Through Authentication on page 43](#)

Understanding Pass-Through Authentication

Pass-through user authentication is a form of active authentication; the user is prompted to enter a username and password when pass-through authentication is invoked. If the user's identity is validated, the user is allowed to pass through the firewall and gain access to the requested resources.

When a user attempts to initiate an HTTP, an HTTPS, an FTP, or a Telnet connection request that has a policy requiring authentication, the device intercepts the request and prompts the user to enter a username and password. Depending on the configuration, the device validates the username and password by checking them against those stored in the local database or on an external authentication server.

If an external authentication server is used, after the user's credentials are collected, they are processed through firewall user authentication. The following external authentication servers are supported:

- RADIUS authentication and authorization (compatible with Juniper Steel-Belted Radius servers)

You can use an external RADIUS server if, in addition to authentication, you want to obtain authorization information about the user's access right (what the user can do on the network).

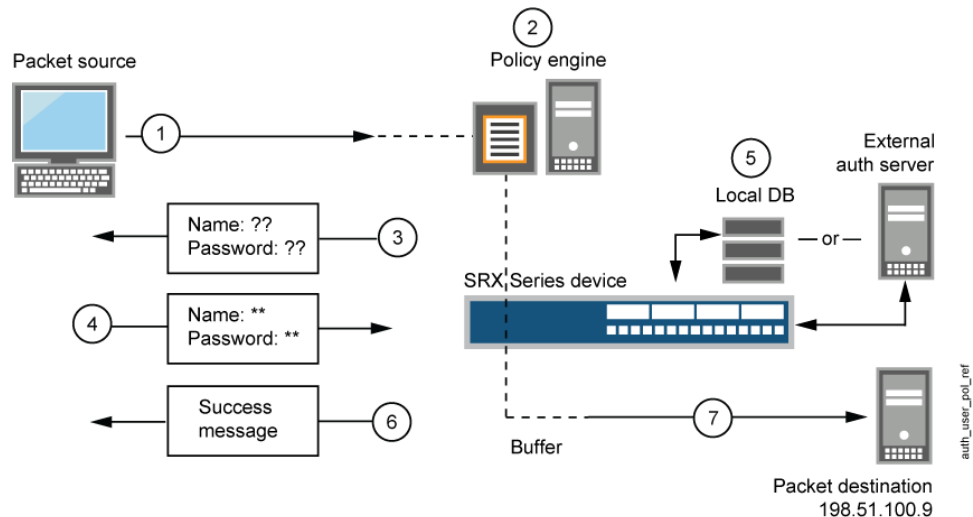
- LDAP authentication only (supports LDAP version 3, compatible with Windows AD)
- SecurID authentication only (uses an RSA SecurID external authentication server)

A firewall user is a network user who must provide a username and password for authentication when initiating a connection across the firewall. You can put several user accounts together to form a user group, which you can store on the local database or on a RADIUS, an LDAP, or a SecurID server. When you reference an authentication user group and an external authentication server in a policy, the traffic matching the policy triggers an authentication check.



NOTE: You use `family inet` to assign an IPv4 address. You use `family inet6` to assign an IPv6 address. An interface can be configured with both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address. For the sake of brevity, these examples use IPv4 addresses only.

Figure 5: Policy Lookup for a User



The steps in [Figure 5 on page 36](#) are as follows:

1. A client user sends an FTP, an HTTP, an HTTPS, or a Telnet packet to 198.51.100.9.
2. The device intercepts the packet, notes that its policy requires authentication from either the local database or an external authentication server, and buffers the packet.
3. The device prompts the user for login information through FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, or Telnet.
4. The user replies with a username and password.
5. The device either checks for an authentication user account on its local database or sends the login information to the external authentication server as specified in the policy.
6. Finding a valid match (or receiving notice of such a match from the external authentication server), the device informs the user that the login has been successful.
7. For HTTP, HTTPS, or Telnet traffic, the device forwards the packet from its buffer to its destination IP address, 198.51.100.9/24. However, for FTP traffic, after successful authentication, the device closes the session and the user must reconnect to the FTP server at IP address 198.51.100.9/24.

After the device authenticates a user at a particular source IP address, it subsequently permits traffic—as specified in the policy requiring authentication through pass through—from any other user at that same address. This might be the case if the user

originates traffic from behind a NAT device that changes all original source addresses to a single translated address.



NOTE: The pass-through user authentication method is recommended in situations when security has a higher priority than convenience. This authentication method applies only to the session and child sessions matching the policy that triggered it. You can apply this method on Internet-facing links, if used with caution.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Understanding Web Authentication on page 51](#)
- [Example: Configuring Pass-Through Authentication on page 37](#)

Example: Configuring Pass-Through Authentication

This example shows how to configure pass-through authentication to authenticate firewall users. A firewall user is a network user who must provide a username and password when initiating a connection across the firewall.

Pass-through authentication allows SRX Series administrators to restrict users who attempt to access a resource in another zone using FTP, Telnet, HTTP, or HTTPS. If the traffic matches a security policy whose action is pass-through authentication, the user is required to provide login information.

For HTTPS, to ensure security the HTTPS default certificate key size is 2048 bits. If you do not specify a certificate size, the default size is assumed.

- [Requirements on page 37](#)
- [Overview on page 38](#)
- [Configuration on page 38](#)
- [Verification on page 42](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, define firewall users. See [Firewall User Authentication Overview](#).

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- SRX Series device
- Firewall user's system
- Packet destination system

Overview

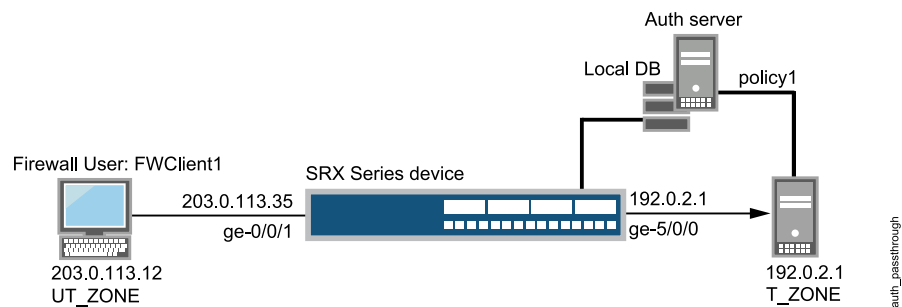
The pass-through authentication process is triggered when a client, referred to as a firewall user, attempts to initiate an FTP, a Telnet, or an HTTP session to access a resource in another zone. The SRX Series firewall acts as a proxy for an FTP, a Telnet, an HTTP, or an HTTPS server so that it can authenticate the firewall user before allowing the user access to the actual FTP, Telnet, or HTTP server behind the firewall.

If traffic generated from a connection request sent by a firewall user matches a security policy rule bidirectionally and that rule specifies pass-through firewall authentication as the action of its **then** clause, the SRX Series device requires the firewall user to authenticate to a Junos OS proxy server.

If the authentication is successful, subsequent traffic from the same source IP address is automatically allowed to pass through the SRX Series device if the traffic matches the security policy tuples.

Figure 6 on page 38 shows the topology used in this example.

Figure 6: Configuring Pass-Through Firewall Authentication



NOTE: Although the topology shows use of an external server, it is not covered in the configuration. It is outside the scope of this example.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.35/24
set interfaces ge-5/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.0.2.1/24
set access profile FWAUTH client FWClient1 firewall-user password password
set access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile FWAUTH
  
```

```

set access firewall-authentication pass-through telnet banner success "WELCOME TO JUNIPER
TELNET SESSION"
set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE interfaces ge-0/0/1.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols
all
set security zones security-zone T-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone T-ZONE interfaces ge-5/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols
all
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match destination-address
any
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match application junos-telnet
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 then permit
firewall-authentication pass-through client-match FWClient1

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure pass-through authentication:

1. Configure two interfaces and assign IP addresses to them.



NOTE: For this example, it is optional to assign two addresses to the interfaces.

[edit]

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.35/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-5/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.0.2.1/24

```

2. Create the FWAUTH access profile for the FWClient1 user, specify the user's password, and define a success banner for Telnet sessions.

[edit access]

```

user@host# set access profile FWAUTH client FWClient1 firewall-user password
pwd
user@host# set firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile FWAUTH
user@host# set firewall-authentication pass-through telnet banner success
"WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESSION"

```

3. Configure security zones.



NOTE: For this example, it is optional to configure a second interface for a security zone.

[edit security zones]

```

user@host# set security-zone UT-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security-zone UT-ZONE interfaces ge-0/0/1.0 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all

```

```
user@host# set security-zone T-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security-zone T-ZONE interfaces ge-5/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all
```

4. Assign security policy P1 to the security zones.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match
source-address any
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match
destination-address any
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match application
junos-telnet
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 then permit
firewall-authentication pass-through client-match FWClient1
```

5. Use Telnet to authenticate the FWClient1 firewall user to host2.

```
user@FWClient1# run telnet 192.0.2.1/24
Trying 192.0.2.1/24...
Connected to 192.0.2.1/24
Escape character is '^]'.
Firewall User Authentication
Username: FWClient1
Password:$ABC123
WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESSION
Host1 (ttyp0)
login: user
Password: $ABC123
--- JUNOS 10.1R1.1 built 2009-10-12 13:30:18 UTC
%
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering these commands.

- **show interfaces**
- **show access**
- **show security zones**
- **show security policies**

If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, the output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 203.0.113.35;
    }
  }
}
```

```

}
ge-5/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.1/24;
    }
  }
}
...
user@host# show access
profile FWAUTH {
  authentication-order password;
  client FWClient1 {
    firewall-user {
      password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
    }
  }
}
firewall-authentication {
  pass-through {
    default-profile FWAUTH;
    telnet {
      banner {
        success "WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESSION";
      }
    }
  }
}
}

user@host# show security zones
security-zone UT-ZONE {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-zone T-ZONE {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-5/0/0.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```
    }  
  }  
}  
}  
  
user@host# show security policies  
...  
from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE {  
  policy P1 {  
    match {  
      source-address any;  
      destination-address any;  
      application junos-telnet;  
    }  
    then {  
      permit {  
        firewall-authentication {  
          pass-through {  
            client-match FWClient1;  
          }  
        }  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter commit from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Verifying Firewall User Authentication and Monitoring Users and IP Addresses in the Authentication Table on page 42](#)

Verifying Firewall User Authentication and Monitoring Users and IP Addresses in the Authentication Table

Purpose Display firewall authentication user history and verify the number of firewall users who successfully authenticated and the number of firewall users who failed to log in.

Action From operational mode, enter these **show** commands:

```
user@host> show security firewall-authentication history  
History of firewall authentication data:  
Authentications: 2  
Id Source Ip Date Time Duration Status User  
1 203.0.113.12 2010-10-12 21:24:02 0:00:24 Failed FWClient1  
2 203.0.113.12 2010-10-12 21:24:48 0:00:22 Success FWClient1  
  
user@host> show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1  
Username: FWClient1  
Source IP: 203.0.113.12  
Authentication state: Success
```

```

Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access start date: 2010-10-12
Access start time: 21:24:02
Duration of user access: 0:00:24
Source zone: UT-ZONE
Destination zone: T-ZONE
Access profile: FWAUTH
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 2660

```

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users
Firewall authentication data:
Total users in table: 1

```

Id	Source Ip	Src zone	Dst zone	Profile	Age	Status	User
4	203.0.113.12	UT-ZONE	T-ZONE	FWAUTH	1	Success	FWClient1

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3
Username: FWClient1
Source IP: 203.0.113.12
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Age: 3
Access time remaining: 9
Source zone: UT-ZONE
Destination zone: T-ZONE
Access profile: FWAUTH
Interface Name: ge-0/0/1.0
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 1521

```

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Understanding Pass-Through Authentication on page 35](#)

Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Pass-Through Authentication

This example shows how to configure HTTPS traffic to trigger pass-through authentication. HTTPS is more secure than HTTP, so it has become more popular and is more widely used.

- [Requirements on page 43](#)
- [Overview on page 44](#)
- [Configuration on page 45](#)
- [Verification on page 49](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- SRX Series device

- Two PCs running Linux and Open SSL. One PC acts as a client and another as an HTTPS server. The two PCs are used to create key files and to send traffic.
- Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 or later for SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40 or later for vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways.



NOTE: Starting in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10, HTTPS-based authentication is introduced on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices.

Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40, HTTPS-based authentication is introduced on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways.

Before you begin:

An SRX Series device has to decode HTTPS traffic to trigger pass-through authentication. Then, SSL termination proxy creates and installs a private key file and a certification file. The following list describes the steps to create and install a private key file and a certification key file.



NOTE: If you have an official .crt file and .key file, then you can directly upload and install the files on the SRX Series device. If you do not have a .crt file and .key file, follow the procedure to create and install the files. Instructions specified in Step 1 and Step 2 must be run on a PC with Linux and OpenSSL installed. Instructions specified in Step 3 and Step 4 must be run in operational mode.

To create and install a private key file and a certification file:

1. On a PC create the .key file.

```
openssl genrsa -out /tmp/device.key 1024
```

2. On a PC, create the .crt file.

```
openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -key /tmp/server.key -out /tmp/device.crt -subj  
"/C=CN/ST=BJ/L=BJ/O=JNPR/OU=CNRD/CN=203.0.113.1/emailAddress=device@mycompany.com"
```

3. Upload the .key and .crt files to an SRX Series device, and install the files on the device using the following command from operational mode:

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate load filename /var/tmp/device.crt  
key /var/tmp/device.key certificate-id device
```

Overview

Firewall authentication initiates a secure connection to be established across two devices. A network user must provide a username and password for authentication when initiating a connection across the firewall. Firewall authentication supports HTTPS traffic for

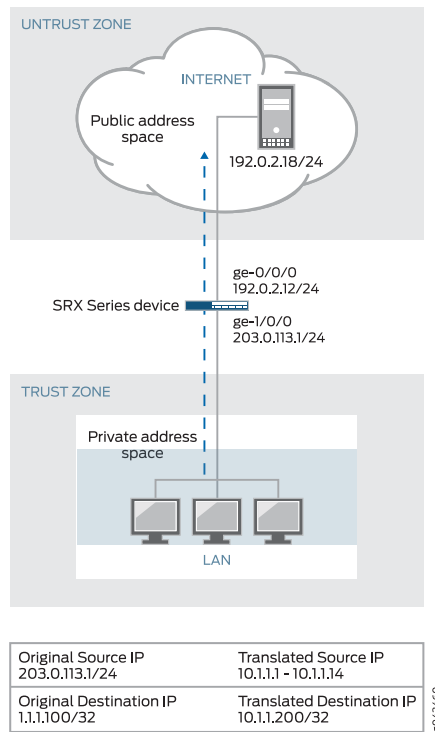
pass-through authentication. HTTPS can secure HTTP firewall authentication traffic between users and the SRX Series device.

HTTPS is the secure version of HTTP, the protocol over which data is sent between the user and the device that the user is connected to. All communications between the user and the connected devices are encrypted. HTTPS is often used to protect highly confidential online transactions like online banking and online shopping order forms.

In this example, HTTPS traffic is used to trigger pass-through authentication because HTTPS is more secure than HTTP. For HTTPS traffic to trigger pass-through authentication you must first configure the SSL termination profile.

Figure 7 on page 45 shows an example of pass-through authentication using HTTPS traffic. In this example, a host or a user from an untrust zone tries to access resources on the trust zone. The SRX Series device uses HTTPS to collect the username and password information. Subsequent traffic from the host or user is allowed or denied based on the result of this authentication.

Figure 7: Pass-Through Authentication Using HTTPS Traffic



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.0.2.12/24
```

```
set interfaces ge-1/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.1/24
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match destination-address
  any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match application any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication pass-through access-profile local_pf
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication pass-through ssl-termination-profile ssl_pf
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then log session-init
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then log session-close
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols
  all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces ge-1/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces ge-1/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols
  all
set access profile local_pf client user1 firewall-user password <password>
set access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile local_pf
set services ssl termination profile ssl_pf server-certificate device
```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure HTTPS traffic to trigger pass-through authentication:

1. Configure interfaces and assign IP addresses.

[edit interfaces]

```
user@host# set ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.0.2.12/24
```

```
user@host# set ge-1/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.1/24
```

2. Configure security policies to permit firewall authenticated traffic from zone trust to zone untrust.

[edit security policies]

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication pass-through access-profile local_pf
```

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication pass-through ssl-termination-profile ssl_pf
```

3. Specify a policy action to take when a packet matches the criteria.

[edit security policies]

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address
  any
```

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match destination-address
  any
```

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match application any
```

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then log session-init
```

```
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then log session-close
```

4. Configure security zones and assign interfaces.

[edit security zones]

```

user@host# set security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all
user@host# set security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all

```

5. Configure application services for zones.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
protocols all
user@host# set security-zone untrust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
protocols all

```

6. Create an access profile and configure the client as a firewall user and set the password.

```

[edit access]
user@host# set profile local_pf client user1 firewall-user password <password>

```

7. Configure the type of firewall and the default profile name where the authentication settings are defined.

```

[edit access]
user@host# set firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile local_pf

```

8. Configure the SSL termination profile and enter a local certificate identifier name.

```

[edit services]
user@host# set ssl termination profile ssl_pf server-certificate device

```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security policies**, **show security zones**, **show access**, and **show services ssl termination** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```

user@host# show interfaces
...
interfaces
  ge-0/0/0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 192.0.2.12;
      }
    }
  }
  ge-1/0/0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 203.0.113.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```
user@host# show security policies
...
policies
  from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
    policy p1 {
      match {
        source-address any;
        destination-address any;
        application any;
      }
      then {
        permit {
          firewall-authentication {
            pass-through {
              access-profile local_pf;
              ssl-termination-profile ssl_pf;
            }
          }
        }
        log {
          session-init;
          session-close;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

user@host# show security zones
...
zones {
  security-zone trust {
    interfaces {
      ge-0/0/0.0 {
        host-inbound-traffic {
          system-services {
            all;
          }
          protocols {
            all;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
  security-zone untrust {
    interfaces {
      ge-1/0/0.0 {
        host-inbound-traffic {
          system-services {
            all;
          }
          protocols {
            all;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}

user@host# show access
...
access {
  profile local_pf {
    client user1 {
      firewall-user {
        password password;
      }
    }
  }
  firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
      default-profile local_pf;
    }
  }
}

user@host# show services ssl termination
...
services {
  ssl {
    termination {
      profile ssl_pf {
        server-certificate device;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying the Configuration

Purpose Verify that the configuration is correct.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security firewall-authentication users** command for identifier 1.

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 1
Username: user1
Source IP: 203.0.113.1/24
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using HTTPS
Age: 0
Access time remaining: 10
Lsys: root-logical-system
Source zone: trust
Destination zone: untrust
Access profile: local_pf
Interface Name: ge-0/0/0.0

```

Bytes sent by this user: 946
Bytes received by this user: 0

Meaning The `show security firewall-authentication users` command displays the firewall authentication user information for the specified identifier. If the output displays Pass-through using HTTPS in the Authentication method field and Success in the Authentication state field, then your configuration is correct.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Understanding Pass-Through Authentication on page 35](#)
- [Example: Configuring Pass-Through Authentication on page 37](#)

CHAPTER 5

Configuring Web Authentication

- [Understanding Web Authentication on page 51](#)
- [Example: Configuring Web Authentication on page 53](#)
- [Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Web Authentication on page 60](#)

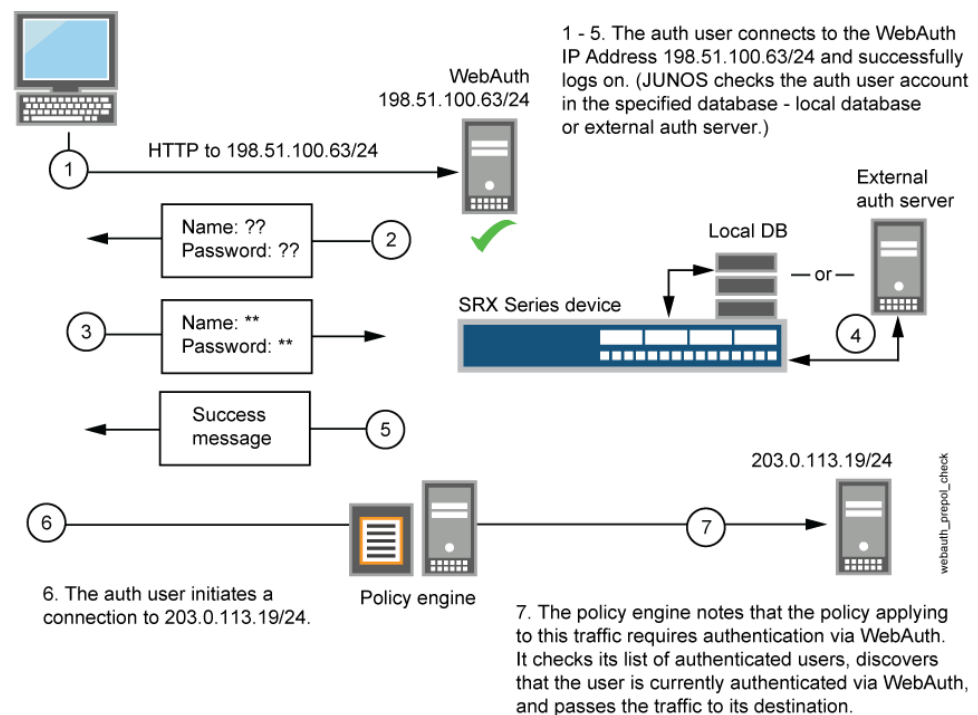
Understanding Web Authentication

Web authentication is an alternative to pass-through user authentication. Instead of pointing to the resource that you want to connect to from your client browser, you point the browser to an IP address on the device that is enabled for Web authentication. This initiates an HTTP session to the IP address hosting the Web authentication feature on the device. The device then prompts you for your username and password and caches the result in the device. Later, when traffic encounters a Web authentication policy, you are allowed or denied access based on the prior Web authentication results, as shown in [Figure 8 on page 52](#).



NOTE: You use `family inet` to assign an IPv4 address. You use `family inet6` to assign an IPv6 address. An interface can be configured with both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address. For the sake of brevity, these examples use IPv4 addresses only.

Figure 8: Web Authentication Example



Follow these Web authentication guidelines:

- You can leave the default Web authentication server as the local database or you can choose an external authentication server for the role. The default Web authentication profile determines if the user authenticates using the local database or the external authentication server. An access profile stores usernames and passwords of users or points to external authentication servers where such information is stored.
- The Web authentication address must be in the same subnet as the interface that you want to use to host it. For example, if you want authentication users to connect using Web authentication through ethernet3, which has IP address 203.0.113.1/24, then you can assign Web authentication an IP address in the 203.0.113.0/24 subnet.
- You can put a Web authentication address in the same subnet as the IP address of any physical interface or virtual security interface (VSI). (For information about different types of interfaces, see *Security Zones and Interfaces Overview*.)
- You can put Web authentication addresses on multiple interfaces.
- After a device authenticates a user at a particular source IP address, it subsequently permits traffic—as specified in the policy requiring authentication through Web authentication—from any other user at that same address. This might be the case if the user originates traffic from behind a NAT device that changes all original source addresses to a single translated address.
- With Web authentication enabled, any HTTP traffic to the IP address will get the Web authentication login page instead of the administrator login page. Disabling this option

will show the administrator login page (assuming that **[system services web-management HTTP]** is enabled).

- We recommend that you have a separate primary or preferred IP address, if an address is used for Web authentication.



NOTE: The Web authentication method is recommended in situations when the client devices are immediately adjacent to the security gateway and there is high assurance that the client devices are not multiuser hosts. This authentication method is best applied to wireless links and DMZ, or conference room links.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Understanding Pass-Through Authentication on page 35](#)
- [Example: Configuring Web Authentication on page 53](#)

Example: Configuring Web Authentication

This example shows how to enable Web authentication and set up a policy that allows access to a user when traffic encounters a policy that has Web authentication enabled.

- [Requirements on page 53](#)
- [Overview on page 53](#)
- [Configuration on page 54](#)
- [Verification on page 59](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Define firewall users. See “[Firewall User Authentication Overview](#)” on page 7.
- Add the Web authentication HTTP flag under the interface’s address hierarchy to enable Web authentication.

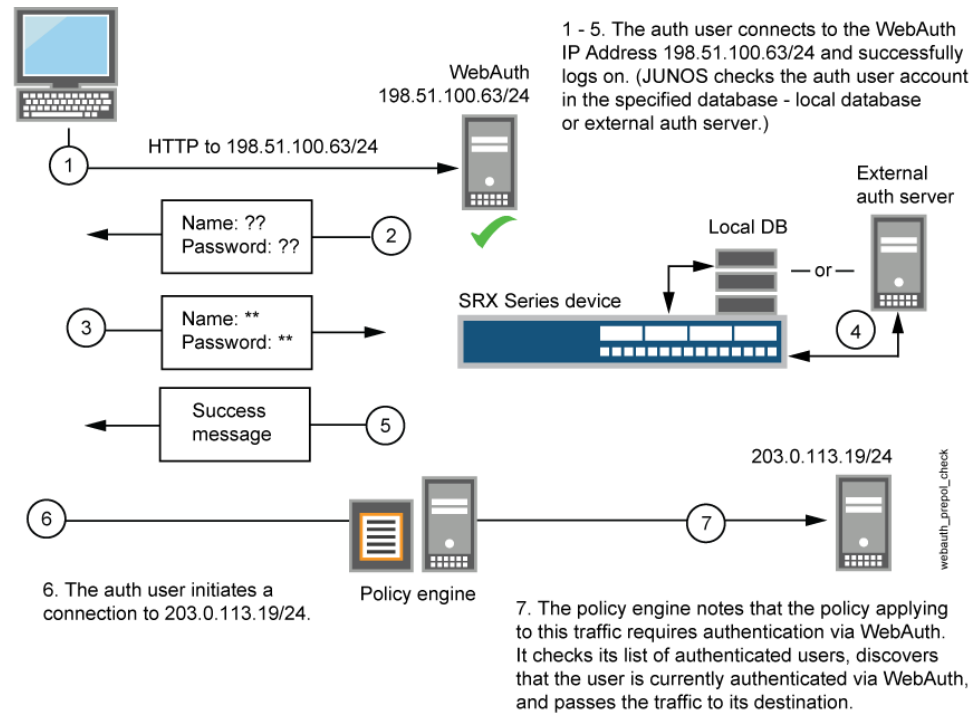
Overview

To enable Web authentication, you must specify the IP address of the device hosting the HTTP session. These settings are used if the firewall user accessing a protected resource wants to be authenticated by directly accessing the webserver or by Web authentication. The following instructions show how to set up a policy that allows access to the FWClient1 user when traffic encounters a policy that has Web authentication enabled (Policy-W). (See [Figure 9 on page 54](#).) In this example, FWClient1 has already authenticated through the Web authentication login page.

The FWClient1 firewall user does the following to get authenticated:

- a. Points the browser to the Web authentication IP (198.51.100.63/24) to get authenticated first
- b. Starts traffic to access resources specified by the policy-W policy

Figure 9: Web Authentication Example



When you configure the device as described in these instructions and the user successfully authenticates, the screen illustrated in [Figure 10 on page 54](#) appears.

Figure 10: Web Authentication Success Banner



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 198.51.100.23/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 198.51.100.23/24 web-authentication http
set interfaces fe-5/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.15/24
set access profile WEBAUTH client FWclient1 firewall-user password pwd
set access firewall-authentication web-authentication default-profile WEBAUTH
set access firewall-authentication web-authentication banner success "WEB AUTH LOGIN SUCCESS"
set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
```

```

set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE interfaces ge-0/0/1.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols
all
set security zones security-zone T-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone T-ZONE interfaces ge-5/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols
all
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match destination-address
any
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match application any
set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 then permit
firewall-authentication web-authentication client-match FWClient1
set system services web-management http interface ge-0/0/1.0

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure Web authentication:

1. Configure two interfaces and assign IP addresses to them.



NOTE: For this example, it is optional to assign two addresses to the interfaces.

[edit]

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 198.51.100.23/24
```

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 198.51.100.63/24
web-authentication http
```

```
user@host# set interfaces fe-5/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.15/24
```

2. Create the WEBAUTH access profile for the FWClient1 user, specify the user's password, and define a success banner.

[edit access]

```
user@host# set profile WEBAUTH client FWClient1 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set firewall-authentication web-authentication default-profile
WEBAUTH
```

```
user@host# set firewall-authentication web-authentication banner success "WEB
AUTH LOGIN SUCCESS"
```

3. Configure security zones.



NOTE: For this example, it is optional to configure a second interface for a security zone.

[edit security zones]

```
user@host# set security-zone UT-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
```

```
user@host# set security-zone UT-ZONE interfaces ge-0/0/1.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

```
user@host# set security-zone T-ZONE host-inbound-traffic system-services all
```

```
user@host# set security-zone T-ZONE interfaces ge-5/0/0.0 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

4. Assign security policy P1 to the security zones.

[edit security policies]

```
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match source-address any
```

```
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match destination-address any
```

```
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 match application any
```

```
user@host# set from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy P1 then permit firewall-authentication web-authentication client-match FWClient1
```

5. Activate the HTTP process (daemon) on your device.

[edit]

```
user@host# set system services web-management http interface ge-0/0/1.0
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering these commands:

- `show interfaces`
- `show access`
- `show security zones`
- `show security policies`
- `show system services`

If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this **show** output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```

user@host# show interfaces
...
}
ge-0/0/1{
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 198.51.100.23/24 {
      address 198.51.100.63/24 {
        web-authentication http;
      }
    }
  }
}
fe-5/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 198.51.100.14/24;
    }
  }
}
...

user@host# show access
profile WEBAUTH {
  client FWClient1 {
    firewall-user {
      password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
    }
  }
}
firewall-authentication {
  web-authentication {
    default-profile WEBAUTH;
    banner {
      success "WEB AUTH LOGIN SUCCESS";
    }
  }
}

user@host# show security zones
...
}
security-zone UT-ZONE {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        protocols {
          all;

```

```
    }
  }
}
security-zone T-ZONE {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-5/0/0.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

user@host# show security policies
...
from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE {
  policy P1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        firewall-authentication {
          web-authentication {
            client-match FWClient1;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

user@host# show system services
...
ftp;
ssh;
telnet;
web-management {
  http {
    interface g-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Verifying Firewall User Authentication and Monitoring Users and IP Addresses in the Authentication Table on page 59](#)

Verifying Firewall User Authentication and Monitoring Users and IP Addresses in the Authentication Table

Purpose Display firewall authentication user history and verify the number of firewall users who successfully authenticated and firewall users who failed to log in.

Action From operational mode, enter these **show** commands:

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history
user@host> show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1
user@host> show security firewall-authentication users
user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history
History of firewall authentication data:
Authentications: 1
Id Source Ip Date Time Duration Status User
5 198.51.100.75      2010-04-24 01:08:57 0:10:30    Success  FWClient1

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1
Username: FWClient1
Source IP: 198.51.100.752
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Web-authentication
Access start date: 2010-10-12
Access start time: 21:24:02
Duration of user access: 0:00:24
Source zone: N/A
Destination zone: N/A
Access profile: WEBAUTH
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 2660

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users
Firewall authentication data:
Total users in table: 1
Id Source Ip Src zone Dst zone Profile Age Status User
4 198.51.100.75      N/A  N/A  WEBAUTH      1 Success  FWClient1

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3
Username: FWClient1
Source IP: 198.51.100.75
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Web-authentication
Age: 3
Access time remaining: 9
Source zone: N/A

```

Destination zone: N/A
Access profile: WEBAUTH
Interface Name: ge-0/0/1.0
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 1521

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding Web Authentication on page 51](#)
- [Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization on page 85](#)
- [Security Zones and Interfaces Overview](#)

Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Web Authentication

This example shows how to configure HTTPS traffic to trigger Web authentication. HTTPS is widely used for Web authentication because it is more secure than HTTP.

- [Requirements on page 60](#)
- [Overview on page 61](#)
- [Configuration on page 62](#)
- [Verification on page 64](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- SRX Series device
- Two PCs with Linux and Open SSL installed. One PC acts as a client and another as an HTTPS server. The two PCs are used to create key files and to send traffic.
- Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 or later for SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40 or later for vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways.

An SRX Series device has to decode the HTTPS traffic to trigger Web authentication. The following list describes the steps to create and install a private key file and a certification key file.



NOTE: If you have an official .crt file and .key file, then you can directly upload and install the files on the SRX Series device. If you do not have a .crt file and .key file, then follow the procedure to create and install the files. Instructions specified in Step 1 and Step 2 must be run on a PC which has Linux and OpenSSL installed. Instructions specified in Step 3 and Step 4 must be run in operational mode.

1. From the PC, create the .key file.


```
openssl genrsa -out /tmp/device.key 1024
```

2. From the PC, create the .crt file.

```
openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -key /tmp/server.key -out /tmp/device.crt -subj  
"/C=CN/ST=BJ/L=BJ/O=JNPR/OU=CNRD/CN=203.0.113.22/emailAddress=device@mycompany.com"
```

3. From the SRX Series device, upload the .key and .crt files and install the files on the device using the following command:

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate load filename /var/tmp/device.crt  
key /var/tmp/device.key certificate-id device
```

Overview

Firewall authentication initiates a secure connection to be established across two devices. A network user must provide a username and password for authentication when initiating a connection across the firewall. Firewall authentication supports HTTPS traffic for pass-through authentication. HTTPS can secure HTTP firewall authentication traffic between users and the SRX Series device.

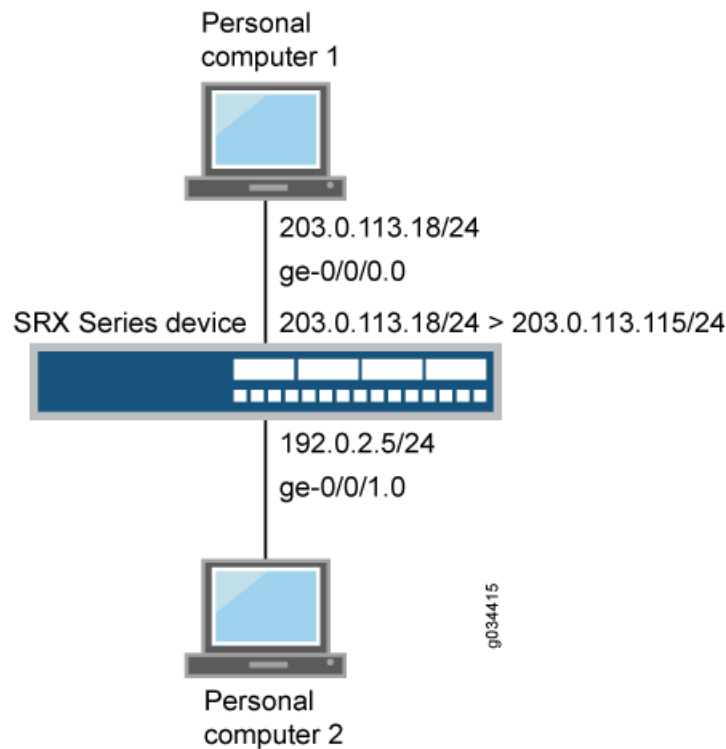
HTTPS is the secure version of HTTP, the protocol over which data is sent between the user and the device that the user is connected to. All communications between the user and the connected devices are encrypted. HTTPS is often used to protect highly confidential online transactions like online banking and online shopping order forms.

In this example, HTTPS traffic is used to trigger Web authentication because HTTPS is more secure than HTTP.

The user uses HTTPS to access an IP address on the device that is enabled for Web authentication. In this scenario, the user does not use HTTPS to access the IP address of the protected resource. The user is prompted for a username and password, which are verified by the device. Subsequent traffic from the user or host to the protected resource is allowed or denied based on the results of this Web authentication.

[Figure 11 on page 62](#) shows an example of Web authentication using HTTPS traffic.

Figure 11: Web Authentication Using HTTPS Traffic



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set system services web-management https pki-local-certificate device
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.18/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.115/24 web-authentication https
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 192.0.2.5/24
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match application any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
set access profile local_pf client user1 firewall-user password user1
set access firewall-authentication web-authentication default-profile local_pf
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit firewall-authentication web-authentication
```

Step-by-Step Procedure To configure HTTPS traffic to trigger Web authentication:

1. Enable Web-management support to HTTPS traffic.
[edit system services]

```
user@host# set web-management https pki-local-certificate device
```

2. Configure interfaces and assign IP addresses. Enable Web authentication at ge-0/0/0 interface.

```
[edit interfaces]
user@host# set ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.18/24
set ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.115/24 web-authentication https
user@host# set ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 192.0.2.5/24
```

3. Configure security policies to permit firewall authenticated traffic from zone trust to zone untrust.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address
any destination-address any application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then
permit
```

4. Create an access profile, configure the client as a firewall user, and set the password.

```
[edit access]
user@host# set profile local_pf client user1 firewall-user password user1
```

5. Configure the type of firewall authentication settings.

```
[edit access]
user@host# set firewall-authentication web-authentication default-profile local_pf
```

6. Specify a policy action to take when a packet matches the criteria.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
firewall-authentication web-authentication
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show system services**, **show interfaces**, **show security policies**, and **show access** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show system services
web-management {
  https {
    pki-local-certificate device;
  }
}

user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 203.0.113.115/24 {
        web-authentication https;
```

```
    }  
  }  
}  
ge-0/0/1 {  
  unit 0 {  
    family inet {  
      address 192.0.2.5/24;  
    }  
  }  
}  
  
user@host# show security policies  
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {  
  policy p1 {  
    match {  
      source-address any;  
      destination-address any;  
      application any;  
    }  
    then {  
      permit {  
        firewall-authentication {  
          web-authentication;  
        }  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}  
  
user@host# show access  
profile local_pf {  
  client user1 {  
    firewall-user {  
      password "user1";  
    }  
  }  
}  
firewall-authentication {  
  web-authentication {  
    default-profile local_pf;  
  }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verifying the Configuration

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| Purpose | Verify that the configuration is correct. |
| Action | From operational mode, enter the show security firewall-authentication users identifier identifier command. |

Sample Output

```
user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 1
Username: user1
Source IP: 203.1.113.102
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Web-authentication
Age: 0
Access time remaining: 10
Lsys: root-logical-system
Source zone: N/A
Destination zone: N/A
Access profile: local_pf
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 0
```

Meaning The `show security firewall-authentication users identifier identifier` command displays the firewall authentication user information using the identifier ID of the user. If the authentication method parameter displays Web authentication and the authentication state parameter displays success in your output then your configuration is correct.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Understanding Web Authentication on page 51](#)
- [Example: Configuring Web Authentication on page 53](#)

CHAPTER 6

Configuring External Authentication Servers

- [Understanding External Authentication Servers on page 67](#)
- [Example: Configuring RADIUS and LDAP User Authentication on page 68](#)
- [Example: Configuring SecurID User Authentication on page 73](#)
- [Example: Deleting the SecurID Node Secret File on page 76](#)
- [Enabling LDAP Authentication with TLS/SSL for Secure Connections on page 78](#)

Understanding External Authentication Servers

Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) servers provide an extra level of protection and control for user access in the following ways:

- Authentication determines the firewall user.
- Authorization determines what the firewall user can do.
- Accounting determines what the firewall user did on the network.

You can use authentication alone or with authorization and accounting. Authorization always requires a user to be authenticated first. You can use accounting alone, or with authentication and authorization.

Once the user's credentials are collected, they are processed using firewall user authentication, which supports the following types of servers:

- Local authentication and authorization
- RADIUS authentication and authorization (compatible with Juniper Steel-Belted Radius server)
- LDAP authentication only (supports LDAP version 3 and is compatible with Windows AD)
- SecurID authentication only (using an RSA SecurID external authentication server)



NOTE: Junos OS also supports administrative authentication using local, RADIUS, and TACACS+ servers.

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Understanding SecurID User Authentication on page 68](#)

Understanding SecurID User Authentication

SecurID is an authentication method that allows users to enter either static or dynamic passwords as their credentials. A dynamic password is a combination of a user's PIN and a randomly generated token that is valid for a short period of time, approximately one minute. A static password is set for the user on the SecurID server. For example, the SecurID server administrator might set a temporary static password for a user who lost his or her SecurID token.

When a user attempts to access a resource protected by a policy and SecurID is configured in the profile **authentication-order** parameter as either the only authentication mode or the first one to be used, the device forwards the user's credentials to the SecurID server for authentication. If the user enters valid values, the user is allowed access to the requested resource.



NOTE: The SecurID server includes a feature that presents a user with a challenge if the user provides wrong credentials repeatedly. However, Junos OS does not support the challenge feature. Instead, the SecurID server administrator must resynchronize the RSA token for the user.

For SecurID, you configure information about the Juniper Networks device on the SecurID server, and this information is exported to a file called `sdconf.rec`.

To install the `sdconf.rec` file on the device, you must use an out-of-band method such as FTP. Install the file in a directory whose files are not deleted regularly. Do not put it in a temporary directory. For example, you might install it in `/var/db/secureid/server1/sdconf.rec`.

The `sdconf.rec` file contains information that provides the Juniper Networks device with the address of the SecurID server. You do not need to configure this information explicitly when you configure the SecurID server to be used as the external authentication server.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Example: Configuring RADIUS and LDAP User Authentication on page 68](#)
- [Example: Configuring SecurID User Authentication on page 73](#)
- [Example: Deleting the SecurID Node Secret File on page 76](#)

Example: Configuring RADIUS and LDAP User Authentication

This example shows how to configure a device for external authentication.

- [Requirements on page 69](#)
- [Overview on page 69](#)

- [Configuration on page 69](#)
- [Verification on page 72](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, create an authentication user group.

Overview

You can put several user accounts together to form a user group, which you can store on the local database or on a RADIUS, an LDAP, or a SecurID server. When you reference an authentication user group and an external authentication server in a policy, the traffic matching the policy provokes an authentication check.

This example shows how access profile Profile-1 is configured for external authentication. Two RADIUS servers and one LDAP server are configured in the access profile. However, the order of authentication specifies RADIUS server only, so if the RADIUS server authentication fails, then the firewall user fails to authenticate. The local database is not accessed.



NOTE: If the firewall clients are authenticated by the RADIUS server, then the group-membership VSA returned by the RADIUS server should contain alpha, beta, or gamma client groups in the RADIUS server configuration or in the access profile, Profile-1. Access profiles store usernames and passwords of users or point to external authentication servers where such information is stored.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set access profile Profile-1 authentication-order radius
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-1 client-group alpha
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-1 client-group beta
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-1 client-group gamma
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-1 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-2 client-group alpha
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-2 client-group beta
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-2 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-3 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-1 client Client-4 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-1 session-options client-group alpha
set access profile Profile-1 session-options client-group beta
set access profile Profile-1 session-options client-group gamma
set access profile Profile-1 session-options client-idle-timeout 255
set access profile Profile-1 session-options client-session-timeout 4
set access profile Profile-1 ldap-options base-distinguished-name
CN=users,DC=junos,DC=juniper,DC=net
set access profile Profile-1 ldap-options search search-filter sAMAccountName=
```

```
set access profile Profile-1 ldap-options search admin-search distinguished-name
cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=junos,dc=juniper,dc=net
set access profile Profile-1 ldap-options search admin-search password pwd
set access profile Profile-1 ldap-server 203.0.113.39/24
set access profile Profile-1 radius-server 203.0.113.62/24 secret example-secret
set access profile Profile-1 radius-server 203.0.113.62/24 retry 10
set access profile Profile-1 radius-server 203.0.113.27/24 secret juniper
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure a device for external authentication:

1. Specify the RADIUS server for external authentication order.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile Profile-1 authentication-order radius
```

2. Configure Client1-4 firewall users and assign the Client-1 firewall user and Client-2 firewall user to client groups.

[edit access profile Profile-1]

```
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group alpha
```

```
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group beta
```

```
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group gamma
```

```
user@host# set client Client-1 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set client Client-2 client-group alpha
```

```
user@host# set client Client-2 client-group beta
```

```
user@host# set client Client-2 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set client Client-3 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set client Client-4 firewall-user password pwd
```

3. Configure client groups in the session options.

[edit access profile Profile-1]

```
user@host# set session-options client-group alpha
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-group beta
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-group gamma
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-idle-timeout 255
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-session-timeout 4
```

4. Configure the IP address for the LDAP server and server options.

```
[edit access profile Profile-1]
```

```
user@host# set ldap-options base-distinguished-name
CN=users,DC=junos,DC=mycompany,DC=net
```

```
user@host# set ldap-options search search-filter sAMAccountName=
```

```
user@host# set ldap-options search admin-search password pwd
```

```
user@host# set ldap-options search admin-search distinguished-name
cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=junos,dc=mycompany,dc=net
```

```
user@host# set ldap-server 203.0.113.39/24
```

5. Configure the IP addresses for the two RADIUS servers.

```
[edit access profile Profile-1]
```

```
user@host# set radius-server 203.0.113.62/24 secret pwd
```

```
user@host# set radius-server 203.0.113.62/24 retry 10
```

```
user@host# set radius-server 203.0.113.27/24 secret pwd
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show access profile Profile-1** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show access profile Profile-1
authentication-order radius;
client Client-1 {
  client-group [ alpha beta gamma ];
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
client Client-2 {
  client-group [ alpha beta ];
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
client Client-3 {
```

```
        firewall-user {
            password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
        }
    }
    client Client-4 {
        firewall-user {
            password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
        }
    }
    session-options {
        client-group [ alpha beta gamma ];
        client-idle-timeout 255;
        client-session-timeout 4;
    }
    ldap-options {
        base-distinguished-name CN=users,DC=junos,DC=juniper,DC=net;
        search {
            search-filter sAMAccountName=;
            admin-search {
                distinguished-name cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=junos,
                dc=mycompany,dc=net; password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
            }
        }
    }
    ldap-server {
        203.0.113.39/24 ;
    }
    radius-server {
        203.0.113.62/24 {
            secret "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
            retry 10;
        }
        203.0.113.27/24 {
            secret "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
        }
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Troubleshooting with Logs on page 72](#)

[Troubleshooting with Logs](#)

Purpose	Use these logs to identify any issues.
Action	From operational mode, enter the show log messages command and the show log dcd command.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding External Authentication Servers on page 67• Example: Configuring SecurID User Authentication on page 73

- [Example: Deleting the SecurID Node Secret File on page 76](#)

Example: Configuring SecurID User Authentication

This example shows how to configure SecurID as the external authentication server.

- [Requirements on page 73](#)
- [Overview on page 73](#)
- [Configuration on page 73](#)
- [Verification on page 76](#)
- [Troubleshooting on page 76](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, create an authentication user group.

Overview

SecurID is an authentication method that allows users to enter either static or dynamic passwords as their credentials. A dynamic password is a combination of a user's PIN and a randomly generated token that is valid for a short period of time, approximately one minute. A static password is set for the user on the SecurID server. For example, the SecurID server administrator might set a temporary static password for a user who lost his or her SecurID token.

When a user attempts to access a resource protected by a policy and SecurID is configured in the profile **authentication-order** parameter as either the only authentication mode or the first one to be used, the device forwards the user's credentials to the SecurID server for authentication. If the user enters valid values, the user is allowed access to the requested resource.

Specify that Server-1 is to be used as the SecurID server and that its configuration file resides on the device in the `/var/db/secuid/Server-1/sdconf.rec` file. From configuration mode, enter this command:

```
user@host# set access securid-server Server-1 configuration-file
"/var/db/secuid/Server-1/sdconf.rec"
```

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set access profile Profile-2 authentication-order securid
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-1 client-group alpha
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-1 client-group beta
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-1 client-group gamma
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-1 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-2 client-group alpha
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-2 client-group beta
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-2 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-3 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-2 client Client-4 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Profile-2 session-options client-group alpha
set access profile Profile-2 session-options client-group beta
set access profile Profile-2 session-options client-group gamma
set access profile Profile-2 session-options client-idle-timeout 255
set access profile Profile-2 session-options client-session-timeout 4
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure SecurID as the external authentication server:

1. For the Profile-2 profile, configure SecurID as the server to be used for external authentication.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile Profile-2 authentication-order securid
```

To share a single SecurID server across multiple profiles, for each profile set the **authentication-order** parameter to include **securid** as the authentication mode.

2. Configure clients 1 through 4 as firewall users, and assign Client-1 and Client-2 to client groups.

[edit access profile Profile-2]

```
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group alpha
```

```
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group beta
```

```
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group gamma
```

```
user@host# set client Client-1 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set client Client-2 client-group alpha
```

```
user@host# set client Client-2 client-group beta
```

```
user@host# set client Client-2 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set client Client-3 firewall-user password pwd
```

```
user@host# set client Client-4 firewall-user password pwd
```

3. Configure client groups in the session options.

```
[edit access profile Profile-2]
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-group alpha
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-group beta
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-group gamma
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-idle-timeout 255
```

```
user@host# set session-options client-session-timeout 4
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show access profile Profile-2** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show access profile Profile-2
authentication-order securid;
client Client-1 {
  client-group [ alpha beta gamma ];
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
client Client-2 {
  client-group [ alpha beta ];
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
client Client-3 {
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
client Client-4 {
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
session-options {
  client-group [alpha beta gamma];
  client-idle-timeout 255;
  client-session-timeout 4;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Troubleshooting with Logs on page 76](#)

Troubleshooting with Logs

Purpose	Use these logs to identify any issues.
Action	From operational mode, enter the show log messages command and the show log dcd command.

Troubleshooting

- [Troubleshooting Unsuccessful Authentication In a Dynamic VPN Configuration on page 76](#)

Troubleshooting Unsuccessful Authentication In a Dynamic VPN Configuration

Problem	Device fails to locate client address in a dynamic VPN configuration.
Solution	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Verify that the device host name, the domain-search, and the name server are configured properly. [edit system] user@host# set host-name srxhost.example.net user@host# set domain-search domain.example.net user@host# set name-server 203.0.113.112. Verify that the device host name is getting resolved on the RSA server.

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding External Authentication Servers on page 67• Example: Deleting the SecurID Node Secret File on page 76
------------------------------	--

Example: Deleting the SecurID Node Secret File

This example shows how to delete the node secret file.

- [Requirements on page 77](#)
- [Overview on page 77](#)
- [Configuration on page 77](#)
- [Verification on page 77](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, confirm that it is necessary to delete the SecurID node secret file.

Overview

When the Juniper Networks device initially communicates successfully with the SecurID server, a node secret file is created for it automatically. The file is created as a result of the handshake between the Juniper Networks device and the SecurID server after the software authenticates the first user successfully. All subsequent communication between the Juniper Networks device and the SecurID server relies on this secret as a representation of trust between the two nodes instead of repeating the handshake with each authentication request.

Under normal circumstances you should not delete the node secret file. In the rare case that you must do so, for example, to debug a serious problem, you can use the **clear** command to remove the file.



WARNING: If you delete the file, you must deselect a box on the SecurID server to indicate that the node secret file for the Juniper Networks device and the SecurID server no longer exists. Otherwise, authentication attempts will fail.

Configuration

Step-by-Step Procedure

To delete the node secret file:

1. Use the **clear** command to remove the node secret file. During subsequent user authentication, the device reestablishes a shared secret with the SecurID server and re-creates the node secret file. From operational mode, enter the **clear network-access securid-node-secret-file** for the Juniper Networks device.

```
user@host> clear network-access securid-node-secret-file
```

2. From operational mode, confirm your deletion by entering the **show network-access securid-node-secret-file** command. If the output does not display, repeat the instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host> show network-access securid-node-secret-file
```

Verification

Verify the deletion by entering the **show network-access securid-node-secret-file** command.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding External Authentication Servers on page 67](#)
- [Example: Configuring SecurID User Authentication on page 73](#)

Enabling LDAP Authentication with TLS/SSL for Secure Connections

Beginning with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, SRX Series devices support the Transport Layer Security (TLS) StartTLS extension for LDAP for firewall user authentication and the integrated user firewall authentication for obtaining username and role information through firewall authentication. StartTLS allows protocol data transfers between the LDAP server and client over the TLS layer after successful negotiation between the peers. StartTLS upgrades an existing insecure LDAP connection to a secure TLS/SSL connection.



NOTE: SRX Series devices support TLSv1.1 and TLS v1.2 to use LDAP authentication with TLS/SSL.

With StartTLS for LDAP, a secure communication can be provided with the following sets of ciphers that provide increasingly strong security:

- High encryption cipher: AES256-SHA,DES-CBC3-SHA
- Medium encryption ciphers: High encryption cipher + RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:AES128-SHA
- Medium encryption ciphers: Medium encryption ciphers + DES-CBC-SHA:EXP1024-DES-CBC-SHA:EXP1024-RC4-SHA:EXP1024-RC4-MD5:EXP-DES-CBC-SHA:EXP-RC4-MD5

Implementation of StartTLS on LDAP is interoperable with the following standard LDAP servers:

- Windows Active Directory
- Novell e-Directory
- Sun LDAP
- OpenLDAP

By default, LDAP traffic is not transmitted securely. You can set LDAP traffic to be confidential and secure by using Secure Sockets Layer/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TLS) technology.

To configure TLS parameters as a part of LDAP server configuration:

1. Define TLS type as **start-tls** to configure LDAP over StartTLS.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile profile-name ldap-server ip-address tls-type start-tls
```

2. Configure the peer host name to be authenticated.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile profile-name ldap-server ip-address tls-peer-name peer-name
```

3. Specify the timeout value on the TLS handshake. You can enter 3 through 90 seconds.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile profile-name ldap-server ip-address tls-timeout
```

4. Specify TLS version (v1.1 and v1.2 are supported) as the minimum protocol version enabled in connections. By default, SRX Series device uses TLS v1.2 to negotiate the TLS connection with the LDAP server:

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile profile-name ldap-server ip-address tls-min-version
supported-tls-version
```



NOTE: SRX Series devices support an additional check on the LDAP server's certificate during the TLS handshake for LDAP authentication by default. If the validation of the server certificate is not required, you can use the following configuration to ignore the validation of server's certificate and accept the certificate without checking:

[edit]

```
user@host# set access profile profile-name ldap-server ip-address
no-tls-certificate-check
```

By default, the no-tls-certificate-check remains disabled.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9](#)
- [LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152](#)

CHAPTER 7

Configuring Client Groups

- [Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication on page 81](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local Users for Client Groups on page 81](#)

Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication

To manage a number of firewall users, you can create user or client groups and store the information either on the local Juniper Networks device or on an external RADIUS or LDAP server.

A client group is a list of groups to which the client belongs. As with client-idle timeout, a client group is used only if the external authentication server does not return a value in its response. (For example, LDAP servers do not return such information.)

The RADIUS server sends the client's group information to the Juniper Networks device using Juniper VSA (46). The client-match portion of the policy accepts a string that can be either the username or the groupname to which the client belongs.

The reason to have a single database for different types of clients (except admins) is based on the assumption that a single client can be of multiple types. For example, a firewall user client can also be an L2TP client.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Example: Configuring Local Users for Client Groups on page 81](#)

Example: Configuring Local Users for Client Groups

This example shows how to configure a local user for client groups in a profile.

- [Requirements on page 81](#)
- [Overview on page 82](#)
- [Configuration on page 82](#)
- [Verification on page 83](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, create an access profile.

Overview

A client group is a list of groups to which the client belongs. As with client-idle timeout, a client group is used only if the external authentication server does not return a value in its response (for example, LDAP servers do not return such information).

This example shows how to configure a local user called Client-1 for client groups G1, G2, and G3 in a profile called Managers. Within this example, client groups are configured for a client. If a client group is not defined for the client, then the client group under the **access profile session-options** hierarchy is used.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set access profile Managers client Client-1 client-group G1
set access profile Managers client Client-1 client-group G2
set access profile Managers client Client-1 client-group G3
set access profile Managers client Client-1 firewall-user password pwd
set access profile Managers session-options client-group G1
set access profile Managers session-options client-group G2
set access profile Managers session-options client-group G3
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure a local user for client groups in a profile:

1. Configure the firewall user profile Managers, and assign client groups to it.

```
user@host# edit access profile Managers
[edit access profile Managers]
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group G1
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group G2
user@host# set client Client-1 client-group G3
user@host# set client Client-1 firewall-user password pwd
```

2. Configure client groups in the session options.

```
[edit access profile Managers]
user@host# set session-options client-group G1
user@host# set session-options client-group G2
user@host# set session-options client-group G3
```

Results Confirm your configuration by entering the **show access profile Managers** command from configuration mode. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show access profile Managers

client Client-1 {
  client-group [ G1 G2 G3 ];
  firewall-user {
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
}
session-options {
  client-group [ G1 G2 G3 ];
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Troubleshooting with Logs on page 83](#)

[Troubleshooting with Logs](#)

Purpose Use these logs to identify any issues.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show log messages** command and the **show log dcd** command.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication on page 81](#)

CHAPTER 8

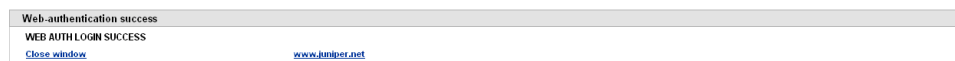
Customizing the Firewall Authentication Banner

- [Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization on page 85](#)
- [Example: Customizing a Firewall Authentication Banner on page 85](#)

Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization

A banner is a message that appears on a monitor in different places depending on the type of login.

Figure 12: Banner Customization



- At the top of a browser screen after a user has successfully logged into a Web authentication address as shown [Figure 12 on page 85](#).
- Before or after a Telnet, an FTP, an HTTP, or and HTTPS login prompt, success message, and fail message for users

All banners, except for a console login banner, have default messages. You can customize the messages that appear on the banners to better suit the network environment in which you use the device.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Example: Customizing a Firewall Authentication Banner on page 85](#)

Example: Customizing a Firewall Authentication Banner

This example shows how to customize the banner text that appears in the browser.

- [Requirements on page 86](#)
- [Overview on page 86](#)
- [Configuration on page 86](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, create an access profile.

Overview

A banner is a message that appears on a monitor in different places depending on the type of login. This example shows how to change the banner that appears in the browser to indicate that a user has successfully authenticated after successfully logging in through Web authentication. The new message is “Web authentication is successful.” If the authentication fails, then the new message reads “Authentication failed.”

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile Profile-1
set access firewall-authentication pass-through ftp banner fail " Authentication failed"
set access firewall-authentication web-authentication default-profile Profile-1
set access firewall-authentication web-authentication banner success " Web authentication is successful"
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To customize the banner text that appears in the browser:

1. Specify the banner text for failed pass-through authentication through FTP.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile Profile-1
```

```
user@host# set access firewall-authentication pass-through ftp banner fail "
Authentication failed"
```

2. Specify the banner text for successful Web authentication.

[edit]

```
user@host# set access web-authentication default-profile Profile-1
```

```
user@host# set access web-authentication banner success " Web authentication
is successful"
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show access firewall-authentication** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show access firewall-authentication
pass-through {
  default-profile Profile-1;
  ftp {
    banner {
      fail "Authentication failed";
    }
  }
}
web-authentication {
  default-profile Profile-1;
  banner {
    success "Web authentication is successful";
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization on page 85](#)

PART 3

Configuring Infranet Authentication

- [Configuring UAC in a Junos OS Environment on page 91](#)
- [Establishing Communications Between Devices on page 95](#)
- [Configuring Policy Enforcement on page 99](#)
- [Classifying Traffic with User Roles on page 103](#)
- [Configuring Endpoint Security on page 121](#)
- [Configuring IPsec on page 123](#)
- [Configuring Captive Portal on page 133](#)

CHAPTER 9

Configuring UAC in a Junos OS Environment

- [Understanding UAC in a Junos OS Environment on page 91](#)
- [Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment \(CLI Procedure\) on page 93](#)

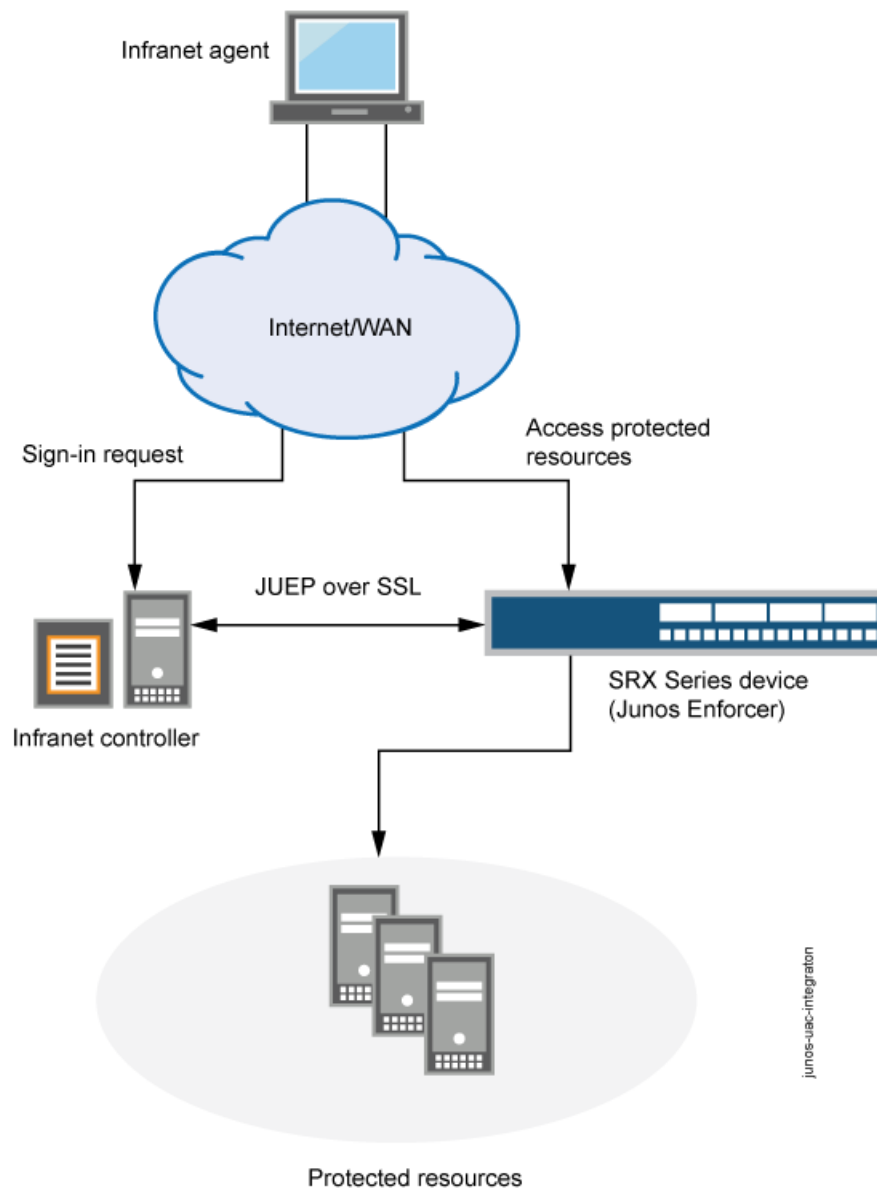
Understanding UAC in a Junos OS Environment

A Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment uses the following components to secure a network and ensure that only qualified end users can access protected resources:

- **IC Series UAC Appliances**—An IC Series appliance is a policy decision point in the network. It uses authentication information and policy rules to determine whether or not to provide access to individual resources on the network. You can deploy one or more IC Series appliances in your network.
- **Infranet Enforcers**—An Infranet Enforcer is a policy enforcement point in the network. It receives policies from the IC Series appliance and uses the rules defined in those policies to determine whether or not to allow an endpoint access to a resource. You deploy the Infranet Enforcers in front of the servers and resources that you want to protect.
- **Infranet agents**—An Infranet agent is a client-side component that runs directly on network endpoints (such as users' computers). The agent checks that the endpoint complies to the security criteria specified in Host Checker policies and relays that compliance information to the Infranet Enforcer. The Infranet Enforcer then allows or denies the endpoint access based on the compliance results.

An SRX Series device can act as an Infranet Enforcer in a UAC network. Specifically, it acts as a Layer 3 enforcement point, controlling access by using IP-based policies pushed down from the IC Series appliance. When deployed in a UAC network, an SRX Series device is called a Junos OS Enforcer. See [Figure 13 on page 92](#).

Figure 13: Integrating a Junos OS Security Device into a Unified Access Control Network



NOTE: You can use the Junos OS Enforcer with the IC Series appliance and Secure Access devices in an IF-MAP Federation network. In a federated network, multiple IC Series appliances and Secure Access devices that are not directly connected to the Junos OS Enforcer can access resources protected by the security device. There are no configuration tasks for IF-MAP Federation on the Junos OS Enforcer. You configure policies on IC Series appliances that can dynamically create authentication table entries on the Junos OS Enforcer.

- Related Documentation**
- [Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment \(CLI Procedure\) on page 93](#)

Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment (CLI Procedure)

Junos OS security policies enforce rules for transit traffic, defining what traffic can pass through the Juniper Networks device. The policies control traffic that enters from one zone (from-zone) and exits another (to-zone). To enable an SRX Series device as a Junos OS Enforcer in a UAC deployment, you must:

- Identify the source and destination zones through which UAC traffic will travel. It also needs the list of interfaces, including which zones they are in. The IC Series UAC Appliance uses the destination zone to match its own IPsec routing policies configured on IC Series appliance.
- Identify Junos OS security policies that encompass those zones, and enable UAC for those policies.

Before you begin:

1. Set up the interfaces through which UAC traffic should enter the SRX Series device.
2. Group interfaces with identical security requirements into zones. See *Example: Creating Security Zones*.
3. Create security policies to control the traffic that passes through the security zones. See *Example: Configuring a Security Policy to Permit or Deny All Traffic*.

To configure UAC through a Junos OS security policy, enter the following configuration statement:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name policy match  
then permit application-services uac-policy
```


CHAPTER 10

Establishing Communications Between Devices

- [Understanding Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance on page 95](#)
- [Understanding Communications Between Junos OS Enforcer and a Cluster of IC Series UAC Appliances on page 96](#)
- [Configuring Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance \(CLI Procedure\) on page 96](#)

Understanding Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance

When you configure an SRX Series device to connect to an IC Series UAC Appliance, the SRX Series device and the IC Series appliance establish secure communications as follows:

1. If more than one IC Series device are configured as Infranet Controllers on the SRX Series device, a round-robin algorithm determines which of the configured IC Series devices is the active Infranet Controller. The others are failover devices. If the active Infranet Controller becomes inoperative, the algorithm is reapplied to the remaining IC Series devices that are configured to establish the new active Infranet Controller.
2. The active IC Series appliance presents its server certificate to the SRX Series device. If configured to do so, the SRX Series device verifies the certificate. (Server certificate verification is not required; however, as an extra security measure you can verify the certificate to implement an additional layer of trust.)
3. The SRX Series device and the IC Series appliance perform mutual authentication using the proprietary challenge-response authentication. For security reasons, the password is not included in the message sent to the IC Series appliance.
4. After successfully authenticating with the SRX Series device, the IC Series appliance sends its user authentication and resource access policy information. The SRX Series device uses this information to act as the Junos OS Enforcer in the UAC network.
5. Thereafter, the IC Series appliance and the Junos OS Enforcer can communicate freely with one another over the SSL connection. The communications are controlled by a proprietary protocol called *Junos UAC Enforcer Protocol (JUEP)*.

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding UAC in a Junos OS Environment on page 91](#)
 - [Configuring Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance \(CLI Procedure\) on page 96](#)

Understanding Communications Between Junos OS Enforcer and a Cluster of IC Series UAC Appliances

You can configure a Junos OS Enforcer to work with more than one IC Series UAC Appliance in a high availability configuration known as an IC Series appliance cluster. The Junos OS Enforcer communicates with only one IC Series appliance at a time; the other IC Series appliances are used for failover. If the Junos OS Enforcer cannot connect to the first IC Series appliance you added to a cluster, it tries to connect to the failed IC Series appliance again. Then it fails over to the other IC Series appliances in the cluster. It continues trying to connect to IC Series appliances in the cluster until a connection occurs.

When the Junos OS Enforcer cannot establish a connection to an Infranet Enforcer, it preserves all its existing authentication table entries and Unified Access Control (UAC) policies and takes the timeout action that you specify. Timeout actions include:

- **close**—Close existing sessions and block any further traffic. This is the default option.
- **no-change**—Preserve existing sessions and require authentication for new sessions.
- **open**—Preserve existing sessions and allow new sessions access.

Once the Junos OS Enforcer can reestablish a connection to an IC Series appliance, the IC Series appliance compares the authentication table entries and UAC policies stored on the Junos OS Enforcer with the authentication table entries and policies stored on the IC Series appliance and reconciles the two as required.



NOTE: The IC Series appliances configured on a Junos OS Enforcer should all be members of the same IC Series appliance cluster.

Configuring Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance (CLI Procedure)

To configure an SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a UAC deployment, and therefore to enforce IC Series UAC Appliance policies, you must specify an IC Series appliance to which the SRX Series device should connect.

Before you begin:

1. Enable UAC through the relevant Junos OS security policies. See [“Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment \(CLI Procedure\)” on page 93](#).
2. (Optional) Create a profile for the certificate authority (CA) that signed the IC Series appliance's server certificate, and import the CA certificate onto the SRX Series device. See *Example: Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually*.
3. Configure user authentication and authorization by setting up user roles, authentication and authorization servers, and authentication realms on the IC Series appliance.
4. Configure resource access policies on the IC Series appliance to specify which endpoints are allowed or denied access to protected resources.

To configure an SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer:

1. Specify the IC Series appliance(s) to which the SRX Series device should connect.

- To specify the IC Series appliance hostname:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname
```

- To specify the IC Series appliance IP address:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname address ip-address
```



NOTE: When configuring access to multiple IC Series appliances, you must define each separately. For example:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC1
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC2
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC3

user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC1
address 10.10.10.1
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC2
address 10.10.10.2
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC3
address 10.10.10.3
```

Make sure that all of the IC Series appliances are members of the same cluster.



NOTE: By default, the IC Series appliance should select port 11123.

2. Specify the Junos OS interface to which the IC Series appliance should connect:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname interface interface-name
```

3. Specify the password that the SRX Series device should use to initiate secure communications with the IC Series appliance:



NOTE: Any change in the Unified Access Control's (UAC) contact interval and timeout values in the SRX Series device will be effective only after the next reconnection of the SRX Series device with the IC Series appliance.

.....

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname password password
```

4. (Optional) Specify information about the IC Series appliance's server certificate that the SRX Series device needs to verify the certificate.

- To specify the server certificate subject that the SRX Series device checks:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname server-certificate-subject certificate-name
```

- To specify the CA profile associated with the certificate:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname ca-profile ca-profile
```



.....

NOTE: An IC Series appliance server certificate can be issued by an intermediate CA. There are two types of CAs—root CAs and intermediate CAs. An intermediate CA is secondary to a root CA and issues certificates to other CAs in the public key infrastructure (PKI) hierarchy. Therefore, if a certificate is issued by an intermediate CA, you need to specify the complete list of CA profiles in the certification chain.

.....

CHAPTER 11

Configuring Policy Enforcement

- [Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement on page 99](#)
- [Configuring Junos OS Enforcer Failover Options \(CLI Procedure\) on page 100](#)
- [Testing Junos OS Enforcer Policy Access Decisions Using Test-Only Mode \(CLI Procedure\) on page 101](#)
- [Verifying Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement on page 102](#)

Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement

Once the SRX Series device has successfully established itself as the Junos OS Enforcer, it secures traffic as follows:

1. First, the Junos OS Enforcer uses the appropriate Junos OS security policy to process the traffic. A *security policy* uses criteria such as the traffic's source IP address or the time of day that the traffic was received to determine whether or not the traffic should be allowed to pass.
2. Once it determines that the traffic may pass based on the Junos OS security policy, the Junos OS Enforcer maps the traffic flow to an authentication table entry. The Junos OS Enforcer uses the source IP address of the first packet in the flow to create the mapping.

An *authentication table entry* contains the source IP address and user role(s) of a user who has already successfully established a UAC session. A *user role* identifies a group of users based on criteria such as type (for instance, "Engineering" or "Marketing") or status (for instance, "Antivirus Running"). The Junos OS Enforcer determines whether to allow or deny the traffic to pass based on the authentication results stored in the appropriate authentication table entry.

The IC Series UAC Appliance pushes authentication table entries to the Junos OS Enforcer when the devices first connect to one another and, as necessary, throughout the session. For example, the IC Series appliance might push updated authentication table entries to the Junos OS Enforcer when the user's computer becomes noncompliant with endpoint security policies, when you change the configuration of a user's role, or when you disable all user accounts on the IC Series appliance in response to a security problem such as a virus on the network.

If the Junos OS Enforcer drops a packet because of a missing authentication table entry, the device sends a message to the IC Series appliance, which in turn may

provision a new authentication table entry and send it to the Junos OS Enforcer. This process is called dynamic authentication table provisioning.

3. Once it determines that the traffic may pass based on the authentication table entries, the Junos OS Enforcer maps the flow to a resource. The Junos OS Enforcer uses the destination IP address specified in the flow to create the mapping. Then the device uses that resource as well as the user role specified in the authentication table entry to map the flow to a resource access policy.

A *resource access policy* specifies a particular resource to which you want to control access based on user role. For instance, you might create a resource access policy that allows only users who are members of the Engineering and Antivirus Running user roles access to the Engineering-Only server. Or you might create a resource access policy that allows members of the No Antivirus Running user role access to the Remediation server on which antivirus software is available for download.

The IC Series appliance pushes resource access policies to the Junos OS Enforcer when the devices first connect to one another and when you modify your resource access policy configurations on the IC Series appliance.

If the Junos OS Enforcer drops the packet because of a “deny” policy, the Junos OS Enforcer sends a message to the IC Series appliance, which in turn sends a message to the endpoint’s Odyssey Access Client (if available). (The IC Series appliance does not send “deny” messages to the agentless client.)

4. Once it determines that the traffic may pass based on the resource access policies, the Junos OS Enforcer processes the traffic using the remaining application services defined in the Junos OS policy. The Junos OS Enforcer runs the remaining services in the following order: Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), URL filtering, and Application Layer Gateways (ALGs).

Configuring Junos OS Enforcer Failover Options (CLI Procedure)

To configure IC Series UAC Appliance failover processing, you must configure the Junos OS Enforcer to connect to a cluster of IC Series appliances. The Junos OS Enforcer communicates with one of these IC Series appliances at a time and uses the others for failover processing.

Before you begin:

1. Enable UAC through the relevant Junos OS security policies.
2. Configure the SRX Series device as a Junos OS Enforcer. During the configuration, define a cluster of IC Series appliances to which the Junos OS Enforcer should connect. See [“Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment \(CLI Procedure\)” on page 93](#).

To configure failover processing:

1. Specify how often (in seconds) the Junos OS Enforcer should expect a heartbeat signal from the IC Series appliance indicating an active connection:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control interval seconds
```


- Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the Junos OS Enforcer should consider the current connection timed out:



NOTE: Any change in the Unified Access Control's (UAC) contact interval and timeout values in the SRX Series device will be effective only after the next reconnection of the SRX Series device with the IC Series appliance.

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control timeout seconds
```

- Specify how the Junos OS Enforcer should handle all current and subsequent traffic sessions when its connection to an IC Series appliance cluster times out:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control timeout-action (close | no-change | open)
```

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement on page 99](#)
- [Testing Junos OS Enforcer Policy Access Decisions Using Test-Only Mode \(CLI Procedure\) on page 101](#)
- [Verifying Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement on page 102](#)

Testing Junos OS Enforcer Policy Access Decisions Using Test-Only Mode (CLI Procedure)

When configured in test-only mode, the SRX Series device enables all UAC traffic to go through regardless of the UAC policy settings. The device logs the UAC policy's access decisions without enforcing them so you can test the implementation without impeding traffic.

Before you begin:

- Enable UAC through the relevant Junos OS security policies. See [“Enabling UAC in a Junos OS Environment \(CLI Procedure\)” on page 93](#)
- Configure the SRX Series devices as a Junos OS Enforcer. See [“Configuring Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance \(CLI Procedure\)” on page 96](#).
- If you are connecting to a cluster of IC Series UAC Appliances, enable failover options. See [“Configuring Junos OS Enforcer Failover Options \(CLI Procedure\)” on page 100](#).

To activate or deactivate test-only mode, enter the following configuration statement:

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control test-only-mode (true | false)
```

Verifying Junos OS Enforcer Policy Enforcement

- [Displaying IC Series UAC Appliance Authentication Table Entries from the Junos OS Enforcer on page 102](#)
- [Displaying IC Series UAC Appliance Resource Access Policies from the Junos OS Enforcer on page 102](#)

Displaying IC Series UAC Appliance Authentication Table Entries from the Junos OS Enforcer

Purpose Display a summary of the authentication table entries configured from the IC Series UAC Appliance.

Action Enter the **show services unified-access-control authentication-table** CLI command.

Displaying IC Series UAC Appliance Resource Access Policies from the Junos OS Enforcer

Purpose Display a summary of UAC resource access policies configured from the IC Series UAC Appliance.

Action Enter the **show services unified-access-control policies** CLI command.

CHAPTER 12

Classifying Traffic with User Roles

- [Understanding Unified Access Control on page 103](#)
- [Acquiring User Role Information from an Active Directory Authentication Server on page 103](#)

Understanding Unified Access Control

In Junos OS Release 12.1 and later, user role firewall security policies let you classify traffic based on the roles to which a user is assigned. Based on match criteria, which includes the user's role, you create policies to apply services that allow or block access to resources. The user role firewall is similar to the identity-based network access control (NAC) solution available with UAC on the SRX Series device. A user role firewall, however, does not require the Junos Pulse/Odyssey installation, and it supports agentless transparent authentication.

User role information can be collected in several ways: locally on the SRX Series device, from a Junos Pulse Access Control Service device, or by relaying authentication data from a third-party authentication server through a Junos Pulse Access Control Service device to the SRX Series device.

Related Documentation

- [Acquiring User Role Information from an Active Directory Authentication Server on page 103](#)

Acquiring User Role Information from an Active Directory Authentication Server

Networks have used the IP address as a way of identifying users and servers. The strategy is based on the assumption that users or groups of users connect to the network from fixed locations and use one device at a time.

Wireless networking and mobile devices require a different strategy. Individuals can connect to the network using multiple devices simultaneously. The way in which devices connect to the network changes rapidly. It is no longer possible to identify a user with a group of statically allocated IP addresses.

In Junos OS Release 12.1 and later, user role firewall security policies let you classify traffic based on the roles to which a user is assigned. Based on match criteria, which includes the user's role, you create policies to apply services that allow or block access to resources.

The user role firewall is similar to the identity-based network access control (NAC) solution available with UAC on the SRX Series device. A user role firewall, however, does not require the Junos Pulse/Odyssey installation, and it supports agentless transparent authentication.

User role information can be collected in several ways: locally on the SRX Series device, from a Junos Pulse Access Control Service device, or by relaying authentication data from a third-party authentication server through a Junos Pulse Access Control Service device to the SRX Series device.

Incorporating a third-party authentication server into a user role firewall configuration can also provide single sign-on (SSO) support. This allows a browser-based user to authenticate once and have that authentication communicated to other trusted servers in the domain as needed.

- [Requirements on page 104](#)
- [Overview on page 105](#)
- [Configuration on page 106](#)

Requirements

This solution uses the following hardware and software components:

- One MAG Series Junos Pulse Gateway device with software release 4.2 or later
- The MAGx600-UAC-SRX license installed on the MAG Series device
- One SRX Series device with Junos OS Release 12.1 or later
- One Microsoft Active Directory server using version 2008



NOTE: Microsoft Windows 2003 is also compatible with this functionality, but terminology, pathways, and settings might differ from what is presented in this document.

Before you begin:

- Ensure that the MAG Series device is configured as an Access Control Service and is accessible to the network. See the *MAG Series Junos Pulse Gateway Hardware Guide* for configuration details.
- Ensure that the MAGx600-UAC-SRX license is installed on the MAG Series device.
- Ensure that the SRX Series device is configured and initialized with Junos OS version 12.1 or later.
- Ensure that the Active Directory authentication server is configured for standard Junos Pulse Access Control Service authentication. See your third-party documentation.
- Ensure that the administrator has the appropriate capabilities for configuring the roles, users, and device interactions.

Overview

In this solution an SRX Series device obtains user role information dynamically from a Microsoft Active Directory authentication server. Authentication verification and user role information from the Active Directory server is relayed by the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device to the SRX Series device.

Users within the same domain are connected to a LAN segment. They are associated with user role groups, such as developer or manager, depending on their work in the organization. When a user authenticates to the AD authentication server, the user should be able to access protected resources without having to authenticate a second time.

The SRX Series device is configured as an enforcer for the MAG Series device. It receives user role information from the MAG Series device and applies user role firewall policies accordingly to incoming and outgoing traffic.

When the SRX Series device has no user role information for a user, the user's browser is redirected to the MAG Series device. Transparently to the user, the MAG Series device requests verification from the browser. The browser retrieves a token from the Active Directory server confirming authentication and passes it to the MAG Series device. With the information provided by the token, the MAG Series device retrieves user role information for the user from the Active Directory server and creates an authentication table entry consisting of the current IP address and the user role data. The MAG Series device pushes the updated table to the SRX Series device and redirects the browser back to the SRX to request access again. This time, the table does contain user role information which is then retrieved and used as part of the match criteria for applying user role firewall services.

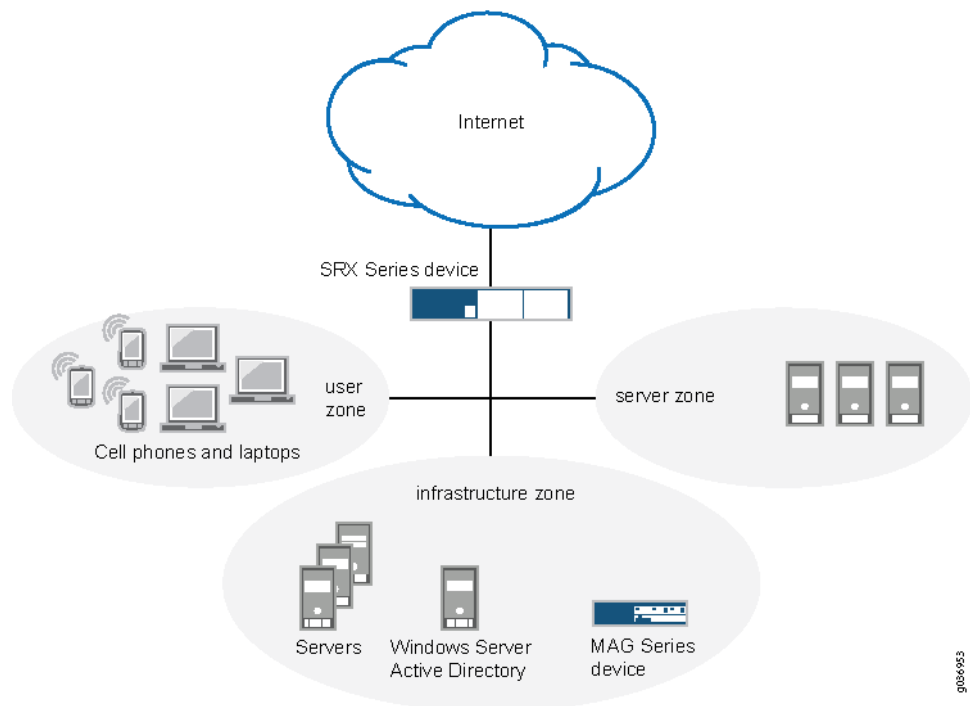
The user is not aware of the process unless the Active Directory (AD) server has no current authentication for the user. When that is the case, the server prompts the user for name and password. Once authentication occurs, the server returns a token to the browser.

The procedure documented here initially configures the MAG Series device as the authenticator. The configuration is later modified to retrieve authentication information from the AD server. This solution uses SPNEGO negotiation and Kerberos authentication to secure communications among the SRX Series device, the MAG Series device, the browser, and the authentication server.

Topology

Figure 14 on page 106 shows the topology for this deployment in which the MAG Series device is used initially as the authentication source. Later, the AD server is used transparently unless the user is not authenticated, in which case he is prompted for a user name and password.

Figure 14: Single Sign-On Support Topology



A user's request to access another resource is controlled by roles and groups associated with the user. For example, a user belonging to a group of developers named Dev might have access to a particular test server. The same user might also be the manager and belong to the Mgr group that can access certain HR resources. A contractor working for this manager might require access to the test server as well but not to the HR resources. In this case, the user would be added to the Dev group and perhaps a Contractor group, but not the Mgr group.

User role firewall policies defined on the SRX Series device control the groups and user roles that can access various resources. In this configuration, if user role data does not exist for a user requesting access, a policy redirects the user's browser to the MAG Series device to authenticate the user and retrieve any associated user role data.

A token exchange among the Access Control Service, the browser, and the Active Directory server remains transparent to the user while it verifies the user's authentication. The exchange uses SPNEGO negotiation and Kerberos authentication for encrypting and decrypting messages among the devices.

With information obtained from the response token, the MAG Series device retrieves the user's roles and groups directly from the Active Directory server. It then creates an authentication table entry and passes it to the SRX Series device.

Configuration

Configure the devices for this solution by performing the following tasks.

- Connect the SRX Series device and the MAG Series device in an enforcer configuration.
- Configure the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device for local user authentication and verify that authentication information is transferred between the devices.
- Configure a captive portal policy on the SRX Series device to redirect any unauthenticated user to the Access Control Service and verify that redirection is functioning properly.
- Configure the Microsoft Active Directory authentication server to interact with the Access Control Service and the endpoints.
- Reconfigure the Access Control Service for remote authentication by the Active Directory server and redefine Active Directory groups for the SRX Series device.
- Configure endpoint browsers for the SPNEGO protocol



NOTE: Configuring the Access Control Service using local authentication is not necessary for this solution. However, by configuring local authentication first you can verify the captive portal interaction between the MAG Series device and the SRX Series device.

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

Connecting the SRX Series Device to the Access Control Service

Step-by-Step Procedure

In an enforcer configuration, the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device and the SRX Series device communicate over a secure channel. When the SRX Series device first connects with the Access Control Service, the devices exchange information to ensure secure communication. Optionally, you can use digital security certificates as an enhanced mechanism for establishing trust.

See the *Unified Access Control Administration Guide* for details about configuring certificate trust between the SRX Series device and the Access Control Service.

To connect the SRX Series device and the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device:

1. Configure the SRX Series device.
 - a. Configure the zones and interfaces of the devices.


```
user@host# set security zones security-zone user interfaces ge-0/0/0
user@host# set security zones security-zone infrastructure interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces ge-0/0/2
```
 - b. Configure the IP addresses of the interfaces.


```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.12.12.1/8
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 10.0.0.22/24
```

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 203.0.113.19/24
```

- c. Identify the Access Control Service as a new Infranet Controller, and configure the interface for the connection to it.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller mag123
address 10.0.0.22
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller mag123
interface fxp0.0
```

- d. Specify the password for securing interactions between the Access Control Service and the SRX Series device.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller mag123
password pwd
```



NOTE: The same password must be configured on both devices.

- e. (Optional) Specify the full name of the Access Control Service certificate that the SRX Series device must match during connection.

```
user@host# set services unified-access-control infranet-controller mag123
ca-profile ca-mag123-enforcer
```

- f. If you are done configuring the SRX Series device, enter commit from configuration mode.

2. Configure the Access Control Service from the administrator console on the MAG Series device.

- a. Navigate to the Infranet Enforcer page, and click **New Enforcer**.
- b. Select Junos, enter the password set previously on the SRX Series device (InSub321), and enter the serial number of the SRX Series device.
- c. Click **Save Changes**.

Results When both devices are configured, the SRX Series device connects automatically to the Access Control Service.

- From the Access Control Service, select **System>Status>Overview** to view the status of the connection to the SRX Series device. The diode in the display is green if the connection is functioning. To display additional information, click the device name.

- From operational mode on the SRX Series device, confirm your connection by entering the **show services unified-access-control status** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this section to correct the configuration.

```
user@host> show services unified-access-control status
```

Host	Address	Port	Interface	State
mag123	10.0.0.22	11123	fxp0.0	connected

Configuring the Access Control Service for Local User Authentication

Step-by-Step Procedure

When a user is authenticated, the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device updates its authentication table with the IP address and associated roles of the user, and pushes the updated table to the SRX Series device. If this user data is deleted or modified, the Access Control Service updates the authentication table with the new information and again pushes it to the SRX Series device.

To test the successful transfer and content of the authentication table, this task configures the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device for local authentication. Within this configuration you can test the user role firewall from the SRX Series device without affecting other network operations. A later task modifies this configuration to provide user role retrieval from the remote Active Directory server.



NOTE: It is not a requirement to configure the Access Control Service for local user authentication. It is provided so that you can test each task in the configuration.

To configure the Access Control Service for local authentication:

- Define roles on the Access Control Service.
 - From the administrator console of the Access Control Service, select **Users>User Roles>New User Role**.
 - Enter **dev** as the role name.
In this solution, use the default values for other role settings.
 - Click **Save Changes**.



NOTE: This solution assumes that the MAGx600-UAC-SRX license is installed on the Access Control Service. If the full-feature license is installed, you will need to disable OAC Install and enable Agentless Access.

2. Configure the default authentication server.
 - a. Select **Authentication>Auth. Servers**.
 - b. Select **System Local**. This establishes the MAG Series device as the default authentication server.
3. Create users.
 - a. Select the **Users** tab, and click **New**.
 - b. Create **user-a** by entering the following details.
 - Username
 - User's full name
 - Password
 - Password confirmation
 - c. Repeat the previous step to create **user-b**.
 - d. Click **Save Changes**.
4. Create a realm.
 - a. Select **Users>User Realms>New User Realm**.
 - b. Enter **REALM6** as the realm name.
 - c. Select **System Local** in the Authentication box.
 - d. Click **Save Changes**.
5. From the same page, create role mapping rules.
 - a. Select the **Role Mapping** tab, and click **New Rule**.
 - b. Define two rules with the following details.
 - Enter username user-a, and assign it to role dev.

- Enter username user-b, and assign it to role dev.
 - c. Click **Save Changes**.
6. Set up the default sign-in page.
 - a. Select **Authentication>Signing In>Sign-in Policies**.
 - b. Click the default **Sign-in policy (*/*)**.
 - c. In the **Sign-in URL** box, enter the IP address of this device.
 - d. In **Authentication realm, Available realms**, select REALM6.
 - e. Click **Save Changes**.

Results Verify the results of the configuration. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this section to correct the configuration.

1. Verify that local authentication on the Access Control Service is functioning properly.
 - Open a browser window from an endpoint in the network.
 - Enter the fully qualified domain name for the Access Control Service.

The default sign-in page should display.

- Sign in as user-a, and provide the defined password.

2. From operational mode on the SRX Series device:

- a. Confirm that the authentication table on the SRX Series device was updated with **user-a**.

```
user@host> show services unified-access-control authentication-table
```

Id	Source IP	Username	Age	Role identifier
1	203.0.113.102	user-a	0	0000000001.000005.0
Total: 1				

- b. Confirm that the correct role has been associated with the role identifier.

```
user@host> show services unified-access-control roles
```

Name	Identifier
dev	0000000001.000005.0

- c. List all roles associated with user-a.

```
user@host> show services unified-access-control authentication-table detail
```

```
Identifier: 1
Source IP: 203.0.113.102
Username: user-a
Age: 0
Role identifier      Role name
0000000001.000005.0 dev
```

Configuring Redirection from the SRX Series Device to the Access Control Service

Step-by-Step Procedure Local authentication, as configured in the previous task, requires users to log on to the Access Control Service directly to gain access to network resources. The SRX Series device can be configured to automatically redirect the browser of an unauthenticated user to the Access Control Service if a user requests access to a protected resource directly. You can define a user role firewall policy to redirect an unauthenticated user to a captive portal on the Access Control Service for sign-in.



NOTE: Other services, such as IDP, UTM, AppFW, and AppQoS, can be configured as well as the UAC captive portal implementation. The solution focuses on captive portal for authentication for user role implementation only.

To configure redirection from the SRX Series device to the Access Control Service:

1. From configuration mode on the SRX Series device, configure the profile for the captive portal acs-device.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services unified-access-control captive-portal acs-device
redirect-traffic unauthenticated
```

2. Add either the redirection URL for the Access Control Service or a default URL.

```
[edit]
user@host# set services unified-access-control captive-portal acs-device
redirect-url "https://%ic-url%/?target=%dest-url%&enforcer=%enforcer-id%"
```

This command specifies the default target and enforcer variables so that the browser is returned to the SRX Series device after authentication.

3. Allow traffic to the Active Directory (AD) server, the Access Control Service, and the other infrastructure servers.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone infrastructure policy
Allow-AD-UAC match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone infrastructure policy
Allow-AD-UAC match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone infrastructure policy
Allow-AD-UAC application any
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone infrastructure policy
Allow-AD-UAC then permit
```

4. Configure a security policy that redirects HTTP traffic from zone user to zone untrust if the source-identity is unauthenticated-user.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw1
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw1
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw1
match application http
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw1
match source-identity unauthenticated-user
```

5. Configure the action to be taken when traffic matches the criteria for user-role-fw1. In this case, traffic meeting the specified criteria is allowed access to the UAC captive portal defined by the acs-device profile.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw1
then permit application-services uac-policy captive-portal acs-device
```

6. Configure a security policy allowing access to any HTTP traffic from zone user to zone untrust.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw2
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw2
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw2
match application http
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw2
match source-identity any
user@host# set security policies from-zone user to-zone untrust policy user-role-fw2
then permit
```



NOTE: It is important to position the redirection policy for unauthenticated users before a policy for “any” user so that UAC authentication is not shadowed by a policy intended for authenticated users.

7. If you are done configuring the policies, commit the changes.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Results Confirm your configuration with the following procedures. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this section to correct the configuration.

1. From configuration mode, confirm your captive portal profile configuration by entering the **show services** command.

```
[edit]
user@host# show services

...
unified-access-control {
  captive-portal acs-device {
    redirect-traffic unauthenticated;
    redirect-url "https://%ic-url%/?target=%dest-url%&enforcer=%enforcer-id%"
  }
}
```

2. From configuration mode, confirm your policy configuration by entering the **show security policies** command.

```
user@host# show security policies

...
from-zone user to-zone infrastructure {
  policy Allow-AD-UAC {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit
    }
  }
}
from-zone user to-zone untrust {
  policy user-role-fw1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application http;
      source-identity unauthenticated-user
    }
    then {
      permit {
        application-services {
          uac-policy {
            captive-portal acs-device;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
from-zone user to-zone untrust {
  policy user-role-fw2 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application http;
    }
  }
}
```

```

    source-identity any
  }
  then {
    permit
  }
}
}
...

```

3. Verify that the redirection policy is functioning correctly.

- a. Open a browser window from a second endpoint in the network.

- b. Enter a third-party URL, such as www.google.com.

The default sign-in page from the Access Control Service prompts for a user and password.

- c. Enter the username **user-b** and its password.

The browser should display the requested URL.



NOTE: If a pop-up blocker is set on the endpoint, it could interfere with this functionality.

- d. From operational mode on the SRX Series device, verify that the authentication data and roles from the Access Control Service were pushed to the SRX Series device successfully.

user@host> **show services unified-access-control authentication-table**

Id	Source IP	Username	Age	Role identifier
1	203.0.113.112	user-a	0	0000000001.000005.0
2	203.0.113.15	user-b	0	0000000001.000005.0
Total: 2				

Configuring Active Directory Settings

Step-by-Step Procedure

SPNEGO negotiation and Kerberos authentication are transparent to the user and network administrator, but certain configuration options enable the use of these protocols. This section identifies configuration requirements when using Active Directory as the authentication server. To interact in SPNEGO negotiation, the Access Control Service requires a keytab file created by Active Directory. Refer to your third-party documentation for more information about enabling SPNEGO and Kerberos usage.

This section is not intended to be a tutorial for Active Directory. However, there are specific configuration details required for this solution. See your third-party documentation to set up Active Directory as a domain controller.

To configure the Active Directory authentication server:

1. Add a DNS entry as the UAC service account in the **Forward Lookup Zones**. In this way clients can refer to the MAG Series device by name or by IP address.

This UAC service account name will be used in the next section when reconfiguring the UAC service on the MAG Series device.
2. Single sign-on authentication requires that the UAC service account password never expires. To modify user settings:
 - a. From the Active Directory Users and Computers application in DNS, select **Users>New>User** and select the UAC service account created in step 1.
 - b. Select the **Account** tab.
 - c. In user settings, click **Password Never Expires**.
3. On the Domain Controller, open a command line, and enter the **ktpass** command to create the SPNEGO keytab file.

The keytab file created on the Active Directory server contains the full service principal name (SPN) and other encryption information from the server. The keytab file is then uploaded to the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device. This shared information identifies one device to the other whenever encrypted messages and responses are sent.

Use the following syntax.

```
ktpass -out output-file-name -mapuser uac-service-account-name -prin  
service://fqdn@REALM
```

ktpass—Third-party Kerberos utility that maps an SPN to a user, in this case, to the UAC service account. The executable is available for download. Refer to your third-party documentation for the source for this utility.

-out *output-file-name*—The name for the SPNEGO keytab file you are creating.

-mapuser *uac-service-account-name*—The name of the UAC service account created in step 1.

-prin *service://fqdn@REALM*—The service principal name. The Kerberos authentication uses the SPN in its communication. It does not use an IP address.
service—The HTTP service.

fqdn—The hostname of the Junos Pulse Access Control Service. The ***service://FQDN*** portion of the name is provided by the Access Control Service when registering with the Active Directory server.

REALM—The realm of the Active Directory authentication server. It is the same as the domain name. The Kerberos realm name is always in uppercase letters following the recommendation in RFC 1510. This affects interoperability with other Kerberos-based environments.

The following command creates an SPNEGO keytab file named `ic.ktpass`.

```
ktpass -out ic.ktpass -mapuser icuser@UCDC.COM -princ
HTTP/mag123.ucdc.com@UCDC.COM -pass Doj73096
```

This file is copied to the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device in the next section when SPNEGO is configured for remote authentication.

Reconfiguring Remote Authentication on the Access Control Service

Step-by-Step Procedure

This section reconfigures the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device to query the remote Active Directory server instead of the local authentication table when authenticating a user. The following steps add services and authentication options to the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device. The configuration of the SRX Series device remains unchanged.

When you reconfigure the realm's authentication server, the Access Control Service displays all roles or groups from the configured domain controller and its trusted domains. Establishing role mapping rules equates the authentication server's roles or groups to those defined on the Access Control Service.

To reconfigure remote authentication on the Access Control Service:

1. From the administrator console of the Access Control Service on the MAG Series device, select **Authentication > Auth. Servers**.
2. Choose the **Active Directory/Windows NT** server type, and click **Add New Server**.
3. Enter the profile of the new authentication server.
 - a. Name the Active Directory server.
 - b. Enter its NetBIOS domain name in the domain box.



NOTE: You might receive the following message: “Either the server is not a domain controller of the domain, or the NetBIOS name of the domain is different from the Active Directory (LDAP) name.” This message is informational and does not affect the processing of the authentication.

- c. Enter the Kerberos Realm name.

The Kerberos realm name is the FQDN of the Active Directory domain. For example, if “mycompany” is the domain or NetBIOS name, mycompany.com is the Kerberos realm name.

- d. In the Domain Join Configuration section, enter the username and password of the UAC services account which has permission to join computers to the Active Directory domain.

Select the Save credentials box.

- e. Enter the Container name.

This is the name of the container in Active Directory where you created the UAC services account for the Access Control Service.

- f. Enter the Computer Name.

Specify the machine ID that the Access Control Service uses to join the specified Active Directory domain as a computer. This name is derived from the licence hardware ID of the Access Control Service in the following format:
0161MT2LOOK2CO.

- g. Verify that the join operation has succeeded.

The Join Status indicator provides a color-coded status for the domain join operation as follows:

- Gray: Not started
- Yellow: In progress
- Red: Failed to join
- Green: Joined the domain

- h. Select **Kerberos** and **NTLM v2** as the authentication protocols.

- i. In the Trusts section, select the Allow trusted domains box.

- j. Select **Enable SPNEGO**.

- k. Use the Browse button to upload the keytab file that you created in the previous section.
 - l. Click **Save Changes** and **Test Configuration**.
- 4. Ensure that SSO is enabled.
 - a. Select **Users>User Realms** and the realm name.
 - b. Select the Active Directory server name from the **Auth Server** list.
 - c. Select the **Authentication Policy** tab.
 - d. Verify that the **SSO** option is selected.
 - e. Click **Save Changes**.
- 5. Create role-mapping policies for groups acquired from the authentication server.

Groups from the Active Directory authentication server need to be mapped to roles on the Access Control Service. You first need to create roles, and then map one or more groups to the appropriate role.

 - a. Select the Role Mapping tab.
 - b. Click **New Rule**, enter a role name, and click **Save Changes**.

You do not need to add users to the role. Create as many roles as needed to map the groups from the Active Directory authentication server.
 - c. Click **Groups**, and select **Search** to list the groups defined in the domain controller.
 - d. Select the group names that you want to map to the new role.
 - e. Repeat steps b through d to create and map other groups.
 - f. Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring Endpoint Browsers for the SPNEGO

Step-by-Step Procedure Ensure that endpoint browsers have SPNEGO enabled. For further information, see your third-party documentation.

- Internet Explorer

From **Security>Local Intranet>Sites>Advanced** add the trusted URL.

IE performs SPNEGO without any further endpoint configuration but the user is prompted for a username and password. The username and password can be cached.

To provide single sign-on support, an Internet Explorer configuration can be pushed by configuring a group policy on the Active Directory server. See your third-party documentation for further information.

Integrated Windows Authentication must be enabled. Use the **Tools>Internet Options>Advanced>Security>Enable Integrated Windows Authentication** path to verify that IWA is enabled.

- Firefox (Windows and MacOS)

The configuration is in a hidden location. For the URL, type **about:config** and search for the word **trusted**. The required key is the comma separated parameter named **network.negotiate-auth.trusted-uris**.



NOTE: You need to specify the URL of the resource (in this solution, the FQDN or domain controller value UCDC.com).

- Chrome

Use the Internet Explorer setting. From **Security>Local Intranet>Sites>Advanced** add the trusted URL.

An internet Explorer configuration can also be pushed by configuring a group policy on the Active Directory server. This configuration is honored by Chrome.

After successful authentication, the standard agentless page is shown along with a second window with the protected resource (unless a pop-up blocker prevents this).

Related Documentation

- *Authentication and Integrated User Firewalls Feature Guide for Security Devices*

CHAPTER 13

Configuring Endpoint Security

- [Understanding Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer on page 121](#)
- [Configuring Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer on page 122](#)

Understanding Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer

An Infranet agent helps you secure traffic on your network starting with the endpoints that initiate communications as follows:

1. The Infranet agent, which runs directly on the endpoint, checks that the endpoint is compliant with your Unified Access Control (UAC) Host Checker policies. You can use a wide variety of criteria within a UAC Host Checker policy to determine compliance. For example, you can configure the Host Checker policy to confirm that the endpoint is running antivirus software or a firewall or that the endpoint is not running specific types of malware or processes.
2. The Infranet agent transmits the compliance information to the Junos OS Enforcer.
3. The Junos OS Enforcer allows or denies the endpoint access to the resources on your network based on the Host Checker compliance results.

Because the Infranet agent runs directly on the endpoint, you can use the Infranet agent to check the endpoint for security compliance at any time. For instance, when a user tries to sign into the IC Series UAC Appliance, you can require the Infranet agent to send compliance results immediately—the user will not even see the sign-in page until the Infranet agent returns positive compliance results to the IC Series appliance. You can also configure the Infranet agent to check for compliance after the user signs in or periodically during the user session.

If the endpoints running the Infranet agent have appropriate access, they will automatically send their compliance results to the IC Series appliance, and the IC Series appliance will update the authentication table entries accordingly and push them to the Junos OS Enforcer. The Junos OS Enforcer supports connections with the Odyssey Access Client and “agentless” Infranet agents.

Configuring Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer

To integrate the Infranet agent into a Junos OS-UAC deployment, no special configuration is required on the Junos OS Enforcer. You simply need to create security policies enabling access to the appropriate endpoints as you would for any other Junos OS-UAC deployment.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Endpoint Security Using the Infranet Agent with the Junos OS Enforcer on page 121](#)
- *Security Basics Guide for Security Devices*
- [Understanding User Authentication for Security Devices on page 3](#)

Configuring IPsec

- [Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Implementations Using IPsec on page 123](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Device as a Junos OS Enforcer Using IPsec \(CLI\) on page 124](#)

Understanding Junos OS Enforcer Implementations Using IPsec

To configure an SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer using IPsec, you must:

- Include the identity configured under the security IKE gateway. The identity is a string such as "gateway1.mycompany.com", where gateway1.mycompany.com distinguishes between IKE gateways. (The identities specify which tunnel traffic is intended.)
- Include the preshared seed. This generates the preshared key from the full identity of the remote user for Phase 1 credentials.
- Include the RADIUS shared secret. This allows the IC Series UAC Appliance to accept RADIUS packets for extended authentication (XAuth) from the Junos OS Infranet Enforcer.

When configuring IPsec between the IC Series appliance, the Odyssey Access Client, and the SRX Series device, you should note that the following are IKE (or Phase 1) proposal methods or protocol configurations that are supported from the IC Series appliance to the Odyssey Access Client:

- IKE proposal: **authentication-method pre-shared-keys** (you must specify **pre-shared-keys**)
- IKE policy:
 - **mode aggressive** (you must use aggressive mode)
 - **pre-shared-key ascii-text key** (only ASCII text preshared-keys are supported)
- IKE gateway: dynamic
 - **hostname identity** (you must specify a unique identity among gateways)
 - **ike-user-type group-ike-id** (you must specify **group-ike-id**)
 - **xauth access-profile profile** (you must specify **xauth**)

The following are IPsec (or Phase 2) proposal methods or protocol configurations that are supported from the IC Series appliance to the Odyssey Access Client.

- IPsec proposal: **protocol esp** (you must specify **esp**)
- IPsec VPN: **establish-tunnels immediately** (you must specify **establish-tunnels immediately**)



NOTE:

- Only one IPsec VPN tunnel is supported per from-zone to to-zone security policy. This is a limitation on the IC Series appliance.
 - Junos OS security policies enable you to define multiple policies differentiated by different source addresses, destination addresses, or both. The IC Series appliance, however, cannot differentiate such configurations. If you enable multiple policies in this manner, the IC Series appliance could potentially identify the incorrect IKE gateway.
-

Example: Configuring the Device as a Junos OS Enforcer Using IPsec (CLI)

To configure an SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer using IPsec:

1. Set system and syslog information using the following configuration statements:

```
system {
  host-name test_host;
  domain-name test.mycompany.com;
  host-name test_host;
  root-authentication {
    encrypted-password "$ABC123";
  }
  services {
    ftp;
    ssh;
    telnet;
    web-management {
      http {
        interface ge-0/0/0.0;
      }
    }
  }
}
syslog {
  user * {
    any emergency;
  }
  file messages {
    any critical;
    authorization info;
  }
  file interactive-commands {
    interactive-commands error;
  }
}
```



```

}
max-configurations-on-flash 5;
max-configuration-rollback 5;
license {
  autoupdate {
    url https://ae1.mycompany.com/junos/key_retrieval;
  }
}
ntp {
  boot-server 1.2.3.4;
  server 1.2.3.4;
}
}

```



NOTE: On SRX Series devices, the factory default for the maximum number of backup configurations allowed is five. Therefore, you can have one active configuration and a maximum of five rollback configurations. Increasing this backup configuration number will result in increased memory usage on disk and increased commit time.

To modify the factory defaults, use the following commands:

```

root@host# set system max-configurations-on-flash number
root@host# set system max-configuration-rollback number

```

where `max-configurations-on-flash` indicates backup configurations to be stored in the configuration partition and `max-configuration-rollback` indicates the maximum number of backup configurations.

2. Configure the interfaces using the following configuration statements:

```

interfaces {
  ge-0/0/0 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.64.75.135/16;
      }
    }
  }
  ge-0/0/1 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.100.54.1/16;
      }
    }
  }
  ge-0/0/2 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.101.54.1/16;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```
}
```

3. Configure routing options using the following configuration statements:

```
routing-options {  
  static {  
    route 0.0.0.0/0 next-hop 10.64.0.1;  
    route 10.11.0.0/16 next-hop 10.64.0.1;  
    route 172.0.0.0/8 next-hop 10.64.0.1;  
    route 10.64.0.0/16 next-hop 10.64.0.1;  
  }  
}
```

4. Configure security options using the following configuration statements:

```
security {  
  ike {  
    traceoptions {  
      file ike;  
      flag all;  
    }  
    proposal prop1 {  
      authentication-method pre-shared-keys;  
      dh-group group2;  
      authentication-algorithm sha1;  
      encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc;  
    }  
    policy pol1 {  
      mode aggressive;  
      proposals prop1;  
      pre-shared-key ascii-text "$ABC123";  
    }  
    gateway gateway1 {  
      ike-policy pol1;  
      dynamic {  
        hostname gateway1.mycompany.com;  
        connections-limit 1000;  
        ike-user-type group-ike-id;  
      }  
      external-interface ge-0/0/0;  
      xauth access-profile infranet;  
    }  
    gateway gateway2 {  
      ike-policy pol1;  
      dynamic {  
        hostname gateway2.mycompany.com;  
        connections-limit 1000;  
        ike-user-type group-ike-id;  
      }  
      external-interface ge-0/0/0;  
      xauth access-profile infranet;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

5. Configure IPsec parameters using the following configuration statements:

```
ipsec {
proposal prop1 {
  protocol esp;
  authentication-algorithm hmac-sha1-96;
  encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc;
  lifetime-seconds 86400;
}
policy pol1 {
proposals prop1;
}
vpn vpn1 {
ike {
  gateway gateway1;
  ipsec-policy pol1;
}
}
vpn vpn2 {
ike {
  gateway gateway2;
  ipsec-policy pol1;
}
}
}
```

6. Configure screen options using the following configuration statements:

```
screen {
ids-option untrust-screen {
icmp {
  ping-death;
}
ip {
  source-route-option;
  tear-drop;
}
tcp {
syn-flood {
  alarm-threshold 1024;
  attack-threshold 200;
  source-threshold 1024;
  destination-threshold 2048;
  queue-size 2000;
  timeout 20;
}
}
land;
}
}
```

7. Configure zones using the following configuration statements:

```
zones {
security-zone trust {
```

```
tcp-rst;
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone untrust {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
security-zone zone101 {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/2.0;
  }
}
}
```

8. Configure policies for UAC using the following configuration statements:

```
policies {
  from-zone trust to-zone trust {
    policy default-permit {
      match {
        source-address any;
        destination-address any;
        application any;
      }
      then {
        permit;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

}
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
policy default-permit {
match {
source-address any;
destination-address any;
application any;
}
then {
permit;
}
}
policy default-deny {
match {
source-address any;
destination-address any;
application any;
}
then {
permit;
}
}
policy pol1 {
match {
source-address any;
destination-address any;
application any;
}
then {
permit {
tunnel {
ipsec-vpn vpn1;
}
application-services {
uac-policy;
}
}
log {
session-init;
session-close;
}
}
}
}
from-zone untrust to-zone trust {
policy pol1 {
match {
source-address any;
destination-address any;
application any;
}
then {
permit;
log {
session-init;
session-close;
}
}
}
}

```

```

    }
  }
}
}
from-zone trust to-zone zone101 {
policy pol1 {
match {
source-address any;
destination-address any;
application any;
}
then {
permit {
tunnel {
ipsec-vpn vpn2;
}
application-services {
uac-policy;
}
}
log {
session-init;
session-close;
}
}
}
policy test {
match {
source-address any;
destination-address any;
application any;
}
then {
permit;
}
}
}
default-policy {
deny-all;
}
}
}

```

9. Configure RADIUS server authentication access using the following configuration statements:

```

access {
profile infranet {
authentication-order radius;
radius-server {
10.64.160.120 secret "$ABC123";
}
}
}
}

```

10. Configure services for UAC using the following configuration statements:

```
services {
  unified-access-control {
    infranet-controller IC27 {
      address 3.23.1.2;
      interface ge-0/0/0.0;
      password "$ABC123";
    }
    infranet-controller prabaIC {
      address 10.64.160.120;
      interface ge-0/0/0.0;
      password "$ABC123";
    }
    certificate-verification optional;
    traceoptions {
      flag all;
    }
  }
}
```


Configuring Captive Portal

- [Understanding the Captive Portal on the Junos OS Enforcer on page 133](#)
- [Understanding Captive Portal Configuration on the Junos OS Enforcer on page 135](#)
- [Understanding the Captive Portal Redirect URL Options on page 135](#)
- [Example: Creating a Captive Portal Policy on the Junos OS Enforcer on page 136](#)

Understanding the Captive Portal on the Junos OS Enforcer

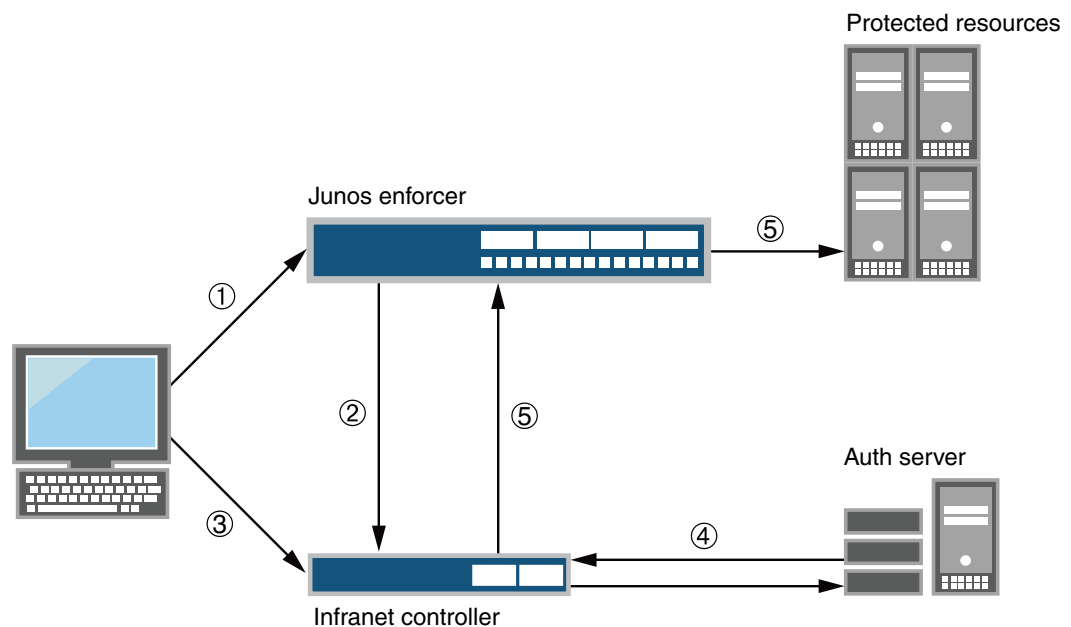
In a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment, users might not be aware that they must first sign in to the IC Series UAC Appliance for authentication and endpoint security checking before they are allowed to access a protected resource behind the Junos OS Enforcers. To help users sign in to the IC Series appliance, you can configure the captive portal feature. The captive portal feature allows you to configure a policy in the Junos OS Enforcer that automatically redirects HTTP traffic destined for protected resources to the IC Series appliance or to a URL configured in the Junos OS Enforcer.

You can configure a captive portal for deployments that use either source IP enforcement or IPsec enforcement, or a combination of both enforcement methods.

[Figure 15 on page 134](#) shows the captive portal feature enabled on a Junos OS Enforcer. Users accessing protected resources are automatically redirected to the IC Series appliance:

1. Users point to a protected resource using the browser.
2. The Junos OS Enforcer determines that the user is not authenticated and redirects the request to the IC Series appliance or another server.
3. Users enter their Infranet username and password to log in.
4. The IC Series appliance passes the user credentials to an authentication server.
5. After authentication, the IC Series appliance redirects the users to the protected resource they wanted to access.

Figure 15: Enabling the Captive Portal Feature on a Junos OS Enforcer



By default, the Junos OS Enforcer encodes and forwards to the IC Series appliance the protected resource URL that the user entered. The IC Series appliance uses the protected resource URL to help users navigate to the protected resource. The manner in which the IC Series appliance uses the protected resource URL depends on whether or not the user's endpoint is running the Odyssey Access Client or Junos Pulse. If the user's endpoint is not running the Odyssey Access Client or Junos Pulse (that is, it is in an agentless or Java agent configuration), the IC Series appliance automatically opens a new browser window and uses HTTP to access the protected resource after the user signs in. If the endpoint is using the Odyssey Access Client, the IC Series appliance inserts a hypertext link in the webpage that automatically opens after the user signs in. The user must then click that hypertext link to access the protected resource by means of HTTP in the same browser window.

The Junos OS Enforcer supports the captive portal feature only for HTTP traffic. If you attempt to access a protected resource by using HTTPS or a non-browser application (such as an e-mail application), the Junos OS Enforcer does not redirect the traffic. When using HTTPS or a non-browser application, you must manually sign in to the IC Series appliance first before attempting to access protected resources.

Understanding Captive Portal Configuration on the Junos OS Enforcer

To configure the captive portal feature, you create a security policy on the Junos OS Enforcer and then specify a redirection option for the captive portal security policy. You can choose to redirect traffic to an external server or to the IC Series UAC Appliance. You can also choose to redirect all traffic or unauthenticated traffic only.

- Redirecting traffic to an external webserver—You can configure the Junos OS Enforcer to redirect HTTP traffic to an external webserver instead of the IC Series appliance. For example, you can redirect HTTP traffic to a webpage that explains to users the requirement to sign in to the IC Series appliance before they can access the protected resource. You could also include a link to the IC Series appliance on that webpage to help users sign in.
- Redirecting unauthenticated traffic—Select this option if your deployment uses source IP only or a combination of source IP and IPsec. The Junos OS Enforcer redirects clear-text traffic from unauthenticated users to the currently connected IC Series appliance or to an IP address or domain name that you specify in a redirect URL. After a user signs in to the IC Series appliance and the user's endpoint system meets the requirements of the IC Series appliance security policies, the Junos OS Enforcer allows the user's clear-text traffic to pass through in source IP deployments. For IPsec deployments, the Odyssey Access Client creates a VPN tunnel between the user and the Junos OS Enforcer. The Junos OS Enforcer then applies the VPN policy, allowing the encrypted traffic to pass through.
- Redirecting all traffic—Specify this option if you want to redirect all traffic to the URL that you specify in a redirect URL.
- Redirecting traffic with multiple IC Series appliances—You can configure multiple IC Series appliances on your Junos OS Enforcer, but it is connected to only one IC Series appliance at any given time. If the connection to the IC Series appliance fails, the Junos OS Enforcer tries to connect to next configured IC Series appliance. As a result, you cannot be sure which IC Series appliance is connected to the Junos OS Enforcer at any given time. To ensure that the Junos OS Enforcer redirects traffic to the connected IC Series appliance, configure the default redirect URL or the **%ic-ip%** option in the URL.

Related Documentation

- [Example: Creating a Captive Portal Policy on the Junos OS Enforcer on page 136](#)

Understanding the Captive Portal Redirect URL Options

By default, after you configure a captive portal policy, the Junos OS Enforcer redirects HTTP traffic to the currently connected IC Series UAC Appliance by using HTTPS. To perform the redirection, the Junos OS Enforcer uses the IP address or domain name that you specified when you configured the IC Series appliance instance on the Junos OS Enforcer. The format of the URL that the Junos OS Enforcer uses for default redirection is:

```
https://%ic-ip%/?target = %dest-url% &enforcer = %enforcer-id% &policy = %policy-id% &dest-ip = %dest-ip%
```

If you configured your Junos OS Enforcer to work with multiple IC Series appliances in a cluster, and the current IC Series appliance becomes disconnected, the Junos OS Enforcer automatically redirects HTTP traffic to the next active IC Series appliance in its configuration list. The Junos OS Enforcer redirects traffic to only one IC Series appliance at a time.

Otherwise, the browser displays a certificate warning to users when they sign in. You do not need to override the default redirection destination except in these situations:

- You are using a VIP for a cluster of IC Series appliances, and the Junos OS Enforcer is configured to connect to the IC Series appliance physical IP addresses.
- You want to redirect traffic to a webserver instead of the IC Series appliance.
- If, because of split DNS or IP routing restrictions at your site, the Junos OS Enforcer uses a different address for the IC Series appliance than endpoints, you must specify the domain name or IP address that endpoints must use to access the IC Series appliance.



NOTE: If a captive portal policy is configured with the IC Series UAC Appliance URL as the target, then use only HTTPS to redirect traffic.

Table 8 on page 136 lists different options that you can configure in the redirect URL string.

Table 8: Redirect URL String Options

URL String	Description
%dest-url%	Specifies the protected resource which the user is trying to access.
%enforcer-id%	Specifies the ID assigned to the Junos OS Enforcer by the IC Series appliance.
%policy-id%	Specifies the encrypted policy ID for the captive portal security policy that redirected the traffic.
%dest-ip%	Specifies the IP address or hostname of the protected resource which the user is trying to access.
%ic-ip%	Specifies the IP address or hostname of the IC Series appliance to which the Junos OS Enforcer is currently connected.

Example: Creating a Captive Portal Policy on the Junos OS Enforcer

This example shows how to create a captive portal policy on the Junos OS Enforcer. In this example, you deploy a Junos OS Enforcer in front of the data center resources you want to protect and configure the captive portal feature on the Junos OS Enforcer. The

Junos OS Enforcer then automatically redirects HTTP traffic destined for the protected resource to the IC Series UAC Appliance for authentication.

- [Requirements on page 137](#)
- [Overview on page 137](#)
- [Configuration on page 137](#)
- [Verification on page 139](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Deploy the IC Series appliance in the network so that users can access the device. Use the internal port on the IC Series appliance to connect users, the Junos OS Enforcer, and authentication servers. See [“Configuring Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance \(CLI Procedure\)” on page 96](#).
- Set up security zones and interfaces on the Junos OS Enforcer. Make sure that end users are in a different security zone than protected resources. For example, protected resources in the data center are configured in the trusted zone and users in an untrusted zone. See *Example: Creating Security Zones*.
- Add individual users to either an external authentication server or the local authentication server. Set up roles and realms for individual users. You can provision access to protected resources based on your network security needs.

Overview

In this example, you want to protect the trusted zone from users on the LAN by making sure that only compliant and authenticated users are granted access. New users join your network every month. You want to configure the captive portal feature on your system so that unauthenticated users are redirected to the IC Series appliance automatically without requiring new users to remember to log in to the IC Series appliance.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create a security policy called **my-policy**, specify a match condition for this policy, specify the captive portal policy as a part of the UAC policy, and set criteria for redirecting traffic to the IC Series appliance. In this example, the policy **my-policy**:

- Specifies the match condition to include any traffic from a previously configured zone called **trust** to another previously configured zone called **untrust**.
- Specifies the captive portal policy called **my-captive-portal-policy** as part of the UAC policy.
- Specifies the redirect-traffic criteria as **unauthenticated**.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration	To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy
--------------------------------	---

and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy my-policy match
  destination-address any source-address any application any
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy my-policy then permit
  application-services uac-policy captive-portal my-captive-portal-policy
set services unified-access-control captive-portal my-captive-portal-policy redirect-traffic
  unauthenticated
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For information about navigating the CLI, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To create a captive portal policy on the Junos OS Enforcer:

1. Specify the match condition for the policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy my-policy]
user@host# set match destination-address any source-address any application
  any
```

2. Specify the captive portal policy as part of the UAC policy to be applied on the traffic that matches the conditions specified in the security policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy my-policy]
user@host# set then permit application-services uac-policy captive-portal
  my-captive-portal-policy
```

3. Redirect all unauthenticated traffic to the IC Series appliance.

```
[edit services unified-access-control]
user@host# set captive-portal my-captive-portal-policy redirect-traffic
  unauthenticated
```

Results Confirm your configuration by entering the **show services** and **show security policies** command from configuration mode. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this **show** command output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show services
unified-access-control {
  captive-portal my-captive-portal-policy {
    redirect-traffic unauthenticated;
  }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
```

```
...
from-zone untrust to-zone trust {
policy my-policy {
  match {
    source-address any;
    destination-address any;
    application any;
  }
  then {
    permit {
      application-services {
        uac-policy {
          captive-portal my-captive-portal-policy;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Verifying the Captive Portal Policy on page 139](#)

Verifying the Captive Portal Policy

Purpose Verify that the captive portal policy was created.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies detail** command.

Related Documentation • [Understanding Captive Portal Configuration on the Junos OS Enforcer on page 135](#)

PART 4

Configuring Integrated User Firewall

- [Understanding Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Managing Event Logs on page 175](#)
- [Logging User Identity Information Based on Zones on page 183](#)
- [Configuring Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication for Access Control on page 191](#)

CHAPTER 16

Understanding Integrated User Firewall

- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables on page 146](#)
- [LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Use Web-Redirect for Unauthenticated and Unknown Users on page 164](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Use Web-Redirect-to-HTTPS for Unauthenticated and Unknown Users on page 167](#)
- [Understanding SRX Series Assured Captive Portal Support for Unauthenticated Browser Users on page 171](#)

Overview of Integrated User Firewall

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Integrated User Firewall and Authentication Sources on page 143](#)
- [Benefits of Integrated User Firewall on page 144](#)
- [How the Integrated User Firewall Works on page 144](#)
- [Deployment Scenario for User Firewall Integration with Windows Active Directory on page 145](#)
- [Limitations on page 146](#)

Integrated User Firewall and Authentication Sources

The SRX Series device already supports Unified Access Control (UAC) integration with Network Access Control (NAC) and a user firewall that can derive its authentication source from Windows Active Directory via the UAC MAG Series Junos Pulse Gateway. However, many customers want simple user firewall functionality without full NAC, and do not want the additional cost or complexity of user role firewall (which has Active Directory dependencies such as Kerberos, SPNEGO on Browsers, Active Directory DNS/Certs, and UAC configuration).

The integrated user firewall feature fulfills the requirement for simplicity. It retrieves user-to-IP address mappings from the Windows Active Directory to use in firewall policies as match criteria. This feature consists of the SRX Series polling the event log of the

Active Directory controller to determine, by username and source IP address, who has logged in to the SRX Series device. Then the username and group information are queried from the LDAP service in the Active Directory controller. Once the SRX Series has the IP address, username, and group relationship information, it generates authentication entries. With the authentication entries, the SRX Series UserFW module enforces user-based and group-based policy control over traffic.

For a comparison of integrated user firewall, user role firewall, and UAC NAC, see *Understanding the Three-Tiered User Firewall Features*.

Benefits of Integrated User Firewall

The integrated user firewall feature introduces an authentication source via integration with Microsoft Active Directory technology.

- It provides visibility into who is accessing the SRX Series and best-effort security for access to the SRX Series.
- It is a single-box solution, requiring only an SRX Series.
- It requires fewer configuration steps than the UAC integration with NAC, which uses the UAC MAG Series.
- It does not require the configuration of a captive portal, although that option is available to enforce on users who do not authenticate.
- It is ideal for small-to-medium businesses and low-scale deployments.
- It supports High Availability (HA).

How the Integrated User Firewall Works

At a high level, this feature involves the UserID process in the SRX Series Routing Engine, which reads the Windows event log from the Active Directory controller and abstracts IP address-to-user mapping information. The process correlates users to the groups to which they belong, via the LDAP protocol with LDAP service in the Active Directory controller. Thus, the process has gathered enough information to generate authentication entries. The network administrator then references the authentication entries in user firewall security policies to control traffic.

A more detailed explanation of how this feature works is as follows:

1. The SRX Series reads the Active Directory event log to get source IP address-to-username mapping information. To do so, a process in the SRX Series Routing Engine implements a Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) client with Microsoft Distributed COM/Microsoft RPC stacks and an authentication mechanism to communicate with a Windows Active Directory controller in an Active Directory domain. Using event log information retrieved from the Active Directory controller, the process knows the IP addresses of active Active Directory users and abstracts IP-to-Active Directory username mapping information. The process monitors Active Directory event log changes via the same WMI DCOM interface to adjust local mapping information to reflect any change in the Active Directory server.

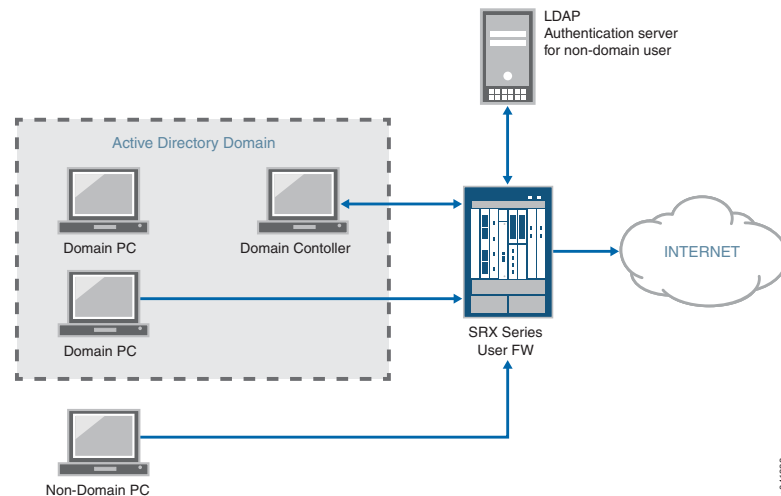
2. The process uses LDAP to query the LDAP service interface of the Active Directory to identify the groups to which users belong. Having the IP address, the Active Directory user, and the groups, the process can generate authentication entries accordingly.
3. The process pushes the authentication entries to the Packet Forwarding Engine authentication table. The Packet Forwarding Engine uses the entries and user policy to apply user firewall access control to traffic.

This feature supports two domains and up to 10 Active Directory controllers in a domain.

Deployment Scenario for User Firewall Integration with Windows Active Directory

Figure 16 on page 145 illustrates a typical scenario where the integrated user firewall feature is deployed. Users in the Active Directory domain and users outside the Active Directory domain want access to the Internet through an SRX Series device. The domain controller might also act as the LDAP server.

Figure 16: Scenario for Integrated User Firewall



The SRX Series device reads and analyzes the event log of the domain controller and generates an authentication table as an Active Directory authentication source for this feature. The user firewall is aware of any domain user on an Active Directory domain device via the Active Directory authentication source. The SRX Series device administrator configures a user firewall policy that enforces the desired user-based or group-based access control.

For any non-domain user or domain user on a non-domain machine, the administrator specifies a captive portal to force the user to do firewall authentication (if the SRX Series supports captive portal for the traffic type). After the user enters a name and password and passes firewall authentication, the SRX Series gets firewall authentication user/group information and can enforce user firewall policy to control the user accordingly.

In addition to captive portal, if the IP address or user information is not available from the event log, the user can again log in to the Windows PC to generate an event log entry. Then the system generates the user's authentication entry accordingly.

Limitations

- Windows Active Directory controllers older than Windows 2003 are not supported.
- Tracking the status of non-Windows Active Directory users is not supported.
- IPv6 addresses are not supported.
- Logical systems are not supported.
- The WMIC does not support multiple users logged onto the same PC.
- Domain controllers and domain PCs must be running Windows OS. The minimum support for a Windows client is Windows XP. The minimum support for a server is Windows Server 2003.
- You cannot use the Primary Group, whether by its default name of Domain Users, or any other name (if you happened to have changed it), in integrated user firewall configurations.

When a new user is created in Active Directory, the user is added to the global security group Primary Group which is by default called Domain Users. The Primary Group is less specific than other groups created in Active Directory because all users belong to it. Consequently, it can become very large.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding the Three-Tiered User Firewall Features](#)
- [Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller on page 175](#)
- [Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables on page 146](#)
- [Understanding Integrated User Firewall Domain PC Probing on page 178](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155](#)
- [user-identification \(Services\) on page 449](#)

Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Active Directory Authentication as an Authentication Source on page 147](#)
- [Active Directory Authentication Tables on page 147](#)
- [State Information for Active Directory Authentication Table Entries on page 149](#)
- [Active Directory Authentication Table Management on page 150](#)
- [Timeout Interval for Table Entries on page 151](#)

Active Directory Authentication as an Authentication Source

On an SRX Series device, user information tables serve as the authentication source for information required by firewall security policies. The SRX Series device supports various user information tables including local, user firewall, and Unified Access Control (UAC) types. The integrated user firewall feature introduces another type of authentication source—Active Directory authentication.

The integrated user firewall feature gathers user and group information for Active Directory authentication by reading domain controller event logs, probing domain PCs, and querying Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) services within the configured Windows domain. Up to two Windows domains are supported.

From the user and group information, the integrated user firewall feature generates an Active Directory authentication table on the Routing Engine of the SRX Series device, which then pushes the authentication table to the Packet Forwarding Engine. Security policies use the information in the table to authenticate users and to provide access control for traffic through the firewall.

Active Directory Authentication Tables

The Active Directory authentication table contains the IP address, username, and group mapping information that serves as the authentication source for the SRX Series integrated user firewall feature. Information in the table is obtained by reading Windows Active Directory domain controller event logs, probing domain PCs, and querying LDAP services within a specified Windows domain.

Reading domain controller event logs generates a list of IP address-to-user mapping information that is used to create entries in the Active Directory authentication table. Once entries have been added in the table, a query is sent to the LDAP server for user-to-group mapping information.

The LDAP server returns all group information; this includes not only information about the groups you directly belong to, but also all the parent (and parent of the parent and so on) groups that you belong to. Group information returned from the LDAP server is compared with the source identity in security policies. If there is a match, Active Directory authentication table entries are updated to include only the group information provided in the security policy. In this way, only relevant group information is listed in the authentication table. Whenever source identity is updated, the authentication table is also updated to reflect the up-to-date relevant group information for all listed users.

When user traffic arrives at the firewall, the Active Directory authentication table is searched for an entry corresponding to the source IP address of the traffic. If an entry exists, policies matching that entry are applied to the traffic and access is allowed or denied.

[Table 9 on page 148](#) lists Active Directory authentication table support by SRX Series devices. Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.

Table 9: Active Directory Authentication Table Support by SRX Series Devices

SRX Series Devices	Active Directory Authentication Table Entries	Domains	Active Directory Controllers
SRX100, SRX110, SRX210, SRX220	500	1	5
SRX240	1000	1	5
SRX300	500	1	5
SRX320	500	1	5
SRX340, 345	1000	1	5
SRX550M	5000	2	10
SRX650	5000	2	10
SRX1400	20,000	2	10
SRX1500	20,000	2	10
SRX3000 line	50,000	2	10
SRX5000 line	100,000	2	10
vSRX	5000	2	10

Once the maximum number of authentication table entries is reached, no additional entries are created.

To be compliant with the Active Directory authentication table, entries must adhere to the following parameters:

- Usernames are limited to 64 characters.
- Group names are limited to 64 characters.
- Each entry can be associated with up to 200 relevant groups (configured in the source identity field). For example, if you belong to 1000 groups in LDAP and out of these, no more than 200 groups are configured in the source identity field, you are compliant with the Active Directory authentication table.

The Active Directory Authentication table must be enabled as the authentication source for integrated user firewall information retrieval.

```
user@host# set security user-identification authentication source
active-directory-authentication-table priority priority
```




NOTE: The **priority** option specifies the sequence in which user information tables are checked. Using the lowest setting for the Active Directory authentication source specifies the highest priority, meaning that the Active Directory authentication source is searched first.

State Information for Active Directory Authentication Table Entries

Active Directory authentication table entries can be in one of four states:

Initial—Specifies that IP address-to-user mapping information was obtained by reading domain controller event logs and an entry was added to the authentication table. Entries in this state are changed to valid when the table is pushed from the Routing Engine to the Packet Forwarding Engine.

Valid—Specifies that a valid entry was obtained by reading domain controller event logs or that a valid response was received from a domain PC probe and the user is a valid domain user.

Invalid—Specifies that an invalid response was received from a domain PC probe and the user is an invalid domain user.

Pending—Specifies that a probe event generated an entry in the authentication table, but no probe response has been received from the domain PC. If a probe response is not received within 90 seconds, the entry is deleted from the table.

For a list of probe responses, see [“Understanding Integrated User Firewall Domain PC Probing” on page 178](#).

To display Active Directory authentication entries, along with their state information, use the following command:

```
user@host>show services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table all
```

Domain: www.example1.net

Total count: 2

Source IP	Username	Groups	State
192.168.10.2	u2	r1, r3, r4	initial
192.168.10.3	u3	r5, r6, r4	pending

Domain: www.example2.net

Total count: 2

Source IP	Username	Groups	State
10.1.1.2	u4	r1, r3, r4	valid
10.1.1.3	u5	r5, r6, r4	invalid

Command options allow you to display information by **user** or **group**, and to define additional output levels—**brief**, **domain**, **extensive**, **node**.

Active Directory Authentication Table Management

Windows domain environments are constantly changing as users log in and out of the network and as network administrators modify user group information. The integrated user firewall feature manages changes in the Windows domain by periodically reading domain controller event logs and querying the LDAP server for user-to-group mapping information. That information is used in updating the Active Directory authentication table as appropriate.

Additionally, a probe function is provided to address changes that occur between reading event logs, or to address the case where event log information is lost. An on-demand probe is triggered when client traffic arrives at the firewall but a source IP address for that client cannot be found in the table. And at any point, manual probing is available to probe a specific IP address.

Changes to the active Directory Authentication table also occur due to source identity changes in the security policy configuration.

[Table 10 on page 150](#) describes events that trigger an Active Directory authentication table update.

Table 10: Events Triggering Active Directory Authentication Table Updates

Event	Active Directory Authentication Table Update
A domain controller event log is read at configured intervals.	<p>New IP address-to-user entries are added in the authentication table in initial state. Group information is retrieved from the LDAP server.</p> <p>When the authentication entry is pushed to Packet Forwarding Engine, the state is changed to valid.</p>
An on-demand or manual probe is sent to a domain PC.	An entry is added in the authentication table in pending state. If a probe response is not returned within 90 seconds, the state of the entry is deleted.
An on-demand or manual probe response is received from a domain PC.	Based on the response, entries in pending state are changed to valid or invalid. For valid responses, the group information is retrieved from the LDAP server. For invalid responses, the entry is marked as invalid.
An LDAP server query identifies new user-to-group mapping information.	Entries are updated with the group information.
An LDAP server query identifies deleted user information.	Entries associated with that user are deleted from the table.
An LDAP server query identifies deleted group information.	<p>The affected group information is updated.</p> <p>For example, user2 belongs to group2, and group2 belongs to group1. And, group1 is listed as a source-identity for group2. For any authentication entry of user2, group1 is listed in its relevant groups. However, if group2 is removed from the LDAP server, user2 loses the connection with group1, and as a result, group1 is removed from the user2 authentication table.</p>

Table 10: Events Triggering Active Directory Authentication Table Updates (*continued*)

Event	Active Directory Authentication Table Update
An LDAP server query identifies added group information.	If the group is referenced in a security policy, entries associated with this group are updated to add the group information.
The source identity information is removed from a security policy configuration.	Entries associated with the source identity are deleted from Active Directory authentication table.



NOTE: If an entry is deleted from the table, any sessions attached to that entry are also deleted. If an entry in the table is updated to add or remove group information, there is no impact to existing sessions for that entry.



NOTE: When you use the CLI to delete an active directory authentication entry, the system closes the related session and writes a session-close message to the log file. However, the session-close message does not contain the source identity information for the user, that is, the user and user group information."

To manually delete an entry from the table, use the **request services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table** command. Options exist for deleting a specific IP address, domain, group, or user.

To clear the contents of the Active Directory authentication table, use the **clear services user-identification active-directory access active-directory-authentication-table** command.

Timeout Interval for Table Entries

When a user is no longer active, a timer is started for that user's entry in the Active Directory authentication table. When time is up, the user's entry is removed from the table. Entries in the table remain active as long as there are sessions associated with the entry.

To set the timeout value, use the following statement:

```
user@host# set services user-identification active-directory-access
authentication-entry-timeout minutes
```

The default **authentication-entry-timeout** interval is 30 minutes. To disable timeouts, set the interval to 0.



NOTE: We recommend that you disable timeouts when disabling on-demand probing in order to prevent someone from accessing the Internet without logging in again.

To view timeout information for Active Directory authentication table entries, use the following command:

```
user@host>show services user-identification active-directory-access  
active-directory-authentication-table all extensive
```

```
Domain: www.example1.net  
Total entries: 2  
Source IP: 192.168.1.2  
Username: u2  
Groups: r1, r3, r4  
State: initial  
Access start date: 2014-03-22  
Access start time: 10:56:58  
Age time: 20 min
```

```
Source IP: 192.168.1.3  
Username: u3  
Groups: r5, r6, r4  
State: pending  
Access start date: 2014-03-22  
Access start time: 10:46:58  
Age time: 10 min
```

This example shows that the timer has started for two entries—the entry for user u2 will time out in 20 minutes, while the entry for user u3 will time out in 10 minutes. When session traffic is associated with an entry, the age time value changes to “infinite.”

Related Documentation

- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Understanding Integrated User Firewall Domain PC Probing on page 178](#)
- [LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152](#)
- [active-directory-authentication-table on page 306](#)
- [user-identification \(Services\) on page 449](#)

LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Role of LDAP in Integrated User Firewall on page 152](#)
- [LDAP Server Configuration and Base Distinguished Name on page 153](#)
- [LDAP's Authentication Method on page 153](#)
- [LDAP Server's Username, Password, and Server Address on page 153](#)
- [Caching and Calculation of User-to-Group Mappings on page 153](#)
- [Updating Group Information in the Authentication Entry Table on page 154](#)
- [LDAP Server Status and Statistics on page 154](#)
- [Active Directory Autodiscovery on page 154](#)

Role of LDAP in Integrated User Firewall

In order to get the user and group information necessary to implement the Integrated User Firewall feature, the SRX Series device uses the Lightweight Directory Access

Protocol (LDAP). The SRX Series acts as an LDAP client communicating with an LDAP server. In a common implementation scenario of the integrated user firewall feature, the domain controller acts as the LDAP server. The LDAP module in the SRX Series, by default, queries the Active Directory in the domain controller.

The SRX Series downloads user and group lists from the LDAP server. The device also queries the LDAP server for user and group updates. The SRX Series downloads a first-level, user-to-group mapping relationship and then calculates a full user-to-group mapping.

The use of “LDAP” in this section applies specifically to LDAP functionality within the integrated user firewall feature.

LDAP Server Configuration and Base Distinguished Name

Most of the LDAP server configuration is optional, leveraging the common implementation scenario where the domain controller acts as the LDAP server. The SRX Series periodically (every two minutes) queries the LDAP server to get the user and group information changed since the last query.

LDAP's Authentication Method

By default, the LDAP authentication method uses simple authentication. The client's username and password are sent to the LDAP server in plaintext. Keep in mind that the password is clear and can be read from the network.

To avoid exposing the password, you can use simple authentication within an encrypted channel [namely Secure Sockets layer (SSL)], as long as the LDAP server supports LDAP over SSL (LDAPS). After enabling SSL, the data sent from the LDAP server to the SRX Series is encrypted. To enable SSL, see the **user-group-mapping** statement.

LDAP Server's Username, Password, and Server Address

The LDAP server's username, password, IP address, and port are all optional, but they can be configured.

- If the username and password are not configured, the system uses the configured domain controller's username and password.
- If the LDAP server's IP address is not configured, the system uses the address of one of the configured Active Directory domain controllers.
- If the port is not configured, the system uses port 389 for plaintext or port 636 for encrypted text.

Caching and Calculation of User-to-Group Mappings

The SRX Series device caches user-to-group mappings in its local database when the **show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping** operation is performed. This command displays the users who belong to a group or the groups to which a user belongs.

Three events cause a user-to-group mapping to be removed from the cache:

- A source-identity is removed from a referenced firewall policy (because only source-identities referenced in a policy are stored in the authentication table).
- The LDAP configuration is deleted from the customer's configuration, so all cached Active Directory user-to-group mappings for the domain are removed.
- The user-to-group mapping is deleted from the LDAP server.

The SRX periodically queries to get user and group information from the LDAP server in real time. The user list and the group list show only cached users or groups, not all users or groups in the LDAP server. From this information, the SRX Series calculates one-level mapping relationships. The user list, group list, and mapping are cached in the local database.

Updating Group Information in the Authentication Entry Table

The SRX Series device queries to get the changed users and groups based on the prior query results from the LDAP server. The SRX Series updates the local database and triggers an authentication entry update. Only user/group mappings that are already cached are updated. Other users and groups that are not in the database do not have their mapping relationships cached.

LDAP Server Status and Statistics

You can verify the LDAP connection status by issuing the **show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status** command.

You can see counts of queries made to the LDAP server by issuing the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping** command.

Active Directory Autodiscovery

The integrated user firewall feature provides the IP address and Active Directory name of the domain. The auto-discovery feature can use the Active Directory's global catalog feature and then query DNS for a list of global catalogs. The global catalogs in the list are typically provided in a weighted order based on criteria such as network location, system-set weights based on global catalog server size, and so on. Once the customer has the list of Active Directories, the customer can configure it for both event log reading and LDAP search.

Related Documentation

- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller on page 175](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics on page 553](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping on page 556](#)
- [user-group-mapping on page 447](#)

Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall

This example shows how to implement the integrated user firewall feature by configuring a Windows Active Directory domain, an LDAP base, unauthenticated users to be directed to captive portal, and a security policy based on a source identity.

- [Requirements on page 155](#)
- [Overview on page 155](#)
- [Configuration on page 156](#)
- [Verification on page 162](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- One SRX Series device
- Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10 or later for SRX Series devices

No special configuration beyond device initialization is required before configuring this feature.

Overview

In a typical scenario for the integrated user firewall feature, domain and non-domain users want to access the Internet through an SRX Series device. The SRX Series device reads and analyzes the event log of the domain controllers configured in the domain. Thus, the SRX Series device detects domain users on an Active Directory domain controller. Active Directory domain generates an authentication table as the Active Directory authentication source for the integrated user firewall. The SRX Series device uses this information to enforce the policy to achieve user-based or group-based access control.

For any non-domain user or domain user on a non-domain device, the network administrator can specify a captive portal to force the user to submit to firewall authentication (if the SRX Series device supports captive portal for the traffic type. For example, HTTP). After the user enters a name and password and passes firewall authentication, the SRX Series device gets firewall authentication user-to-group mapping information from the LDAP server and can enforce user firewall policy control over the user accordingly.



NOTE: You cannot use the Primary Group, whether by its default name of Domain Users or any other name, if you changed it, in integrated user firewall configurations.

When a new user is created in Active Directory (AD), the user is added to the global security group Primary Group which is by default Domain Users. The Primary Group is less specific than other groups created in AD because all users belong to it. Also, it can become very large.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
  user-group-mapping ldap base DC=example,DC=net
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net user
  administrator password pwd
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
  domain-controller ad1 address 192.0.2.15
set access profile profile1 authentication-order ldap
set access profile profile1 authentication-order password
set access profile profile1 ldap-options base-distinguished-name
  CN=Users,DC=example,DC=com
set access profile profile1 ldap-options search search-filter sAMAccountName=
set access profile profile1 ldap-options search admin-search distinguished-name
  CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=example,DC=com
set access profile profile1 ldap-options search admin-search password password
set access profile profile1 ldap-server 192.0.2.3
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match destination-address
  any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match application any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-identity
  unauthenticated-user
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-identity
  unknown-user
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile profile1
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match destination-address
  any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match application any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match source-identity
  "example.com\user1"
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 then permit
set security user-identification authentication source active-directory-authentication-table
  priority 125
```


Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

To establish a Windows Active Directory domain, to configure captive portal, and to configure another security policy, perform the steps in this section.

Once configured, when traffic arrives, the SRX Series device consults the user firewall process, which in turn consults the Active Directory authentication source to determine whether the source is in its authentication table. If the user firewall hits an authentication entry, the SRX Series device checks the policy configured in Step 4 for further action. If the user firewall does not hit any authentication entry, the SRX Series device checks the policy configured in Step 3 to enforce the user to do captive portal.

1. Configure the LDAP base distinguished name.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.com user-group-mapping
ldap base DC=example,DC=com
```

2. Configure a domain name, the username and password of the domain, and the name and IP address of the domain controller in the domain.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.com user administrator
password xxxxx
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net domain-controller
ad1 address 192.0.2.15
```

3. Configure an access profile and set the authentication order and LDAP options.

```
[edit access profile profile1]
user@host# set authentication-order ldap
user@host# set authentication-order password
user@host# set ldap-options base-distinguished-name
CN=Users,DC=example,DC=com
user@host# set ldap-options search search-filter sAMAccountName=
user@host# set ldap-options search admin-search distinguished-name
CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=example,DC=com
user@host# set ldap-options search admin-search password pwd
user@host# set ldap-server 192.0.2.3
```

4. Configure a policy for the source-identity “unauthenticated-user” and “unknown-user” and enable the firewall authentication captive portal. Configuring the source identity is required in case there is no authentication sources configured, it is disconnected.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set match source-identity unauthenticated-user
user@host# set match source-identity unknown-user
```

```
user@host# set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile
profile1
user@host# set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall domain
example.userfw.com
```

5. Configure a second policy to enable a specific user.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set match source-identity ""example.com\user1""
user@host# set then permit
```



NOTE: When you specify a source identity in a policies statement, prepend the domain name and a backslash to the group name or username. Enclose the combination in quotation marks.

6. Set the Active Directory authentication table as the authentication source for integrated user firewall information retrieval and specify the sequence in which user information tables are checked.

```
[edit security ]
user@host# set user-identification authentication source
active-directory-authentication-table priority 125
```



NOTE: You must set the Active Directory authentication table as the authentication source for integrated user firewall information retrieval and specify the sequence in which user information tables are checked using the command `set security user-identification authentication source active-directory-authentication-table priority value`.

The default value of this option is 125. The default priority for all the authentication sources is as follows:

- Local authentication: 100
- Integrated user firewall: 125
- User role firewall: 150
- Unified Access Control (UAC): 200

The field `priority` specifies the sources for the Active Directory authentication table. The value set determines the sequence for searching among various supported authentication tables to retrieve a user role. Note that these are the only currently supported values. You can enter any value from 0 through 65,535. The default priority of the Active Directory authentication table is 125. This means that even if you do not specify a priority value, the Active Directory authentication table will be searched starting at sequence of value 125 (integrated user firewall).

For more details, see [“Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables” on page 146](#) and `active-directory-authentication-table`.

(Optional) Configuration of PKI and SSL Forward Proxy to Authenticate Users

Step-by-Step Procedure

Optionally, for non-domain users, you can configure public key infrastructure (PKI) to validate integrity, confidentiality, and authenticity of traffic. PKI includes digital certificates issued by the Certificate Authority (CA), certificate validity and expiration dates, details about the certificate owner and issuer, and security policies.



NOTE: For any non-domain user or domain user on a non-domain machine, the administrator specifies a captive portal to force the user to do firewall authentication (if the SRX Series device supports captive portal for the traffic type). After the user enters a name and password and passes firewall authentication, the SRX Series device gets firewall authentication user/group information and can enforce the user firewall policy to control the user accordingly. In addition to captive portal, if the IP address or user information is not available from the event log, the user can again log in to the Windows PC to generate an event log entry. Then the system generates the user's authentication entry accordingly.

To enable the SRX Series device to authenticate the users through HTTPs, the SSL forward proxy must be configured and enabled. You need to generate a local certificate, add an SSL termination profile, add an SSL proxy profile, and reference the SSL proxy profile in the security policy. If the SSL forward proxy is not enabled, the SRX Series device cannot authenticate users who are using HTTPs, but for users who are using HTTP, FTP, and Telnet, the authentication can be performed as expected.

To generate PKI and enable SSL forward proxy, perform the following steps:

1. Generate a PKI public/private key pair for a local digital certificate.

```
user@host# request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id ssl-inspect-ca size 2048 type rsa
```

2. Manually generate a self-signed certificate for the given distinguished name.

```
user@host# request security pki local-certificate generate-self-signed certificate-id ssl-inspect-ca domain-name www.mycompany.net subject "CN=www.mycompany.com,OU=IT,O=MY COMPANY,L=Sunnyvale,ST=CA,C=US" email security-admin@mycompany.net
```

3. Define the access profile to be used for SSL termination services. This option is available only on SRX5400, SRX5high-end SRX Series devices.

```
user@host# set services ssl termination profile for_userfw server-certificate ssl-inspect-ca
```

4. Configure the loaded certificate as root-ca in the SSL proxy profile. This option is available only on SRX 5400, SRX 5600, and SRX 5800 devices.

```
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile root-ca ssl-inspect-ca
```

- Specify the **ignore-server-auth-failure** option if you do not want to import the entire CA list and you do not want dropped sessions. This option is available only on SRX 5400, SRX 5600, and SRX devices.

```
user@host# set services ssl proxy profile ssl-inspect-profile actions
ignore-server-auth-failure
```

- Add an SSL termination profile into security policies. This option is available only on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 SRX Series devices.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy p1 then
permit firewall-authentication user-firewall ssl-termination-profile for_userfw
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your integrated user firewall configuration by entering the **show services user-identification active-directory-access** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show services user-identification active-directory-access
domain example.com {
  user {
    administrator;
    password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
  }
  domain-controller ad1 {
    address 192.0.2.15;
  }
  user-group-mapping {
    ldap {
      base DC=example,DC=com;
    }
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your policy configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
      source-identity unauthenticated-user;
      source-identity unknown-user;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        firewall-authentication {
```

```
        user-firewall {
            access-profile profile1;
        }
    }
}
}
policy p2 {
    match {
        source-address any;
        destination-address any;
        application any;
        source-identity "example.com\user1";
    }
    then {
        permit;
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying Connectivity to a Domain Controller on page 162](#)
- [Verifying the LDAP Server on page 162](#)
- [Verifying Authentication Table Entries on page 163](#)
- [Verifying IP-to-User Mapping on page 163](#)
- [Verifying IP Probe Counts on page 163](#)
- [Verifying User-to-Group Mapping Queries on page 163](#)

Verifying Connectivity to a Domain Controller

Purpose	Verify that at least one domain controller is configured and connected.
Action	From operational mode, enter the show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status command.
Meaning	The domain controller is shown to be connected or disconnected.

Verifying the LDAP Server

Purpose	Verify that the LDAP server is providing user-to-group mapping information.
Action	From operational mode, enter the show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status command.

Meaning The LDAP server address, port number, and status are displayed.

Verifying Authentication Table Entries

Purpose See which groups users belong to and the users, groups, and IP addresses in a domain.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all** command.

Meaning The IP addresses, usernames, and groups are displayed for each domain.

Verifying IP-to-User Mapping

Purpose Verify that the event log is being scanned.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping** command.

Meaning The counts of the queries and failed queries are displayed.

Verifying IP Probe Counts

Purpose Verify that IP probes are occurring.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe** command.

Meaning The counts of the IP probes and failed IP probes are displayed.

Verifying User-to-Group Mapping Queries

Purpose Verify that user-to-group mappings are being queried.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping** command.

Meaning The counts of the queries and failed queries are displayed.

Related Documentation

- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Understanding the Three-Tiered User Firewall Features](#)

- [policies on page 383](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table on page 546](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status on page 550](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics on page 553](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping on page 556](#)

Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Use Web-Redirect for Unauthenticated and Unknown Users

This example shows how to use web-redirect for unauthenticated users and unknown users to redirect to the authentication page through http.

- [Requirements on page 164](#)
- [Overview on page 164](#)
- [Configuration on page 164](#)
- [Verification on page 167](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- One SRX Series device
- Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70 or later for SRX Series devices

No special configuration beyond device initialization is required before configuring this feature.

Overview

The fwauth access profile redirects **web-redirect** requests of pass-through traffic to HTTP webauth (in JWEB httpd server). Once authentication is successful, fwauth creates a firewall authentication for the user firewall.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set system services web-management http
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.0.0.25/24 web-authentication http
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match destination-address
any
```



```

set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match application any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-identity
  unauthenticated-user
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-identity
  unknown-user
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile profile1 web-redirect
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
  firewall-authentication user-firewall domain ad03.net

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure the integrated user firewall to use web-redirect for unauthenticated users requesting access to HTTP-based resources:

1. Enable web-management support for HTTP traffic.

```

[edit system services]
user@host# set system services web-management http

```
2. Configure interfaces and assign IP addresses. Enable Web authentication on ge-0/0/1 interface.

```

[edit interfaces]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.0.0.25/24
  web-authentication http

```
3. Configure security policies that specifies an unauthenticated-user or unknown-user as the source-identity.

```

[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set match source-identity unauthenticated-user
user@host# set match source-identity unknown-user

```
4. Configure a security policy that permits firewall authentication of a user firewall with **web-redirect** as the action and specifies a pre configured access profile for the user.

```

[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile
  profile1 web-redirect

```
5. Configure a security policy that specifies the domain name.

```

[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall domain ad03.net

```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show system services** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show system services
web-management {
  http {
    port 123;
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your integrated user-firewall configuration by entering the **show interfaces** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 46.20.0.1/24 {
        web-authentication http;
      }
      address 3.0.0.25/24 {
        web-authentication http;
      }
    }
    family inet6 {
      address 3046:20::1/64;
    }
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your integrated user-firewall configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
      source-identity unauthenticated-user;
      source-identity unknown-user;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        firewall-authentication {
          user-firewall {
            access-profile profile1;
            web-redirect;
            domain ad03.net;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}

```

From configuration mode, confirm your policy configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verify the Configuration.

Purpose Verify that the configuration is correct.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

Sample Output

```
user@host> show security policies
```

```
Default policy: permit-all
```

```
From zone: PCzone, To zone: Tunnelzone
```

```
Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses: any
```

```
Destination addresses: any
```

```
Applications: junos-ftp, junos-tftp, junos-dns-tcp, junos-dns-udp
```

```
Action: permit
```

Meaning Display the security policy that permits firewall authentication of a user firewall with web-redirect as the action.

Related Documentation

- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155](#)

Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Use Web-Redirect-to-HTTPS for Unauthenticated and Unknown Users

This example shows how to use web-redirect-to-https for unauthenticated and unknown users to redirect to the authentication page through https.

- [Requirements on page 168](#)
- [Overview on page 168](#)

- [Configuration on page 168](#)
- [Verification on page 170](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- One SRX Series device
- Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70 or later for SRX Series devices

No special configuration beyond device initialization is required before configuring this feature.

Overview

The fwauth access profile redirects **web-redirect-to-https** requests of pass-through traffic to HTTPS webauth (in JWEB httpd server). Once authentication is successful, fwauth creates a firewall authentication for the user firewall.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set system services web-management https pki-local-certificate my-test-cert
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.0.0.25/24 web-authentication https
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match application any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-identity unauthenticated-user
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match source-identity unknown-user
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile profile1 web-redirect-to-https
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall domain ad03.net
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

To configure the web-redirect-to-https for unauthenticated users requesting access to HTTP/HTTPS-based resources:

1. Enable web-management support for HTTPS traffic.

```
[edit system services]
user@host# set system services web-management https pki-local-certificate my-test-cert
```

2. Configure interfaces and assign IP addresses. Enable Web authentication on ge-0/0/1 interface.

```
[edit interfaces]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.0.0.25/24
web-authentication https
```

3. Configure security policies that specifies an unauthenticated-user or unknown-user as the source-identity.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set match source-identity unauthenticated-user
user@host# set match source-identity unknown-user
```

4. Configure a security policy that permits firewall authentication of a user firewall with **web-redirect-to-https** as the action and specifies a pre configured access profile for the user.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall access-profile
profile1 web-redirect-to-https
```

5. Configure a security policy that specify the domain name.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1]
user@host# set then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall domain ad03.net
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show system services** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show system services
web-management {
  http {
    port 123;
  }
  https {
    pki-local-certificate pki-local-certificate;
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your integrated user-firewall configuration by entering the **show interfaces** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 46.20.0.1/24 {
```

```
        web-authentication {
            http;
            https;
        }
    }
    family inet6 {
        address 3046:20::1/64;
    }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your integrated user-firewall configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
      source-identity unauthenticated-user;
      source-identity unknown-user;
    }
    then {
      permit {
        firewall-authentication {
          user-firewall {
            access-profile profile1;
            web-redirect;
            web-redirect-to-https;
            domain ad03.net;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your policy configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Verify the Configuration.

Purpose Verify that the configuration is correct.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

Sample Output

```
user@host> show security policies
Default policy: permit-all
From zone: PCzone, To zone: Tunnelzone
Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses: any
Destination addresses: any
Applications: junos-ftp, junos-tftp, junos-dns-tcp, junos-dns-udp
Action: permit
```

Meaning Display the security policy permit that permits firewall authentication of a user firewall with web-redirect-to-https as the action.

Related Documentation

- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155](#)

Understanding SRX Series Assured Captive Portal Support for Unauthenticated Browser Users

When an unauthenticated user requests access to an SRX Series protected resource using an HTTP/HTTPS browser, the SRX Series device presents the user with a captive portal interface to allow the user to authenticate. Normally, this process occurs without interference. However, prior to introduction of this feature, HTTP/HTTPS-based workstation services running in the background, such as Microsoft updates and control checks, could trigger captive portal authentication before the HTTP/HTTPS browser-based user's access request did. The situation posed a race condition. If a background process triggered captive portal first, the SRX Series device presented it with a "401 Unauthorized" page. The service discarded the page without informing the browser, and the browser user was never presented with the authentication portal. The SRX Series device did not support simultaneous authentication from the same source (IP address) on different SPUs.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90, the SRX Series device supports simultaneous HTTP/HTTPS pass-through authentication across multiple SPUs, including support for web-redirect authentication. If an HTTP/HTTPS packet arrives while the SPU is querying the CP, the SRX Series device queues the packet to be handled later.

Additionally, the following two parameters are made available to give you greater control over how HTTP/HTTPS traffic is handled.

- **auth-only-browser**—Authenticate only browser traffic. If you specify this parameter, the SRX Series device distinguishes HTTP/HTTPS browser traffic from other HTTP/HTTPS traffic. The SRX Series device does not respond to non-browser traffic. You can use the **auth-user-agent** parameter in conjunction with this control to further ensure that the HTTP traffic is from a browser.
- **auth-user-agent**—Authenticate HTTP/HTTPS traffic based on the User-Agent field in the HTTP/HTTPS browser header. You can specify one user-agent value per

configuration. The SRX Series device checks the user-agent value that you specify against the User-Agent field in the HTTP/HTTPS browser header for a match to determine if the traffic is HTTP/HTTPS browser-based.

You can use this parameter with the `auth-only-browser` parameter or alone for both pass-through and user-firewall firewall-authentication.

You can specify only one string as a value for `auth-user-agent`. It must not include spaces and you do not need to enclose the string in quotation marks.

Here are some examples of how to configure security policies to use the `auth-only-browser` and `auth-user-agent` firewall authentication features.

For Pass-Through Authentication

Configures a security policy for pass-through authentication that uses the `auth-only-browser` parameter.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then permit
firewall-authentication pass-through auth-only-browser access-profile
my-access-profile1
```

Configures a security policy for pass-through authentication that uses the `auth-user-agent` parameter without `auth-only-browser`.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 then permit
firewall-authentication pass-through auth-user-agent Opera1 access-profile
my-access-profile2
```

Configures a security policy for pass-through authentication that uses the `auth-only-browser` with the `auth-user-agent` parameter.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 then permit
firewall-authentication pass-through auth-only-browser auth-user-agent Opera1
my-access-profile3
```

For User Firewall Authentication

Configures a security policy for user-firewall authentication that uses the auth-only-browser parameter.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 then permit
firewall-authentication user-firewall auth-only-browser access-profile
my-access-profile4t
```

Configures a security policy for user-firewall authentication that uses the auth-user-agent parameter without auth-only-browser.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 then permit
firewall-authentication user-firewall auth-user-agent Opera1 access-profile
my-access-profile5
```

Configures a security policy for user-firewall authentication that uses the auth-only-browser with the auth-user-agent parameter.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 then permit
firewall-authentication user-firewall auth-only-browser auth-user-agent Opera1
access-profile my-access-profile6
```

- Related Documentation
- [auth-only-browser on page 312](#)
 - [auth-user-agent on page 313](#)

Managing Event Logs

- [Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller on page 175](#)
- [Using Firewall Authentication as an Alternative to WMIC on page 177](#)
- [Understanding Integrated User Firewall Domain PC Probing on page 178](#)

Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Windows Management Instrumentation Client on page 175](#)
- [WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller on page 176](#)
- [Specifying IP Filters to Limit IP-to-User Mapping on page 176](#)
- [Event Log Verification and Statistics on page 176](#)

Windows Management Instrumentation Client

When you configure the integrated user firewall feature on an SRX Series device, the SRX Series establishes a Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI)/Distributed Component Object Module (DCOM) connection to the domain controller. The SRX Series acts as a WMI client (WMIC). It reads and monitors the security event log on the domain controller. The SRX Series analyzes the event messages to generate IP address-to-user mapping information.

All configuration regarding the WMIC is optional; it will function with default values. After the domain is configured (by the **set services user-identification active-directory-access domain** statement), the WMIC starts to work. The WMIC connection to the domain controller uses the same user credentials as those configured for the domain.



CAUTION: Integrated user firewall uses NTLMv2 as the default WMIC authentication protocol for security reasons. NTLMv1 exposes the system to attacks in which authentication hashes could be extracted from NTLMv1 authentication responses.

For compatibility with integrated user firewall, you must apply the latest version of the Microsoft SP2 patch if you are running an older version of Windows OS, including Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows 2003.

WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller

The following SRX Series behaviors apply to reading the event log:

- The SRX Series monitors the event log at a configurable interval, which defaults to 10 seconds.
- The SRX Series reads the event log for a certain timespan, which you can configure. The default timespan is one hour. Each time at WMIC startup, the SRX Series checks the last timestamp and the timespan. If the last timestamp is older than the current timespan, then the timespan takes effect. After the WMIC and the UserID process start working, the timespan does not apply; the SRX Series simply reads the latest event log.
- During WMIC startup, the SRX Series has a maximum count of events it will read from the event log, and that maximum is not configurable.
 - On SRX Series SRX 300, SRX 320, SRX 340, and SRX 345 devices, the maximum count is 100,000.
 - On SRX SRX 5400, SRX 5600, and SRX 5800 devices, the maximum count is 200,000.

During WMIC startup, this maximum is used with the timespan setting, so that if either limit is reached, the WMIC stops reading the event log.

- After a failover, the SRX Series reads the event log from the latest event log timestamp.
- In a chassis cluster environment, the WMIC works on the primary node only.

Specifying IP Filters to Limit IP-to-User Mapping

You can specify IP filters to limit the IP address-to-user mapping information that the SRX Series generates from the event log.

To understand when a filter is useful for such mapping, consider the following scenario. A customer deploys 10 SRX Series devices in one domain, and each SRX Series controls a branch. All 10 SRX Series devices read all 10 branch user login event logs in the domain controller. However, the SRX Series is configured to detect only whether the user is authenticated on the branch it controls. By configuring an IP filter on the SRX Series, the SRX Series reads only the IP event log under its control.

You can configure a filter to include or exclude IP addresses or prefixes. You can specify a maximum of 20 addresses for each filter.

Event Log Verification and Statistics

You can verify that the authentication table is getting IP address and user information by issuing the **show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all** command. A list of IP address-to-user mappings is displayed for each domain. The table contains no group information until LDAP is running.

You can see statistics about reading the event log by issuing the **show services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-mapping statistics domain** command.

Related Documentation

- [show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table on page 546](#)
- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152](#)
- [Using Firewall Authentication as an Alternative to WMIC on page 177](#)

Using Firewall Authentication as an Alternative to WMIC

This topic includes the following sections:

- [WMIC Limitations on page 177](#)
- [Firewall Authentication as a Backup Method for IP Address-to-User Mappings on page 177](#)

WMIC Limitations

The primary method for the integrated user firewall feature to get IP address-to-user mapping information is for the SRX Series device to act as a WMI client (WMIC). However, the WMIC has limitations, such as the following:

- On Windows XP or Server2003, the Windows firewall does not allow the WMIC request to pass through because of the dynamic port allocation of the Distributed Component Object Model (DCOM). Therefore, for these operating systems when Windows firewall is enabled, the PC does not respond to the WMIC probe.
- Because the event-log-reading and PC probe functions both use WMI, using a global policy to disable the WMI-to-PC probe also affects event log reading.

Because these cases might result in the failure of the PC probe, a backup method for getting IP address-to-user mappings is needed. That method is to use firewall authentication to identify users.

Firewall Authentication as a Backup Method for IP Address-to-User Mappings

If you want to use firewall authentication to identify users for the integrated user firewall feature, specify a domain name in the **set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy <policy-name> then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall domain <domain-name>** statement.

If a domain is configured in that statement, fwauth recognizes that the domain is for a domain authentication entry, and will send the domain name to the fwauth process along with the authentication request. After it receives the authentication response, fwauth deletes that domain authentication entry. The fwauth process sends the source IP address, username, domain, and other information to the USERID process, which verifies that it is a valid domain user entry. The subsequent traffic will hit this user firewall entry.



NOTE: The Active Directory authentication entry that comes from the fwauth process is not subject to the IP filters.

**Related
Documentation**

- [user-firewall](#)
- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller on page 175](#)

Understanding Integrated User Firewall Domain PC Probing

This topic includes the following sections:

- [Overview of Domain PC Probing on page 178](#)
- [Probing Domain PCs for User Information on page 178](#)
- [Probe Response on page 179](#)
- [Probe Configuration on page 180](#)
- [Probe Rate and Statistics on page 180](#)

Overview of Domain PC Probing

At a high level, the integrated user firewall feature gathers IP address, user, and group information from Windows Active Directory domain controller event logs and LDAP services. This information is used to generate Active Directory authentication table entries on an SRX Series device. Authentication entries serve as the authentication source for security policies that enforce user-based or group-based access control.

PC probing acts as a supplement of event log reading. When a user logs in to the domain, the event log contains that information. The PC probe is triggered only when there is no IP-to-address mapping from the event log.

Domain information constantly changes as users log in and out of domain PCs. The integrated user firewall probe functionality provides a mechanism for tracking and verifying information in the authentication tables by directly probing domain PCs for IP address-to-user mapping information. New and changed information identified by the probe serves to update Active Directory authentication table entries, which is critical to maintaining firewall integrity.

The IP address filter also impacts the PC probe. Once you configure the IP address filter, only the IP address specified in the filter is probed.

Probing Domain PCs for User Information

The integrated user firewall feature tracks the online status of users by probing domain PCs. If a user is not online or is not an expected user, the Active Directory authentication table is updated as appropriate. The following probe behaviors apply:

On-demand probing—On-demand probing occurs when a packet is dropped due to a missing entry in the Active Directory authentication table. In this case, an entry is added in pending state to the authentication table, and the domain PC identified by the source IP field of the dropped packet is probed for IP address and user information. The entry remains in pending state until a response is received from the probe.

Manual probing—Manual probing is used to verify and troubleshoot the online status of a user or a range of users, and is at the discretion of the system administrator. To initiate a manual probe, use the **request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe address ip-address address domain domain-name** command. If a domain name is not specified, the probe looks at the first configured domain for the IP address. To specify a range, use the appropriate network address.



NOTE: Manual probing can cause entries to be removed from the Active Directory authentication table. For example, if there is no response from your PC due to a network issue, such as when the PC is too busy, the IP address entry of the PC is marked as *invalid* and your access is blocked.

If the SRX Series device cannot access a domain PC for some reason, such as a network configuration or Windows firewall issue, the probe fails.

Probe Response

Based on the domain PC probe response, updates are made to the Active Directory authentication table, and associated firewall policies take effect. If no response is received from the probe after 90 seconds, the authentication entry times out. The timed-out authentication entry is the pending state authentication entry, which is generated when you start the PC probe.

If the probe is successful, the state of the authentication entry is updated from pending to valid. If the probe is unsuccessful, the state of the authentication entry is marked as invalid. The invalid entry has the same lifetime as a valid entry and is overwritten by upcoming fwauth (firewall authentication process) authentication results or by the event log. [Table 11 on page 179](#) lists probe responses and corresponding authentication table actions.

Table 11: Probe Responses and Associated Active Directory Authentication Table Actions

Probe Response from Domain PC	Active Directory Authentication Table Action
Valid IP address and username	Add IP-related entry.
Logged on user changed	Update IP-related entry.
Connection timeout	Update IP-related entry as invalid.
Access denied	Update IP-related entry as invalid.
Connection refused	Update IP-related entry as invalid.

Table 11: Probe Responses and Associated Active Directory Authentication Table Actions (*continued*)

Probe Response from Domain PC	Active Directory Authentication Table Action
Authentication failed (The configured username and password have no privilege to probe the domain PC.)	Update IP-related entry as invalid.

Probe Configuration

On-demand probing is enabled by default. To disable on-demand probing, use the **set services user-identification active-directory-access no-on-demand-probe** statement. Delete this statement to reenabling probing. When on-demand probing is disabled, manual probing is available.

The probe timeout value is configurable. The default timeout is 10 seconds. To configure the timeout value, use the following statement:

```
user@host# set services user-identification active-directory-access wmi-timeout seconds
```

If no response is received from the domain PC within the **wmi-timeout** interval, the probe fails and the system either creates an invalid authentication entry or updates the existing authentication entry as invalid. If an authentication table entry already exists for the probed IP address, and no response is received from the domain PC within the **wmi-timeout** interval, the probe fails and that entry is deleted from the table.



NOTE: To probe domain PCs, you must configure the integrated user firewall feature with the username and password credentials. You do not necessarily need a username and password account for each PC; instead you could set up one administrator account with privileges to access information on multiple PCs.

Probe Rate and Statistics

The maximum probe rate for the integrated user firewall feature is set by default and cannot be changed. For SRX 5400, SRX 5600, and SRX 5800 devices, the probe rate is 600 times per minute. For branch SRX Series devices, the probe rate is 100 times per minute. Probe functionality supports 5000 users, or up to 10 percent of the total supported authentication entries, whichever is smaller. Supporting 10 percent means that at any time, the number of IP addresses waiting to be probed cannot exceed 10 percent. For more information about the number of supported Active Directory authentication table entries, see [“Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables” on page 146](#).

High-level statistics covering probe activity are available for the total number of probes and the number of failed probes. [Table 11 on page 179](#) describes the reasons for probe

failures. To display probe statistics, use the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe** command.

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe
Domain: www.example1.net
    Total user probe number           : 176116
    Failed user probe number          : 916

Domain: www.example2.net
    Total user probe number           : 17632
    Failed user probe number          : 342
```

- Related Documentation**
- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
 - [Understanding How the WMIC Reads the Event Log on the Domain Controller on page 175](#)
 - [Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables on page 146](#)

Logging User Identity Information Based on Zones

- [Understanding How to Include User Identity Information in the Session Log File Based on the Source Zone on page 183](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Write User Identity to the Session Log Based On the Source Zone on page 184](#)

Understanding How to Include User Identity Information in the Session Log File Based on the Source Zone

This topic covers the integrated user firewall feature that allows you to configure the system to write to the session log the user's identity by user name or group name without having to use the source identity (source-identity) tuple in the security policy. Knowing the user's identity by name, as written to the log, not just by the IP address of the user's device, gives you clearer visibility into their activity and allows you to resolve security problems faster and more easily. Relying on the source zone (from-zone) to trigger user identity logging rather than on the source identity widens the scope of users whose source identity is logged.

Typically, for each security policy, you must specify in the policy the source and destination IP addresses and the zones against which traffic is matched. You must also specify an application that the traffic is matched to. If traffic matches these criteria, then the security policy's action is applied to the traffic issued from the user's device. However, no user identity information is written to the session log.

Optionally, instead of relying exclusively on the IP address of the user's device to identify the source of the traffic, you can specify the user identity—that is, the user name or the group name—in the source-identity tuple of a security policy. This approach gives you greater control over resource access by narrowing down application of the security policy's actions to a single, identified user or a group of users, if other security policy matching conditions are met. However, use of the source-identity tuple constrains application of the policy to traffic from a single user or user group.

It may happen that you want the system to write to the session log the user identity for all users from whom traffic originated based on the zone to which they belong (from-zone). In this case, you do not want to narrow the traffic match and security policy

application to a single user or a user group, which configuring the source-identity tuple would do.

The zone-based user identity feature allows you to direct the system to write to the log user identity information for any user who belongs to a zone that is configured with the source-identity-log statement when that zone is used as the source zone in a matching security policy.



NOTE: For the source-identity-log feature to take effect, you must also configure logging of the session initialize (session-init) and session end (session-close) events as part of the security policy's actions.

Table 12 on page 184 identifies the platforms that support this feature.

Table 12: Supported Platforms

Supported SRX Series Device Platforms
SRX320
SRX550M
SRX1500 series
SRX500 series

- Related Documentation**
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Write User Identity to the Session Log Based On the Source Zone on page 184](#)
 - [source-identity-log \(Security\) on page 414](#)
 - [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
 - [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155](#)

Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Write User Identity to the Session Log Based On the Source Zone

This example shows how to configure the integrated user firewall zone-based user identity feature that directs the system to log user identity information based on the source zone (from-zone) configured in the security policy. The zone-based user identity feature widens the scope of users whose identity information is written to the log to include all users who belong to the zone whose traffic matches the security policy.

- [Requirements on page 185](#)
- [Overview on page 185](#)

- [Configuration on page 186](#)
- [Verification on page 188](#)

Requirements

This feature is supported starting with Junos OS 15.1X49-D60. You can configure and run this feature on any of the currently supported SRX Series devices beginning with Junos OS 15.1X49-D60.

Overview

This example shows how to configure integrated user firewall to log user identity information in the session log based on the source zone in the security policy. For this to occur, the zone specified as the source zone must be configured for source identity logging. For zone-based user identity logging, the security policy's actions must include session create (session-init) and session close (session-init) events.

When all conditions are met, the user's name is written to the log at the beginning of the session (or session initialization) and at the beginning of the close of the session (or session tear-down). Note that if a security policy denies the user access to the resource, an entry identifying the user by name is written to the log, that is, if session close is configured.

When you use the zone-based user identity feature, it is the source zone (from-zone) in the security policy that initiates the user identity logging event.

Prior to introduction of this feature, it was necessary to include the source identity tuple (source-identity) in a security policy to direct the system to write user identity information to the log—that is, the user name or the group name. The user identity was written to the log if the source-identity tuple was configured in any of the policies in a zone pair that matched the user's traffic and the session close log was configured.

However, the source identity feature is specific to an individual user or a group of users, and it constrains application of the security policy in that regard.

It is the user name that is stored in the local Active Directory table which the system writes to the log when the policy's source zone is configured for user-identity logging. The SRX Series device previously obtained the user identity information by reading the domain controller event log. The SRX Series device stored that information in its Active Directory table.

You can use the source-identity tuple in a security policy that also specifies as its source zone a zone that was configured for user identity logging. Because integrated user firewall collects the names of the groups that a user belongs to from Microsoft Domain Controllers only when integrated user firewall relies on the source identity tuple, if you use the zone-based user identity logging feature without also configuring source-identity, the log will contain only the name of the user requesting access and not the groups that the user belongs to.

After you configure a zone to support source identity logging, the zone is reusable as the from-zone specification in any security policy for which you want user identity information logged.

To summarize, the user's name is written to the log if:

- The user belongs to the zone configured for source identity logging.
- The user issues a resource access request whose generated traffic matches a security policy whose source zone (from-zone) tuple specifies a qualifying zone.
- The security policy includes as part of its actions the session initialize (session-init) and session end (session-close) events.

The source identity log function benefits include the ability to:

- Cover a wide range of users in a single specification—that is, all users who belong to a zone that is configured for source identity logging.
- Continue to use an address range for the source address in a security policy without forfeiting user identity logging.
- Reuse a zone that is configured for source identity logging in more than one security policy.

Because it is configured independent of the security policy, you can specify the zone as the source zone in one or more policies.



NOTE: The user identity is not logged if you specify a zone configured for zone-based user identity logging as the destination zone rather than as the source zone.

For this function to work, you must configure the following information:

- The source identity log statement configured for a zone that is used as the source zone (from-zone) in the intended security policy.
- A security policy that specifies:
 - A qualifying zone as its source zone.
 - The session-init and the session-close events as part of its actions.

Configuration

To configure the source identity logging feature, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring a Zone to Support Source Identity Logging and Using It in a Security Policy on page 187](#)
- [Results on page 188](#)

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security zones security-zone trust source-identity-log
```

```

set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 match
  source-address any destination-address any application junos-ftp
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 then permit
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 then log
  session-init
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 then log
  session-close

```

Configuring a Zone to Support Source Identity Logging and Using It in a Security Policy

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

1. Configure source identity logging for the trust zone. When this zone is used as the source zone in a security policy, the system writes the user identity information to the session log for all users to whom the security policy applies.

```

[edit security]
user@host# set zones security-zone trust source-identity-log

```

2. Configure a security policy called appfw-policy1 that specifies the zone trust as the term for its source zone. Source identity logging is applied to any user whose traffic matches the security policy's tuples.

This security policy allows the user to access the junos-ftp service. When the session is established for the user, the user's identity is logged. It is also logged at the close of the session.

```

[edit security]
user@host# set policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 match
  source-address any destination-address any application junos-ftp
user@host# set policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 then
  permit

```

3. Configure the appfw-policy1 security policy's actions to include logging of the session initiation and session close events.



NOTE: You must configure the security policy to log session initiation and session close events for the source identity log function to take effect. The user identity information is written to the log in conjunction with these events.

```

[edit security]
user@host# set policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 then
  log session-init
user@host# set policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy appfw-policy1 then
  log session-close

```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security zones** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

Verification

This section shows the session log generated for the user session. The log output:

- Shows the user name, user1, which appears at the outset of session open and then again at the outset of session close.

The security policy configuration that caused the user name to be written to the log specifies the zone trust as its source zone. The zone trust was configured for source identity logging.

- Includes information obtained from the user's request traffic, the policy matching criteria, and the NAT setup.
- Contains identity information about the user, which is obtained from the Active Directory database. That information includes the role parameter for "MyCompany/Administrator", which shows the groups that the user belongs to.

In this scenario, the user requested access to the Juniper Networks junos-ftp service, which the log also records. [Table 13 on page 188](#) calls out the parts of the log that are specific to the source identity log function configuration:

Table 13: Session Log Components Specific to the Source Identity Log Function

session create	user1 RT_FLOW_SESSION_CREATE
This is the session initiation which begins the first section of the log that records the session setup information.	
The user's name, user1, is displayed at the beginning of the session create log recording.	
Session create is followed by standard information that defines the session based on the user's traffic that matches security policy tuples.	
source address, the source port, the destination address, the destination port.	source-address="198.51.100.13/24" source-port="635" destination-address="198.51.100.10/24" destination-port="51"
application service	service-name="junos-ftp"
This is the application service that the user requested access to and which the security policy permitted.	

Table 13: Session Log Components Specific to the Source Identity Log Function (*continued*)

source zone, destination zone	source-zone-name="trust" destination-zone-name="untrust"
Further down the log are the zone specifications which show trust as the source zone and untrust as the destination zone as defined.	
session close	user1 RT_FLOW - RT_FLOW_SESSION_CLOSE
This is the session close initiation, which begins the second part of the log record that covers session tear-down and close.	
The user's name, user1, is displayed at the beginning of the session close record.	

- [Verify that the User Identity Information Was Logged on page 189](#)

Verify that the User Identity Information Was Logged

Purpose	Note that integrated user firewall collects groups configured as the source-identity only from Microsoft Domain Controllers. If you use the zone-based user-identity feature without configuring source-identity, the log will contain only the user's name, that is, no group information is recorded. In that case, the "roles=" section of the log will show "N/A". In the following example, it is assumed that the source-identity tuple was used and the "roles=" section shows a long list of the groups that the user "Administrator" belongs to.
Action	Display the log information.

Sample Output

```
<14>1 2015-01-19T15:03:40.482+08:00 user1 RT_FLOW - RT_FLOW_SESSION_CREATE
[user@host2636 192.0.2.123 source-address="198.51.100.13" source-port="635"
destination-address="198.51.100.10" destination-port="51" service-name="junos-ftp"
nat-source-address="203.0.113.10" nat-source-port="12349" nat-destination-address
="198.51.100.13" nat-destination-port="3522" nat-rule-name="None"
dst-nat-rule-name="None" protocol-id="6" policy-name="appfw-policy1"
source-zone-name="trust" destination-zone-name="untrust" session-id-22="12245"
username="MyCompany/Administrator " roles="administrators, Users, Enterprise
Admins, Schema Admins, ad, Domain Users, Group Policy Creator Owners, example-team,
Domain Admins" packet-incoming-interface="ge-0/0/0.1" application="UNKNOWN"
nested-application="UNKNOWN" encrypted="UNKNOWN"] session created 192.0.2.1/21
junos-ftp 10.1.1.12/32898->10.3.1.10/21 junos-ftp 10.1.1.1/547798->10.1.2.10/21
None None 6 appfw-policy1 trust untrust 20000025 MyCompany/Administrator
(administrators, Users, Enterprise Admins, Schema Admins, ad, Domain Users, Group
Policy Creator Ownersexample-team, Domain Admins) ge-0/0/0.0 UNKNOWN UNKNOWN
UNKNOWN
<14>1 2015-01-19T15:03:59.427+08:00 user1 RT_FLOW - RT_FLOW_SESSION_CLOSE
[user@host2636 192.0.2.123 reason="idle Timeout" source-address="198.51.100.13"
source-port="635" destination-address="198.51.100.10" destination-port="51"
service-name="junos-ftp" nat-source-address="203.0.113.10" nat-source-port="12349"
nat-destination-address="198.51.100.13" nat-destination-port="3522"
src-nat-rule-name="None" dst-nat-rule-name="None" protocol-id="6"
policy-name="appfw-policy1" source-zone-name="trust"
destination-zone-name="untrust" session-id-32="20000025" packets-from-client="3"
bytes-from-client="180"
```

```
packets-from-server="0" bytes-from-server="0" elapsed-time="19"  
application="INCONCLUSIVE" nested-application="INCONCLUSIVE" username=" J  
"MyCompany /Administrator" roles="administrators, Users, Enterprise Admins,  
Schema Admins, ad, Domain Users, Group Policy Creator Owners, example-team,  
Domain Admins" packet-incoming-interface="ge-0/0/0.1" encrypted="UNKNOWN"]  
session closed idle Timeout: 111.1.1.10/1234>10.1.1.11/21 junos-ftp  
10.1.1.12/32898->10.3.1.10/21 1 None None 6 appfw-policy1 trust untrust 20000025  
3(180) 0(0) 19  
INCONCLUSIVE INCONCLUSIVE MyCompany/Administrator (administrators, Users,  
Enterprise Admins, Schema Admins, ad, Domain Users, Group Policy Creator Owners,  
example-team, Domain Admins) ge-0/0/0.1 UNKNOWN
```

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding How to Include User Identity Information in the Session Log File Based on the Source Zone on page 183](#)
- [source-identity-log \(Security\) on page 414](#)
- [Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155](#)

CHAPTER 19

Configuring Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication for Access Control

- [Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Security Policy Matching with Device Identity Profiles on page 203](#)
- [Understanding How the SRX Series Obtains the Authenticated Device Identity Information From Windows Active Directory for Network Access Control on page 204](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity XML Solution for Third-Party NAC Authentication Systems on page 205](#)
- [Example: Configuring a Device Identity Profile to Control Network Access on page 207](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Device Identity Feature in an Active Directory Environment on page 212](#)

Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information

You can use the integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature to control access to network resources based on the attributes, or characteristics, of the device used. After you configure device identity authentication feature, you can configure security policies that allow or deny traffic from the identified device based on the policy action.

- [Why Use Device Identity Information to Control Access to Your Network on page 191](#)
- [Background on page 192](#)

Why Use Device Identity Information to Control Access to Your Network

For various reasons, you might want to control access to your network resources based on the identity of the user's device rather than on the identity of the user. For example, you might not know the identity of the user. You might allow your users to use their own devices (BYOD) to access network resources and you do not want to use captive portal

authenticate. Some companies might have older switches that do not support 802.1, or they might not have a network access Control (NAC) system. The integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature was designed to offer a solution to these and other similar situations by enabling you to control network access based on attributes of the user's device.

Background

Fundamentally, the Juniper Networks SRX Series Services Gateway device receives or obtains the device identity information from the authentication source in the same manner that it obtains the user identity information, depending on the authentication source. If Microsoft Windows Active Directory is the authentication source, the SRX Series device retrieves the device information from the Active Directory domain controller. In the case of third-party Network Access Control (NAC) systems, the SRX Series device receives the information from the authentication source through the RESTful Web services API that the SRX Series device exposes to it for this purpose. After the SRX Series device obtains the device identity information, it creates an entry for it in the device identity authentication table.

The purpose of obtaining the device information and entering it into the device identity authentication table is to control user access to network resources based on the device's identity. For this to occur, you must also configure security policies that identify the device, based on the specified device identity profile, and specify the action to be taken on traffic that issues from that device. That process is covered elsewhere.

In broad terms, the process in which the device identity information is obtained and stored in the device identity information table entails the following actions on the part of the SRX Series device:

- Getting the device identity information.

Depending on the authentication source, the SRX Series device uses one of the following two methods to obtain the device identity information:

- Active Directory—For Active Directory, the SRX Series device can extract the device information from the domain controller's event log and then connect to the Active Directory LDAP server to obtain the names of the groups that the device belongs to. The SRX Series device uses the information that it obtained from the event log to locate the device's information in the LDAP directory.
- Third-party NAC systems—These authentication systems use the POST service of the RESTful Web services API, called Web API. The SRX Series device implements the API and exposes to the authentication systems to allow them to send the device identity information to the SRX Series device.

The API has a formal XML structure and restrictions that the authentication source must adhere to in sending this information to the SRX Series device.

- Creating an entry for the device in the device identity authentication table.

After the SRX Series device obtains the device identity information, it creates an entry for it in the device identity authentication table. The device identity authentication table is separate from the Active Directory authentication table or any of the other

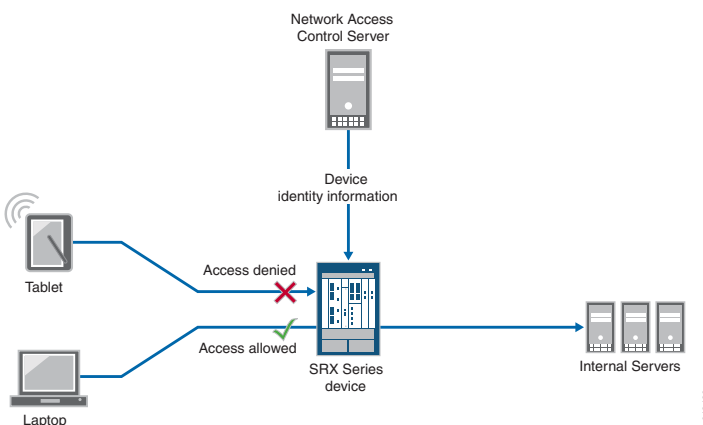
local authentication tables used for third party authentication sources. Too, unlike local user authentication tables which are particular to an authentication source or feature, the device identity authentication table holds device identity information for all authentication sources. However, only one authentication source, such as Active Directory, can be active at a time. The SRX Series device allows only authentication source to be used at a time to constrain the demand on the system to process information.



NOTE: The device identity authentication feature supports various types of authentication systems, such as Active Directory or a third-party authentication source. That is, the device identity authentication feature provides a generic solution that stores device identity information in the same table regardless of the authentication source.

Figure 17 on page 193 shows the communication between the SRX Series and a third-party NAC authentication source that is used for device identity authentication. The SRX Series device receives the device identity information from the NAC system and stores it in its local device identity authentication table. A security policy that specifies a device identity profile is applicable to one or more devices. If a device matches the device identity profile and other parts of the security policy, the security policy is applied to traffic issuing from that device.

Figure 17: Using a Third-Party Network Access Control (NAC) System for Device Identity Authentication



Related Documentation

- [Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)
- [Understanding How the SRX Series Obtains the Authenticated Device Identity Information From Windows Active Directory for Network Access Control on page 204](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity XML Solution for Third-Party NAC Authentication Systems on page 205](#)

- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Device Identity Feature in an Active Directory Environment on page 212](#)

Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature

The *device identity profile*, referred to in the CLI as the **end-user-profile**, is a key component of the integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature. It identifies the device and specifies its attributes. The device identity authentication feature allows you to control access to your network resources based on the identity of the device used and not the identity of the user of that device. This feature supports Microsoft Windows Active Directory and third-party network access control (NAC) systems as authentication sources.

This topic focuses on device identity and the device identity profile.

- [Device Identity on page 194](#)
- [Device Identity Profile Contents on page 194](#)
- [Predefined Device Identity Attributes on page 196](#)
- [Characteristics of Device Identity Profiles, and Attributes and Target Scaling on page 197](#)

Device Identity

The device identity essentially consists of the IP address of the device, its name, its domain, and the groups that the device belongs to.

For example, the following output shows information about the device, which is referred to from the device identity profile.

This example shows that the device identity authentication table contains entries for two devices. For each entry, it shows the IP address of the device, the name assigned to the device, and the groups that the device belongs to. Note that both devices belong to the group grp4.

Source IP	Device ID	Device-Groups
192.0.2.1	lab-computer1	grp1, grp3, grp4
198.51.100.1	dev-computer2	grp5, grp6, grp4

Device Identity Profile Contents

The device identity profile is a collection of attributes that are characteristics of a specific group of devices, or of a specific device, depending on the attributes configured in the profile. The Packet Forwarding Engine of the SRX Series device maps the IP address of a device to the device identity profile.

A device identity profile specifies the name of the device and information that includes the IP address of the device, groups to which the device belongs, and attributes of the device which are collectively referred to as the host attributes.



NOTE: The only attributes that you can configure using the CLI are the name of the device and the groups that it belongs to. The other attributes are configured using the third-party RESTful web services API, which is used by NAC systems or Active Directory LDAP.

When traffic from a device arrives at the SRX Series, the SRX Series obtains the IP address of the device from the first packet of the traffic and uses it to search the device identity authentication table for a matching device identity entry. Then it matches that device identity profile with a security policy whose **source-end-user-profile** field specifies the device identity profile name. If a match is found, the security policy is applied to traffic issuing from the device.

The same device identity profile can also apply to other devices sharing the same attributes. However, for the same security policy to apply, the device and its traffic must match all other fields in the security policy.

A device identity profile must contain the domain name. It might contain more than one set of attributes, but it must contain at least one. Consider the following two sets of attributes that belong to the profile called marketing-main-alice.

The profile contains the following set of attributes:

- alice-T430, as the name of the device.
- MARKETING and WEST-COAST, as the groups that the device belongs to.
- example.net as the name of the domain that it belongs to.

The profile also the following attributes that characterize the device:

- laptop, as the category of the device (device-category)
- Lenovo, as the device vendor (device-vendor)
- ThinkPad T430, as the type of device (device-type)

In cases such as the marketing-main-alice profile that includes the name given to the device, the profile applies exclusively to that device.

However, now suppose that another profile called marketing-west-coast-T430 was configured and that it contains the same attributes as the marketing-main-alice profile with one exception: the name given to the device in the marketing-main-alice profile was not included as an attribute in the marketing-west-coast-T430 profile. In this case, the attributes contained in the profile now make up a group profile. Application of the profile is widened to include all Lenovo ThinkPad T430 devices (which are laptops) that fit the rest of the characteristics, or attributes, defined in the profile.

Devices are covered by the profile if all other attributes match: devices that belong to either the MARKETING or WEST-COAST groups, which the marketing-west-coast-T430 profile specifies as its groups, or to both groups, match the profile.

As mentioned previously, a device identity profile can contain more than one group. A device can also belong to more than one group.

To illustrate further, note that the group device identity profile called marketing-west-coast-T430 also applies to the device called alice-T430 because that device belongs to both the MARKETING and the WEST-COAST groups and it matches all other attributes defined in the profile. Of course, the marketing-main-alice device identity profile still applies to the device called alice-T430. Therefore, the device called alice-T430 belongs to at least two groups, and it is covered by at least two device identity profiles.

Suppose that another profile called marketing-human-resources was defined with all of the attributes of the marketing-west-coast-T430 device identity profile but with these differences: the new device identity profile includes a group called HUMAN-RESOURCES and it does not include the group called WEST-COAST. However, it does contain the MARKETING group.

Because the device called alice-T430 belongs to the MARKETING group, which remains as a group in marketing-human-resources profile, the alice-T430 device also matches the marketing-human-resources device identity profile. Now the alice-T430 device matches three profiles. If the names of any of these profiles is specified in a security policy's source-end-user-profile and the alice-T430 device matches all of the other fields in the security profile, then that profile's action is applied to traffic from that device.

The previous examples of device identity profiles illustrate the following points:

- A profile can be defined to identify only one device or it can be defined to apply to many devices.
- A device identity profile can contain more than one group to which a given device belongs.
- A device can match more than one device identity profile by matching the characteristics, or attributes, including at least one of the groups, configured for the profile.

The flexible use of device identity profiles will become evident when you configure security policies that are designed to include the source-end-user-profile field, in particular when you want the policy's action to be applied to a number of devices.

Predefined Device Identity Attributes

The SRX Series device provides the predefined device identity policy attributes that are configured using the third-party RESTful web services API, which is used by NAC systems or Active Directory LDAP.

- device-identity
- device-category
- device-vendor
- device-type

- device-os
- device-os-version

You specify values for these attributes in a device identity profile.

Characteristics of Device Identity Profiles, and Attributes and Target Scaling

This section describes how the SRX Series treats device identity attributes and profiles. It also gives SRX Series device-independent and device-dependent scaling numbers for these entities.

The following attribute and profile characteristics apply to their use on all supported SRX Series devices.

- The maximum length of the following entities is 64 bytes: device identity profile names (referred to in the CLI as **end-user-profile**) attribute names, attribute-values.
- You can not overlap values in a range if you configure more than one digital value range for the same attribute.
- When the SRX Series device matches a device identity profile to a security policy, all of the attributes in the profile are taken into account. Here is how they are treated:
 - If the device identity profile contains multiple values for an attribute, the values of that attribute are treated individually. It is said that they are ORed.

For the security policy to be applied to the device, the following conditions must be met. The device must match:

- One of the values for each attribute that has multiple values.
- The rest of the attribute values specified in the device identity profile.
- The security policy field values.
- All individual attributes that have a single value are treated separately and considered together as a collection of values—that is, the AND operation is applied to them. The SRX Series device uses its standard policy-matching criteria in handling these attributes.

Table 14 on page 197 shows the platform-independent scaling values used in the device identity authentication feature.

Table 14: Platform-Independent Scaling

Item	Maximum
Values per attribute	20
Attributes per profile	100
Device identity profile specification per security policy (source-end-user-profile)	1

Table 15 on page 198 shows the platform-dependent scaling values used in the device identity authentication feature..

Table 15: Platform-Dependent Scaling

Platform	Maximum Number of Profiles	Maximum Total Number of Attribute Values
SRX5000 Series	4000	32000
SRX Series 1500	1000	8000
SRX Series 550M	500	4000
SRX Series 300 and SRX Series 320	100	1000
SRX Series 340 and SRX Series 345	100	1000
SRX Series 4100-4XE	1000	8000
SRX Series 4200-8XE	2000	16000
vSRX	500	4000

The following changes to device identity profiles and their use in security policies do not cause the SRX Series device to perform a session scan:

- Updates to a profile which is referenced in a security policy.
- Updates to the profile configuration.
- Updates to attributes that are made through the RESTful web services API, which is used by NAC systems, or Active Directory LDAP.

Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries

The SRX Series device contains a number of local authentication tables used for user authentication for various purposes. For example, the SRX Series device contains a local Active Directory authentication table for user authentication when Microsoft Windows Active Directory is used as the authentication source.

When you configure the SRX Series device to use the integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature for authentication based on the device identity and its attributes, the SRX Series device creates a new table called the device identity authentication table.

To gain a complete view of the device identity authentication feature, it helps to understand this table, its contents, and its relationship to other entities.

This topic covers the device identity authentication table and its device entries, and how the table contents change based on several factors.

- [The Device Identity Authentication Table on page 199](#)
- [Why the Device Identity Authentication Table Content Changes on page 199](#)
- [Security Policy Matching and Device Identity Profiles on page 202](#)

The Device Identity Authentication Table

Unlike other local authentication tables, the device identity authentication table does not contain information about a user but rather about the user's device. Moreover, unlike user authentication tables, it does not contain information about devices authenticated by one authentication source. Rather, it serves as a repository for device identity information for all devices regardless of their authentication source. For example, it might contain entries for devices authenticated by Active Directory or third-party NAC authentication sources.

A device identity authentication table entry contains the following parts:

- The IP address of the device.
- The name of the domain that the device belongs to.
- The groups with which the device is associated.
- The device identity.

The device identity is actually that of a device identity profile (referred to in the CLI as **end-user-profile**). This type of profile contains a group of attributes that characterize a specific individual device or a specific group of devices, for example, a specific type of laptop.

Why the Device Identity Authentication Table Content Changes

The device identity entries in the device identity authentication table are changed when certain events occur: when the user authentication entry with which the device identity entry is associated expires, when security policy changes occur in regard to referencing a group that the device belongs to, when the device is added to or removed from groups, or when groups that it belongs to are deleted and that change is made to the Windows Active Directory LDAP server.

- **When the User Identity Entry with Which a Device Identity Entry Is Associated Expires**

When the SRX Series device generates an entry for a device in the device identity authentication table, it associates that entry with a user identity entry in a local authentication table for the specific authentication source that authenticated the user of the device, such as Active Directory. That is, it ties the device identity entry in the device identity authentication table to the entry for the user of the device in the user authentication table.

When the user authentication entry with which the device identity entry is associated expires and is deleted from the user authentication table, the device identity entry is

deleted silently from the device identity authentication table. That is, no message is issued to inform you of this event.

- When Security Policy Changes Occur in Regard to Referencing a Group to Which the Device Belongs

To control access to network resources based on device identity, you create a device identity profile that you can refer to in a security policy. In addition to other attributes, a device identity profile contains the names of groups. When a device identity profile is referenced by a security policy, the groups that it contains are referred to as *interested groups*.

A group qualifies as an *interested group* if it is referenced by a security policy—that is, if it is included in a device identity profile which is specified in the **source-end-user-device** field of a security policy. If a group is included in a device identity profile that is not currently used in a security policy, it is not included in the list of interested groups. A group can move in and out of the list of groups referenced by security policies.

- When a Device Is Added to Or Removed From a Group or a Group Is Deleted

To keep the device identity entries in the local device identity authentication table current, the SRX Series monitors the Active Directory event log for changes. In addition to determining whether a device had logged out or in to the network, it can determine changes to any groups that the device might belong to. When changes occur to the groups that a device belongs to—that is, when a device is added to or removed from a group or the group is deleted—the SRX Series device modifies the contents of the affected device entries in its own device identity authentication table to reflect the changes made in the Microsoft Windows Active Directory LDAP server.

The SRX Series device identity authentication table is updated according to changes to groups with which the device is associated in the LDAP server, as illustrated in [Table 16 on page 200](#).

Table 16: Group Changes for Devices in the Active Directory LDAP and the SRX Series Response

Changes Made to LDAP	SRX Series LDAP Message and UserID Daemon Action
Group information for a device has changed. The device has been added to or removed from a group, or a group that the device belongs to has been deleted.	<p>The Active Directory LDAP module sends notification of the change to the SRX Series UserID daemon, directing it to revise information in its local device identity authentication table.</p> <p>The SRX Series device processes these messages every 2 minutes.</p>
The device entry in LDAP is deleted.	<p>The Active Directory LDAP module sends notification of the change to the UserID daemon, directing it to revise information in its local device identity authentication table.</p> <p>The SRX Series device processes these messages every 2 minutes.</p>

The SRX Series UserID daemon is informed of the changes. Whether or not a group that a device belongs to is specified in a security policy has bearing on what information is stored in device identity authentication table entries for the affected device.

[Table 17 on page 201](#) shows the activity that occurs when a group is added to or deleted from the Active Directory LDAP.

Table 17: Changes to Device Identity Entries Based on Security Policy Specifications

Device Identity Profile Changes	Device-Group Mapping Behavior	SRX Series UserID Daemon Response
A new group that was added to the Active Directory LDAP is added to the SRX Series device identity profile.	The SRX Series gets the list of devices that belong to the new group and its subgroups from the Active Directory LDAP server. It adds the list to its local LDAP directory.	<p>The UserID daemon determines whether the device identity authentication table includes entries for the set of affected devices. If so, it updates the group information for these entries.</p> <p>For example, here is the entry for device1 before it was updated to include the new group and after the group was added:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • device1, g1 • device1, g1, g2
A group is deleted from the Active Directory LDAP. The SRX Series deletes the group from the device identity profile.	<p>The SRX Series gets the list of devices that belong to the deleted group from its local LDAP database.</p> <p>It deletes the device-group mapping from the local LDAP directory.</p>	<p>The UserID daemon checks the device identity authentication table for entries that belong to the group. It removes the group from affected entries.</p> <p>For example, here is the entry for device1 before the group was deleted and after the group was deleted:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • device1, g1, g2 • device1, g1

Table 18 on page 201 elaborates on the contents of device authentication entries for several devices which are affected by deletion of a group.

Table 18: Changes to Device Identity Authentication Table Resulting From LDAP and Security Policy Changes

Changes to Device identity Authentication Table Entries		
IP Address	Device Information	Group
Original Entries		
192.0.2.10	device1	group1, group2
192.0.2.11	device2	group3, group4
192.0.2.12	device3	group2
Same Entries After group2 Is Deleted		
192.0.2.10	device1	group1
192.0.2.11	device2	group3, group4
192.0.2.12	device3	<i>This entry no longer contains groups.</i>

Security Policy Matching and Device Identity Profiles

Security Policy Matching and Device Identity Profiles

The SRX Series device follows the standard rules for matching traffic against security policies. The following behavior pertains to the use of a device identity profile in a security policy for determining a match:

- Use of a device identity profile in a security policy is optional.
 - If no device identity profile is specified in the `source-end-user-profile` field, **any** profile is assumed.
 - You cannot use the keyword **any** in the `source-end-user-profile` field of a security policy.

If you use the `source-end-user-profile` field in a security policy, you must reference a specific profile. The device from which the access attempt is issued must match the profile's attributes.

- Only one device identity profile can be specified in a single security policy.
- A security policy rematch is triggered when the `source-end-user-profile` field value of the security policy is changed. No rematch is triggered when an attribute value of a profile is changed.

Security Policy Matching and Device Identity Profiles

The SRX Series device follows the standard rules for matching traffic against security policies. The following behavior pertains to the use of a device identity profile in a security policy for determining a match:

- Use of a device identity profile in a security policy is optional.
 - If no device identity profile is specified in the `source-end-user-profile` field, **any** profile is assumed.
 - You cannot use the keyword **any** in the `source-end-user-profile` field of a security policy.

If you use the `source-end-user-profile` field in a security policy, you must reference a specific profile. The device from which the access attempt is issued must match the profile's attributes.

- Only one device identity profile can be specified in a single security policy.
- A security policy rematch is triggered when the `source-end-user-profile` field value of the security policy is changed. No rematch is triggered when an attribute value of a profile is changed.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194](#)

- [Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Device Identity Feature in an Active Directory Environment on page 212](#)

Understanding Security Policy Matching with Device Identity Profiles

pre-defined attributes:

- device-category
- device-vendor
- device-type
- device-os
- device-os-version

Policy Match Criteria

- Use of a device identity profile in a security policy is optional.

If no device identity profile is specified, “any” profile is assumed.

You can not use the keyword “any” in the source-end-user-profile field of a security policy. It is a reserved keyword.

- Only one device identity policy can be specified in a single security policy.
- A security policy rematch is triggered when the source-end-user-profile field value of a security policy is changed. No rematch is triggered when an attribute value of a profile is changed.

Understanding How the SRX Series Obtains the Authenticated Device Identity Information From Windows Active Directory for Network Access Control

You can use the integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature to control access to your network resources based on the identity and attributes of the device used rather than the user identity. Information about a device is stored in the device identity authentication table. You can specify the name of a device identity profile that contains the device attributes in the source-end-user-profile field of a security policy. If all conditions are met, the security policy's actions are applied to traffic issuing from that device.

For you to be able to use device identity profiles in security policies, the SRX Series device must obtain the device identity information for authenticated devices. The SRX Series device creates the device identity authentication table to use to store device identity entries. It searches the table for a device match when traffic arrives from a device. This topic considers the process followed when Active Directory is used as the authentication source.

An Active Directory domain controller authenticates users when they log in to the domain, and it writes a record of that event to the Windows event log. It also writes a record to the event log when a user logs out of the domain. The domain controller event log provides the SRX Series device with information about authenticated devices that are currently active in the domain and when those devices are logged out from it.

The SRX Series UserID daemon takes the following actions:

1. It reads the Active Directory domain controller event logs to obtain the IP addresses of devices logged into the domain and authenticated by Windows.

The UserID daemon in the SRX Series Routing Engine implements a Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) client with Microsoft Distributed COM/Microsoft RPC stacks and an authentication mechanism to communicate with a Windows Active Directory domain controller in an Active Directory domain. Using event log information retrieved from the Active Directory controller, the process obtains the IP addresses of active Active Directory devices. The process monitors Active Directory event log changes using the same WMI DCOM interface to adjust its device identity information in its local authentication table to reflect any changes made to the Active Directory server.

2. It uses the device IP addresses that it obtained from the event log to obtain information about the groups that a device belongs to. To obtain this group information, the SRX Series device connects to the LDAP service in the Active Directory controller using the LDAP protocol for this purpose.

As a result of this process, the SRX Series is able to generate entries for the devices in the device identity authentication table. After it generates an entry for a device in the device identity authentication table, the SRX Series device associates that entry with the appropriate user entry in its local Active Directory authentication table. You can then reference the device identity profile entries in security policies to control access to resources.

Behavior and Constraints

- The SRX Series process of reading the event log consumes domain controller CPU resources which may lead to high CPU usage in the domain controller. For this reason, the Active Directory domain controller should have a high-performance configuration of at least 4 cores and 8 gigabytes of memory.
- The domain controller event log records a maximum length of 16 bytes of the device ID, including a null terminator. Therefore, the maximum length of the device ID that the SRX Series device obtains from the domain controller is 15 bytes.
- If the domain controller clears the event log or if the data written to the event log is missing or delayed, the device identity mapping information might be inaccurate. If the SRX Series device is unable to read the event log or if it contains null data, the SRX Series reports an error condition in its own log.
- If the device identity information table reaches capacity, it cannot add new device identity entries. In that case, traffic from the device is dropped.

Related Documentation

- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Device Identity Feature in an Active Directory Environment on page 212](#)
- [Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)

Understanding the Device Identity XML Solution for Third-Party NAC Authentication Systems

The SRX Series integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature enables you to control access to network resources based on the identity of a device. You can use one of the following device identity solutions:

- Microsoft Active Directory as the authentication source.

If your environment is set up to use Microsoft Active Directory, the SRX Series device obtains the device IP address and groups from the Active Directory domain controller and LDAP service.

- Network access control (NAC) authentication system.

If your network environment is configured for a NAC solution and you decide to take this approach, the NAC system sends the device identity information to the SRX Series device. The RESTful Web services API enables you to send the device information to the SRX Series device in a formal XML structure.



WARNING: If you take this approach, you must verify that your NAC solution works with the SRX Series device.

- [The SRX Series XML Web API Implementation on page 206](#)
- [Ensuring the Integrity of Data Sent from the NAC Service to the SRX Series on page 206](#)
- [Data Size Restrictions and Other Constraints on page 206](#)

The SRX Series XML Web API Implementation

The RESTful Web services API enables you to send the device identity information to the SRX Series device in a formal XML structure. It allows your NAC solution to integrate with the SRX Series and efficiently send the device information to it. You must adhere to the formal structure and restrictions in sending information to the SRX Series using the API.

Ensuring the Integrity of Data Sent from the NAC Service to the SRX Series

The following requirements ensure that the data sent from the NAC service is not compromised:

- The API implementation is restricted to processing only HTTP/HTTPS POST requests. Any other type of request that it receives generates an error message.
- The API daemon analyzes and processes HTTP/HTTPS requests from only the following dedicated URL:

`/api/userfw/v1/post-entry`

- The HTTP/HTTPS content that your NAC solution posts to the SRX Series device must be consistently formatted correctly. The correct XML format indicates a lack of compromise, and it ensures that user identity information is not lost.

Data Size Restrictions and Other Constraints

The following data size restrictions and limitations apply to the data posted to the SRX Series device:

- The NAC authentication system must control the size of the data that it posts. Otherwise, the Web API daemon is unable to process it. The Web API daemon can process a maximum of 2 megabytes of data.
- The following limitations apply to XML data for role and device posture information. The Web API daemon discards XML data sent to it that exceeds these amounts (that is, the overflow data):
 - The SRX Series device can process a maximum of 209 roles.
 - The SRX Series device supports only one type of posture with six possible posture tokens, or values. Identity information for an individual user can have only one posture token.

Example: Configuring a Device Identity Profile to Control Network Access

This example shows how to configure the integrated user firewall device identity feature to control access to network resources based on the identity of the device and not its user. It covers how to configure a security policy that references it, including the zones and their interfaces that are used in the policy.

- [Requirements on page 207](#)
- [Overview on page 207](#)
- [Configuration on page 208](#)
- [Verification on page 211](#)
- [Troubleshooting on page 212](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- An SRX Series XXX??? device running Junos SRX 15.1X49-D70.
- Windows Active Directory with a Domain Controller and LDAP Server

The Active Directory domain controller has a high performance configuration of four multiple cores and 8 gigabytes of memory.



NOTE: The SRX Series obtains the IP address of a device by reading the domain controller event log. The process that reads the event log consumes domain controller CPU resources which may lead to high CPU usage. For this reason, the Active Directory domain controller should have a high performance configuration of at least four multiple cores and 8 gigabytes of memory.

- A server on the internal corporate network

Before you begin to configure this feature:

- Verify the version of Junos OS software that is installed on your SRX Series device. The integrated user firewall device identity feature is supported initially in Junos SRX 15.1X49-D70.
- Ensure that the SRX Series device is configured for access to an Active Directory domain controller. Ensure that it is configured for access to the Active Directory LDAP server that contains the groups that the devices belong to. For details, see TOPICS ON THIS.

Overview

Starting with Junos 15.1X49-D70, the SRX Series provides support for controlling access to network resources based on the identity of a device. You can configure a device identity profile that specifies attributes, or characteristics, of a device and refer to the profile from

a security policy. The security policy's action is applied to traffic issuing from any device that matches the profile attributes, in addition to the security policy parameters.



NOTE: The device identity profile is also referred to as the end-user-profile. The security policy parameter that allows you to specify its name is called *source-end-user-profile*.

This example supports Active Directory as the authentication source. The SRX Series device obtains the device identity information—its IP address—by reading the Active Directory domain controller's event log. The SRX Series device uses the device IP address to obtain from the Active Directory LDAP server the groups that the device belongs to.

This example shows how to configure a device identity profile, also referred to as an end-user-profile, and the security policy that refers to the profile. It also shows how to configure the zones to be used in the security policy and their interfaces.

Topology

Configuration

To configure the device identity feature, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring Zones and Their Interfaces on page 209](#)
- [Results on page 210](#)

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 family inet address 192.0.2.18/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 family inet address 192.0.2.14/24
set security zones security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
set security zones security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 host-inbound-traffic
  protocols all
set security zones security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
set security zones security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 host-inbound-traffic
  protocols all
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
  marketing-west-coast domain-name ad-domain1
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
  marketing-west-coast attribute location string mountain-view
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
  marketing-west-coast attribute device-category string laptop
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
  marketing-west-coast attribute device-vendor string Lenovo
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
  marketing-west-coast attribute device-type string ThinkPad
```

```

set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os string Windows
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os-version string 10.1
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match source-address any destination-address any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match set application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match source-end-user-profile marketing-west-coast
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access then permit

```

Configuring Zones and Their Interfaces

Step-by-Step Procedure

1. Configure interfaces, and their IP addresses, to be used for the marketing-zone and the servers-zone.

[edit interfaces]
user@host# set ge-0/0/3.1 family inet address 192.0.2.18/24
user@host# set ge-0/0/3.2 family inet address 192.0.2.14/24
2. Configure the marketing-zone and the servers-zone and assign interfaces to them.

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
3. Configure attributes for the device identity profile.

[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast domain-name ad-domain1
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute location string mountain-view
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-category string laptop
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-vendor string Lenovo
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-type string ThinkPad
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os string Windows
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os-version string 10.1
4. Configure a security policy that references the device identity profile.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match source-address any destination-address any
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match set application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone
policy mark-server-access match source-end-user-profile marketing-west-coast
user@host# set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone
policy mark-server-access application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone
policy mark-server-access then permit
```

Results

show interfaces

```
ge-0/0/3 {
  unit 1 {
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.18/24;
    }
  }
  unit 2 {
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.14/24;
    }
  }
}
```

show security zones

```
security-zone marketing-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.1 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-zone servers-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.2 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
  }  
}
```

show services user-identification device-information end-user-profile

```
domain-name ad-domain1  
attribute location {  
  string mountain-view;  
}  
attribute device-identity {  
  string marketing-clas;  
}  
attribute device-category {  
  string laptop;  
}  
attribute device-vendor {  
  string Lenovo;  
}  
attribute device-type {  
  string ThinkPad;  
}  
attribute device-os {  
  string Windows;  
}  
attribute device-os-version {  
  string 10.1;  
}
```

show security policies

```
from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone {  
  policy mark-server-access {  
    match {  
      source-address any;  
      destination-address any;  
      application any;  
      source-end-user-profile {  
        marketing-west-coast;  
      }  
    }  
    then {  
      permit;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

Verification

- [Verifying \[item\] on page 211](#)

[Verifying \[item\]](#)

Purpose

Action show services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name marketing-west-coast

```
domain-name ad-domain1;
attribute location {
    string mountain-view;
}
attribute device-category {
    string laptop;
}
attribute device-vendor {
    string [ Lenovo 10.0 ];
}
attribute device-type {
    string ThinkPad;
}
attribute device-os {
    string Windows;
}
```

Meaning

Troubleshooting

To troubleshoot [item], perform these tasks:

- [Troubleshooting \[item\] on page 212](#)

[Troubleshooting \[item\]](#)

Problem

Solution

Related Documentation

-

Example: Configuring the SRX Series Device Identity Feature in an Active Directory Environment

This example shows how to configure the integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature to control access to network resources based on the identity of an authenticated device, not its user. This example uses Microsoft Active Directory as the authentication source. It covers how to configure a device identity profile that characterizes a device, or set of devices, and how to reference that profile in a security policy. If a device matches the device identity profile and the security policy parameters, the security policy's action is applied to traffic issuing from that device.

For various reasons, you might want to use the identity, or attributes, of a device for resource access control. For example, you might not know the identity of the user. You might allow your users to use their own devices (BYOD) to access network resources and you do not want to use a captive portal to authenticate them. Also some companies

might have older switches that do not support 802.1, or they might not have a network access control (NAC) system. The device identity authentication feature was designed to offer a solution to these and other similar situations by enabling you to control network access based on attributes of the user's device. You can control access for a group of devices that fit the specification or an individual device.

- [Requirements on page 213](#)
- [Overview on page 213](#)
- [Configuration on page 216](#)
- [Verification on page 221](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- An SRX Series Services Gateway device running Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
- Microsoft Active Directory with a domain controller and the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server

The Active Directory domain controller has a high-performance configuration of 4 cores and 8 gigabytes of memory.



NOTE: The SRX Series obtains the IP address of a device by reading the domain controller event log. The process that reads the event log consumes domain controller CPU resources, which might lead to high CPU usage. For this reason, the Active Directory domain controller should have a high-performance configuration of at least 4 cores and 8 gigabytes of memory.

- A server on the internal corporate network.

Overview

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, the SRX Series provides support for controlling access to network resources based on the identity of a device authenticated by Active Directory or a third-party network access control (NAC) system. This example uses Active Directory as the authentication source.



NOTE: You must configure the authentication source for this feature to work.

This example covers the following configuration parts:

- Zones and their interfaces

You must configure the zones to which the source and destination entities specified in the security policy belong. If you do not configure them, the security policy that references the device identity profile will be invalid.

- A device identity profile

You configure the device identity profile apart from the security policy; you refer to it from a security policy. A device identity profile specifies device attributes, or characteristics, that can be matched by one or more devices.



NOTE: The device identity profile is referred to as **end-user-profile** in the CLI.

- A security policy

You configure a security policy whose action is applied to traffic issuing from any device that matches the device identity profile attributes and the rest of the security policy's parameters.



NOTE: You specify the name of the device identity profile in the security policy's **source-end-user-profile** field.

- Authentication source

You configure the authentication source to be used to authenticate the device. This example uses Active Directory as the device identity authentication source.

If Active Directory is the authentication source, the SRX Series obtains identity information for an authenticated device by reading the Active Directory domain's event log. The SRX Series then queries the LDAP interface of Active Directory to identify the groups that the device belongs to, using the device's IP address for the query.

For this purpose, the SRX Series implements a Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) client with Microsoft Distributed COM/Microsoft RPC stacks and an authentication mechanism to communicate with the Windows Active Directory controller in the Active Directory domain. It is the SRX Series wmic daemon that extracts device information from the event log of the Active Directory domain.

The wmic daemon also monitors the Active Directory event log for changes by using the same WMI DCOM interface. When changes occur, the SRX Series adjusts its local device identity authentication table to reflect those changes.

Topology

In this example, users who belong to the marketing-zone zone want to access resources on the internal corporate servers. Access control is based on the identity of the device. Therefore, it is the device that is either granted or denied access to the server resources. Access is not controlled based on user identification.

Two SRX Series zones are established: one that includes the network devices (marketing-zone) and one that includes the internal servers (servers-zone). The SRX Series device interface ge-0/0/3.1, whose IP address is 192.0.2.18/24, is assigned to the marketing-zone zone. The SRX Series device interface ge-0/0/3.2, whose IP address is 192.0.2.14/24, is assigned to the servers-zone zone.

This examples covers the following activity:

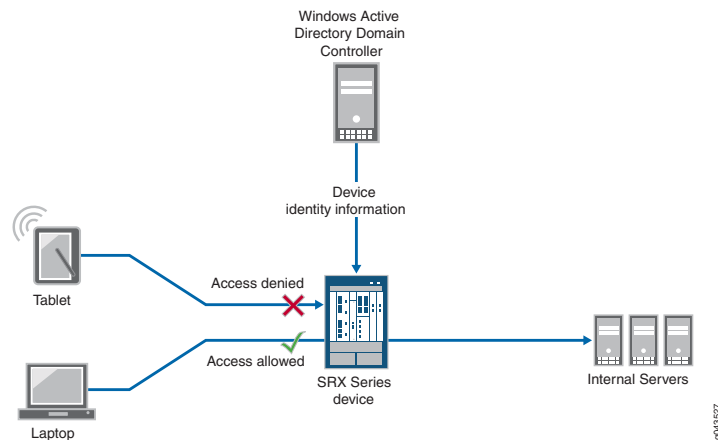
1. The SRX Series device connects to the Active Directory domain controller using the WMI DCOM interface to obtain information about devices authenticated by Active Directory.

When a user logs in to the network and is authenticated, information about the user's device is written to the event log.
2. The SRX Series extracts the device information from the event log of the Active Directory domain controller.
3. The SRX Series uses the extracted information to obtain a list of the groups that the device belongs to from the Active Directory LDAP server.
4. The SRX Series creates a local device identity authentication table and stores the device identity information that it obtained from the domain controller and LDAP server in the table.
5. When traffic from a device arrives at the SRX Series device, the SRX Series checks the device identity authentication table for a matching entry for the device that issued the traffic.
6. If the SRX Series finds a matching entry for the device that is requesting access, it checks the security policy table for a security policy whose **source-end-user-profile** field specifies a device identity profile with attributes that match those of the device that is requesting access.
7. The matching security policy is applied to traffic issuing from the device.

This example is configured for the laptop device whose security policy allows it access to the internal corporate server.

Figure 18 on page 216 show the topology for this example.

Figure 18: Topology for the Device Identity Feature with Active Directory as the Authentication Source



Configuration

To configure the device identity feature in an Active Directory environment, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature in an Active Directory Environment on page 217](#)
- [Results on page 219](#)

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands to a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the [edit] hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 family inet address 192.0.2.18/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 family inet address 192.0.2.14/24
set security zones security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
set security zones security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all
set security zones security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
set security zones security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all
set services user-identification device-information authentication-source active-directory
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast domain-name example.net
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-category string laptop
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-vendor string Lenovo
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-type string ThinkPad
set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os string Windows
```

```

set services user-identification device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os-version string 10.1
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match source-address any destination-address any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match source-end-user-profile marketing-west-coast
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access then permit
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net user1
password pswd
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
domain-controller dc-example address 203.0.113.0
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
ip-user-mapping discovery-method wmi event-log-scanning-interval 30
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
ip-user-mapping discovery-method wmi initial-event-log-timespan 1
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
user-group-mapping ldap authentication-algorithm simple
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
user-group-mapping ldap address 198.51.100.9 port 389
set services user-identification active-directory-access domain example.net
user-group-mapping ldap base dc=example, dc=net
set services user-identification active-directory-access authentication-entry-timeout
100
set services user-identification active-directory-access wmi-timeout 60

```

Configuring the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature in an Active Directory Environment

Step-by-Step Procedure

This procedure includes the configuration statements required to configure the SRX Series device to support the device identity authentication feature in an Active Directory environment.

1. Configure the interfaces to be used for the marketing-zone and the servers-zone.


```

[edit interfaces]
user@host# set ge-0/0/3.1 family inet address 192.0.2.18/24
user@host# set ge-0/0/3.2 family inet address 192.0.2.14/24

```
2. Configure the marketing-zone and the servers-zone and assign interfaces to them.


```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
host-inbound-traffic protocols all

```

3. Configure the authentication source to specify Microsoft Active Directory. You must specify the authentication source for the device identity feature to work. This is a required value.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set device-information authentication-source active-directory
```

4. Configure attributes for the device identity profile, which is also referred to as **end-user-profile**.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast domain-name example.net
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-category string laptop
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-vendor string Lenovo
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-type string ThinkPad
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os string Windows
user@host# set device-information end-user-profile profile-name
marketing-west-coast attribute device-os-version string 10.1
```

5. Configure a security policy, called **mark-server-access**, that references the device identity profile called **marketing-west-coast**. The security policy allows any device that belongs to the **marketing-zone** zone (and that matches the device identity profile's attributes) access to the target server's resources.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
mark-server-access match source-address any destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone
policy mark-server-access match source-end-user-profile marketing-west-coast
user@host# set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone
policy mark-server-access match application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone
policy mark-server-access then permit
```

6. Configure the SRX Series device to communicate with Active Directory and to use the LDAP service.

To get the group information necessary to implement the device identity authentication feature, the SRX Series device uses the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). The SRX Series acts as an LDAP client communicating with an LDAP server. Typically, the Active Directory domain controller acts as the LDAP server. The LDAP module in the SRX Series, by default, queries the Active Directory in the domain controller.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net user user1 password
pswd
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net domain-controller
dc-example address 203.0.113.0
```

```

user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net ip-user-mapping
discovery-method wmi event-log-scanning-interval 30
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net ip-user-mapping
discovery-method wmi initial-event-log-timespan 1
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net user-group-mapping
ldap address 198.51.100.9 port 389
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net user-group-mapping
ldap base dc=example,dc=net
user@host# set active-directory-access domain example.net user-group-mapping
ldap authentication-algorithm simple
user@host# set active-directory-access authentication-entry-timeout 100
user@host# set active-directory-access wmi-timeout 60

```

Results

show interfaces

```

ge-0/0/3 {
  unit 1 {
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.18/24;
    }
  }
  unit 2 {
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.14/24;
    }
  }
}

```

show security zones

```

security-zone marketing-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.1 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-zone servers-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.2 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

```
    }  
  }  
}  
}
```

show services user-identification device-information end-user-profile

```
domain-name example.net  
attribute device-category {  
  string laptop;  
}  
attribute device-vendor {  
  string Lenovo;  
}  
attribute device-type {  
  string ThinkPad;  
}  
attribute device-os {  
  string Windows;  
}  
attribute device-os-version {  
  string 10.1;  
}
```

show services user-identification device-information authentication-source

```
active-directory;
```

show security policies

```
from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone {  
  policy mark-server-access {  
    match {  
      source-address any;  
      destination-address any;  
      application any;  
      source-end-user-profile {  
        marketing-west-coast;  
      }  
    }  
    then {  
      permit;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

show services user-identification active-directory-access

```
domain example-net {  
  user {  
    user1;  
    password $ABC123; ## SECRET-DATA  
  }  
  ip-user-mapping {  
    discovery-method {  
      wmi {  
        event-log-scanning-interval 30;  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}
```



```

        initial-event-log-timespan 1;
    }
}
user-group-mapping {
    ldap {
        base dc=example,DC=net;
        address 198.51.100.9 {
            port 389;
        }
    }
}
}

```

show services user-identification active-directory-access domain example-net

```

user {
    user1;
    password $ABC123 ## SECRET-DATA
}
domain-controller dc-example {
    address 203.0.113.0;
}

```

Verification

- [Verifying the Device Identity Authentication Table Contents on page 221](#)
- [Verify the Domain Configuration on the SRX Series Device on page 222](#)

Verifying the Device Identity Authentication Table Contents

Purpose Verifying that the device identity authentication table contains the expected entries and their groups.

Action In this case, the device identity authentication table contains three entries. The following command displays extensive information for all three entries.

Enter **show services user-identification device-information table all extensive** to display the table's contents.

Sample Output

```

Domain: example.net
Total entries: 3
  Source IP: 192.0.2.19
    Device ID: example-dev1
    Device-Groups: device_group1, device_group2, device_group3, device_group4,
device_group5
    device-category: laptop
    device-vendor: Lenovo
    device-type: ThinkPad
    device-os: Windows
    device-os-version: 10.1
    Location1: us1
    Referred by: mark-server-access

```

```
Source IP: 192.0.2.22
Device ID: example-dev2
Device-Groups: device_group06, device_group7, device_group8, device_group9,
device_group10
device-category: laptop
device-vendor: Lenovo
device-type: ThinkPad
device-os: Windows
device-os-version: 10.1
Location1: us1
Referred by: mark-server-access
Source IP: 192.0.2.19
Device ID: example-dev3
Device-Groups: device_group1, device_group2, device_group3, device_group4,
device_group5
device-category: Laptop
device-vendor: Lenovo
device-type: Thinkpad-t430
device-os: Windows
device-os-version: 7.1
Location1: us1
Referred by: mark-server-access
```

Meaning The table should contain entries with information for all authenticated devices and the groups that they belong to.

Verify the Domain Configuration on the SRX Series Device

Purpose Ensure that the SRX Series device is configured with the correct domain information.

Action Enter **show services user-identification active-directory-access domain example-net**.

```
user {
  user1;
  password $ABC123 ; ## SECRET-DATA
}
domain-controller dc-example {
  address 203.0.113.0;
}
```

Meaning The output should reflect the correct information configured for the domain.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191](#)

PART 5

Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement

- [Understanding Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement on page 225](#)
- [Configuring Communication with ClearPass Using the WebAPI Feature on page 229](#)
- [Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement on page 243](#)
- [Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 271](#)
- [Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Threat and Attack Function on page 285](#)

CHAPTER 20

Understanding Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement

- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)

Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature

This topic introduces the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature in which the SRX Series device and Aruba ClearPass collaborate to protect your network resources by enforcing security at the user identity level and controlling user access to the Internet. The ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) can authenticate users across wired, wireless, and VPN infrastructures. The integrated ClearPass feature allows the CPPM and the SRX Series device to collaborate in multiple environments in which they are deployed together.

- [Why You Need to Protect Your Environment With the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
- [How the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature Can Protect Your Network Environment on page 226](#)

Why You Need to Protect Your Environment With the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature

The proliferation of mobile devices and cloud services and securing them has become a fundamental strategic part of enterprise cybersecurity. Use of company smartphones poses one of the biggest IT security risks to businesses. The integrated ClearPass feature protects against malicious intrusions introduced through use of mobile devices and multiple concurrently connected devices.

In a work environment that supports mobile devices, knowing the identity of the user whose device is associated with an attack or threat provides IT administrators with improved advantage in identifying the source of the attack and stemming future potential attacks that follow the same strategy.

Attackers can gain access to nearby company-owned mobile devices and install malware on them that they can then use to capture data at any time. Whether reconnaissance or malicious, attacks against network resources are commonplace in today's computing

environment. Attackers can launch information-gathering ventures, stop business activity, and steal sensitive corporate data.

Today's network environments are more open to attacks of various kinds because they support *anywhere, anytime, any device* access, to a greater or lesser degree, and they allow a user to use multiple concurrently network-connected devices.

The SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature can protect you against attacks and intrusions by allowing you to configure security policies that identify users by their usernames or by the groups that they belong to. It also identifies threats and attacks perpetrated against your network environment and provides this information to the CPPM. As administrator of the CPPM, you can better align your security enforcement to protect against possible future attacks of the same kind. If a user is logged in to the network with more than one device, you can keep track of their activity based on their identity, not only by their devices, and you can more easily control their network access and any egregious activity on their behalf, whether intended or not.

How the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature Can Protect Your Network Environment

The SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature gives you granular control at the user level, not the device's IP address, over user access to protected resources and the Internet. As administrator of the SRX Series device, you can now specify in the source-identity parameter of *identity-aware* security policies a username or a role (group) name that the CPPM posts to the SRX Series device. You are no longer restricted to relying solely on the IP address of the device as a means of identifying the user. Honing in on the user of the device, rather than only the device, enhances your control over security enforcement.

In addition to providing the SRX Series device with authenticated user information, the CPPM can map a device type to a role and assign users to that role. It can then send that role mapping to the SRX Series device. This capability allows you to control through security policies a user's access to resources when they are using a *specific type of device*.

For example, suppose that the administrator of the CPPM configured a role called marketing-company-device and mapped to that role both company devices and members of the Marketing department. As administrator of the SRX Series device, you could specify that role in a security policy as if it were a group. The security policy would then apply to all users mapped to the role, inherently controlling their network activity when they use that type of device type.

The SRX Series integrated ClearPass feature delivers the protection of the SCREENS, IDP and UTM features to defend your network against a wide range of attack strategies. In addition to protecting the company's network resources, the SRX Series device can make available to the CPPM log records generated by these protective security features in response to attack or attack threats. Knowing about threats and specific attacks that have already occurred can help IT departments to identify noncompliant systems and exposed areas of the network. With this information, they can harden their security by enforcing device compliance and strengthening protection of their resources.

SRX Series security policies protect the company's resources and enforce access control at a fine-grain level, taking advantage of the user authentication and identity information sent to the device from the CPPM. The CPPM acts as the authentication source. It uses its own internal RADIUS server to authenticate users. It can also rely on an external authentication source to perform the authentication for it, such as an external RADIUS server or Active Directory.

The CPPM authentication is triggered by requests from NAS devices such as switches and access controllers. The CPPM uses the XML portion of the RESTful Web services that the SRX Series device exposes to it to send in POST request messages to the SRX Series device authenticated user identity and device posture information.

The SRX Series device and Aruba ClearPass simplify the complex and complicated security tasks required to safeguard company resources and enforce Internet access policy for mobile devices. This security is essential in a network environment that supports the mobile experience and that gives the user latitude to use a wide range of devices, including their own systems, smartphones, and tablets.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass on page 232](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass on page 232](#)
- [Example: Enforcing SRX Series Security Policies Using Aruba ClearPass as the Authentication Source on page 252](#)

CHAPTER 21

Configuring Communication with ClearPass Using the WebAPI Feature

- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass on page 232](#)

Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API

The integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature enables the SRX Series device and Aruba ClearPass to collaborate in protecting your company's resources by enforcing security at the user identity level in environments in which they are deployed together. The ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) can authenticate users across wired, wireless, and VPN infrastructures and post that information to the SRX Series device, which, in turn, uses it to authenticate users requesting access to your protected resources and to the internet. The SRX Series device can provide the CPPM with threat and attack logs associated users' devices so that you can better harden your security at the ClearPass end.

- [Web API on page 229](#)
- [ClearPass Authentication Table on page 230](#)
- [Using HTTPS or HTTP for the Connection Protocol Between ClearPass and the SRX Series Device on page 230](#)
- [Ensuring the Integrity of Data Sent from ClearPass to the SRX Series Device on page 231](#)
- [Data Size Restrictions and Other Constraints on page 231](#)
- [Posture States and the Posture Group on page 231](#)

Web API

The SRX Series device exposes to the CPPM its Web API daemon (webapi) interface that enables the CPPM to integrate with it and efficiently send authenticated user identity information to the SRX Series device. The SRX Series Web API daemon acts as an HTTP server in that it implements part of the RESTful Web services that supports concurrent HTTP and HTTPS requests. In this relationship, the CPPM is the client. The Web API

daemon is restricted to processing only HTTP/HTTPS requests. Any other type of request it receives generates an error message.



WARNING: If you are deploying the integrated ClearPass Web API function and Web management at the same time, you must ensure that they use different HTTP or HTTPS service ports.

However, for security considerations, we recommend that you use HTTPS instead of HTTP. HTTP is supported primarily for debugging purposes.

The Web API daemon runs on the master Routing Engine in a chassis cluster environment. After an Chassis Cluster switchover, the daemon will start automatically on the new master Routing Engine. It has no effect on the Packet Forwarding Engine.

ClearPass Authentication Table

After the SRX Series device receives information posted to it from the CPPM, the SRX Series device extracts the user authentication and identity information, analyzes it, and distributes it to the appropriate processes for handling. The SRX Series device creates a ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine side to hold this user information. When the SRX Series device receives the information sent to it from ClearPass, the SRX Series device generates entries in the ClearPass authentication table for the authenticated users. When the SRX Series device receives an access request from a user, it can check its ClearPass authentication table to verify that the user is authenticated, and then apply the security policy that matches the traffic from the user.

Using HTTPS or HTTP for the Connection Protocol Between ClearPass and the SRX Series Device

When you configure the SRX Series Web API, you specify a certificate key if you are using HTTPS as the connection protocol. To ensure security, the HTTPS default certificate key size is 2048 bytes. If you do not specify a certificate size, the default size is assumed. There are three methods that you can use to specify a certificate:

- Default certificate
- Certificate generated by PKI
- Custom certificate and certificate key

The SRX Series Web API supports only the Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM) format for the certificate and certificate key configuration.

If you enable the Web API on the default ports—HTTP (8080) or HTTPS (8443)—you must enable host inbound traffic on the ports. If you enable it on any other TCP port, you must enable host inbound traffic specifying the parameter **any-service**. For example:

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services  
any-service
```

Ensuring the Integrity of Data Sent from ClearPass to the SRX Series Device

The following requirements ensure that the data sent from the CPPM is not compromised:

- The Web API implementation is restricted to processing only HTTP/HTTPS POST requests. Any other type of request that it receives generates an error message.
- The Web API daemon analyzes and processes HTTP/HTTPS requests from only the following dedicated URL:

`/api/userfw/v1/post-entry`

- The HTTP/HTTPS content that the CPPM posts to the SRX Series device must be consistently formatted correctly. The correct XML format indicates a lack of compromise, and it ensures that user identity information is not lost.

Data Size Restrictions and Other Constraints

The following data size restrictions and limitations apply to the CPPM:

- The CPPM must control the size of the data that it posts. Otherwise the Web API daemon is unable to process it. Presently the Web API can process a maximum of 2 megabytes of data.
- The following limitations apply to XML data for role and device posture information. The Web API daemon discards XML data sent to it that exceeds these amounts (that is, the overflow data):
 - The SRX Series device can process a maximum of 209 roles.
 - The SRX Series device supports only one type of posture with six possible posture tokens, or values. Identity information for an individual user can have only one posture token.



NOTE: The CPPM checks the health and posture of a device and it can send that information to the SRX Series device as part of the user information that it posts. You cannot define posture on the SRX Series device. Also, the SRX Series device does not check posture information that it receives.

Posture States and the Posture Group

User, role, and posture token fields are distinct in the context of the CPPM. Each set of user identity information contains user and role (group) identity and a posture token. Because the SRX Series device supports only user and role (group) fields, the posture token value is mapped to a role by adding the prefix **posture-**. You can then use that role in a security policy as a group and that policy will be applied to all traffic that matches the policy.

The predefined posture identity states are:

- posture-healthy (HEALTHY)
- posture-checkup (CHECKUP)
- posture-transition (TRANSITION)
- posture-quarantine (QUARANTINE)
- posture-infected (INFECTED)
- posture-unknown (UNKNOWN)

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
- [Example: Enforcing SRX Series Security Policies Using Aruba ClearPass as the Authentication Source on page 252](#)
- [Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 271](#)

Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass

The SRX Series device and the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) collaborate to control access to your protected resources and to the Internet. To carry this out, the SRX Series device must authenticate users in conjunction with applying security policies that match their requests. For the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature, the SRX Series device relies on ClearPass as its authentication source.

The Web API function, which this example covers, exposes to the CPPM an API that enables it to initiate a secure connection with the SRX Series device. The CPPM uses this connection to post user authentication information to the SRX Series device. In their relationship, the SRX Series device acts as an HTTPS server for the CPPM client.

- [Requirements on page 233](#)
- [Overview on page 233](#)
- [Configuration on page 237](#)

Requirements

This section defines the software and hardware requirements for the topology for this example. See [Figure 20 on page 237](#) for the topology design.

The hardware and software components are:

- Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM). The CPPM is configured to use its local authentication source to authenticate users.



NOTE: It is assumed that the CPPM is configured to provide the SRX Series device with user authentication and identity information, including the username, a list of the names of any groups that the user belongs to, the IP addresses of the devices used, and the device posture token.

- SRX Series device running Junos OS that includes the integrated ClearPass feature.
- A server farm composed of six servers, all in the servers-zone:
 - marketing-server-protected (203.0.113.23)
 - human-resources-server (203.0.113.25)
 - accounting-server (203.0.113.72)
 - public-server (192.0.2.96)
 - corporate-server (203.0.113.71)
 - sales-server (203.0.113.81)

- AC 7010 Aruba Cloud Services Controller running ArubaOS.
- Aruba AP wireless access controller running ArubaOS.

The Aruba AP is connected to the AC7010.

Wireless users connect to the CPPM through the Aruba AP.

- Juniper Networks EX4300 switch used as the wired 802.1 access device.

Wired users connect to the CPPM using the EX4300 switch.

- Six end-user systems:
 - Three wired network-connected PCs running Microsoft OS
 - Two BYOD devices that access the network through the Aruba AP access device
 - One wireless laptop running Microsoft OS

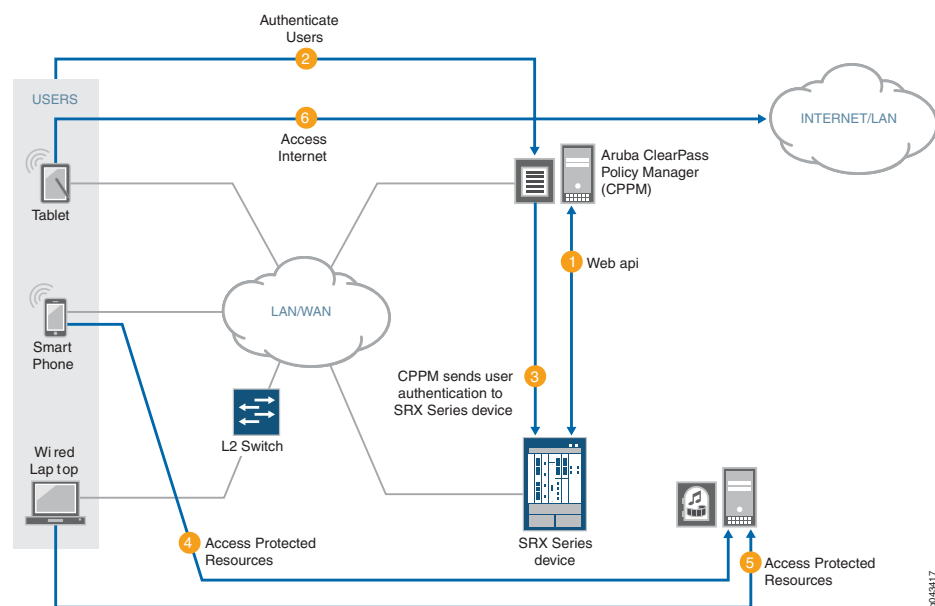
Overview

You can configure identity-aware security policies on the SRX Series device to control a user's access to resources based on username or group name, not the IP address of the device. For this feature, the SRX Series device relies on the CPPM for user authentication.

The SRX Series device exposes to ClearPass its Web API (webapi) to allow the CPPM to integrate with it. The CPPM posts user authentication information efficiently to the SRX Series device across the connection. You must configure the Web API function to allow the CPPM to initiate and establish a secure connection. There is no separate Routing Engine process required on the SRX Series device to establish a connection between the SRX Series device and the CPPM.

Figure 19 on page 234 illustrates the communication cycle between the SRX Series device and the CPPM, including user authentication.

Figure 19: ClearPass and SRX Series Device Communication and User Authentication Process



As depicted, the following activity takes place:

1. The CPPM initiates a secure connection with the SRX Series device using Web API.
2. Three users join the network and are authenticated by the CPPM.
 - A tablet user joins the network across the corporate WAN.
 - A smartphone user joins the network across the corporate WAN.
 - A wireless laptop user joins the network from a wired laptop connected to a Layer 2 switch that is connected to the corporate LAN.
3. The CPPM sends the user authentication and identity information for the users who are logged in to the network to the SRX Series device in POST request messages using the Web API.

When traffic from a user arrives at the SRX Series device, the SRX Series device:

- Identifies a security policy that the traffic matches.
- Locates an authentication entry for the user in the ClearPass authentication table.

- Applies the security policy to the traffic after authenticating the user.
4. Traffic from the smartphone user who is requesting access to an internal, protected resource arrives at the SRX Series device. Because all of the conditions identified in Step 3 are met and the security policy permits it, the SRX Series device allows the user connection to the protected resource.
 5. Traffic from the wired laptop user who is requesting access to a protected resource arrives at the SRX Series device. Because all of the conditions identified in Step 3 are met and the security policy permits it, the SRX Series device allows the user connection to the resource.
 6. Traffic from the tablet user who is requesting access to the Internet arrives at the SRX Series device. Because all of the conditions identified in Step 3 are met and the security policy permits it, the SRX Series device allows the user connection to the Internet.

The Web API daemon is not enabled by default for security reasons. When you start up the Web API daemon, by default it opens either the HTTP (8080) or the HTTPS (8443) service port. You must ensure that one of these ports is configured, depending on which version of the HTTP protocol you want to use. We recommend that you use HTTPS for security reasons. Opening these ports makes the system more vulnerable to service attacks. To protect against service attacks that might use these ports, the Web API daemon will start up only after you enable it.

The Web API is a RESTful Web services implementation. However, it does not fully support the RESTful Web services. Rather, it acts as an HTTP or HTTPS server that responds to requests from the ClearPass client.



NOTE: The Web API connection is initialized by the CPPM using the HTTP service port (8080) or HTTPS service port (8443). For ClearPass to be able to post messages, you must enable and configure the Web API daemon.

To mitigate abuse and protect against data tampering, the Web API daemon:

- Requires ClearPass client authentication by HTTP or HTTPS basic user account authentication.
- Allows data to be posted to it only from the IP address configured as the client source. That is, it allows HTTP or HTTPS POST requests only from the ClearPass client IP address, which in this example is 192.0.2.199.
- Requires that posted content conforms to the established XML data format. When it processes the data, the Web API daemon ensures that the correct data format was used.



NOTE: Note that if you deploy Web management and the SRX Series device together, they must run on different HTTP or HTTPS service ports.

See [“Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API” on page 229](#) for further information on how this feature protects against data tampering.

The SRX Series UserID daemon processes the user authentication and identity information and synchronizes it to the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine. The SRX Series device creates the ClearPass authentication table to be used for information received only from the CPPM. The ClearPass authentication table does not contain user authentication information from other authentication sources. The SRX Series device checks the ClearPass authentication table to authenticate users attempting to access protected network resources on the Internet using wired or wireless devices and local network resources.

For the CPPM to connect to the SRX Series device and post authentication information, it must be certified using HTTPS authentication. The Web API daemon supports three methods that can be used to refer to an HTTPS certificate: a default certificate, a PKI local certificate, and a customized certificate implemented through the certificate and certificate-key configuration statements. These certificate methods are mutually exclusive.

This example uses HTTPS for the connection between the CPPM and the SRX Series device. To ensure security, the integrated ClearPass feature default certificate key size is 2084 bits.

Whether you use any method—the default certificate, a PKI-generated certificate, or a custom certificate—for security reasons, you must ensure that the certificate size is 2084 bits or greater.

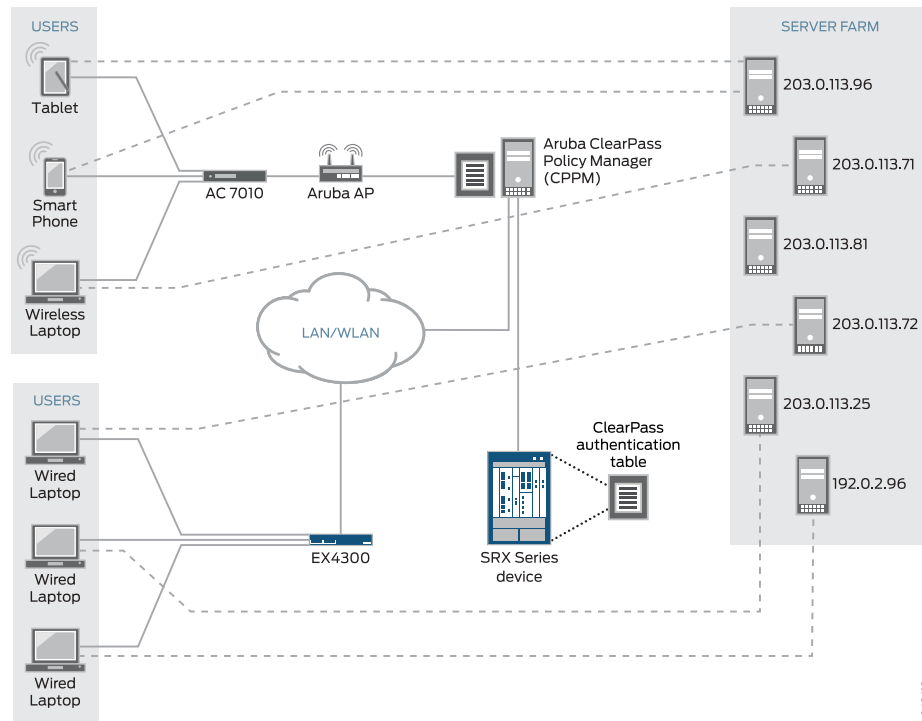
The following example shows how to generate a certificate and key using PKI:

```
user@host>request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id aruba size 2048
user@host>request security pki local-certificate generate-self-signed certificate-id aruba
domain-name mycompany.net email jxchan@mycompany.net ip-address 192.51.100.21
subject "CN=John Doe,OU=Sales,O=mycompany.net,L=MyCity,ST=CA,C=US"
```

Topology

[Figure 20 on page 237](#) shows the topology used for the integrated ClearPass deployment examples.

Figure 20: Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Deployment Topology



Configuration

This section covers how to enable and configure the SRX Series Web API.



NOTE: You must enable the Web API. It is not enabled by default.

- [Configuring the SRX Series Web API Daemon on page 238](#)
- [Configuring the ClearPass Authentication Table Entry Timeout and Priority on page 240](#)

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following statements, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the statements into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set system services webapi user sunny password i4%rgd
set system services webapi client 192.0.2.199
set system services webapi https port 8443
set system services webapi https default-certificate
set system services webapi debug-level alert
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.4 vlan-id 340 family inet address 192.51.100.21
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/3.4 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services webapi-ssl
set security user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass priority 110
```

```
set security user-identification authentication-source local-authentication-table priority 120
set security user-identification authentication-source active-directory-authentication-table priority 125
set security user-identification authentication-source firewall-authentication priority 150
set security user-identification authentication-source unified-access-control priority 200
```

Configuring the SRX Series Web API Daemon

Step-by-Step Procedure

Configuring the Web API allows the CPPM to initialize a connection to the SRX Series device. No separate connection configuration is required.

It is assumed that the CPPM is configured to provide the SRX Series device with authenticated user identity information, including the username, the names of any groups that the user belongs to, the IP addresses of the devices used, and a posture token.

Note that the CPPM might have configured role mappings that map users or user groups to device types. If the CPPM forwards the role mapping information to the SRX Series device, the SRX Series device treats the role mappings as groups. The SRX Series device does not distinguish them from other groups.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the Web API daemon:

1. Configure the Web API daemon (webapi) username and password for the account.
This information is used for the HTTPS certification request.

```
[edit system services]
user@host# set webapi user sunny password i4%rgd
```

2. Configure the Web API client address—that is, the IP address of the ClearPass webserver's data port.

The SRX Series device accepts information from this address only.



NOTE: The ClearPass webserver data port whose address is configured here is the same one that is used for the user query function, if you configure that function.

```
[edit system services]
user@host# set webapi client 192.0.2.199
```

3. Configure the Web API daemon HTTPS service port.

If you enable the Web API service on the default TCP port 8080 or 8443, you must enable host inbound traffic on that port.

In this example, the secure version of the Web API service is used (webapi-ssl), so you must configure the HTTPS service port, 8443.

```
[edit system services]
```

```
user@host# set webapi https port 8443
```

4. Configure the Web API daemon to use the HTTPS default certificate.

```
[edit system services]
user@host# set webapi https default-certificate
```

5. Configure the trace level for the Web API daemon.

The supported trace levels are notice, warn, error, crit, alert, and emerg. The default value is error.

```
[edit system services]
user@host# webapi debug-level alert
```

6. Configure the interface to use for host inbound traffic from the CPPM.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/3.4 vlan-id 340 family inet address 192.51.100.21
```

7. Enable the Web API service over HTTPS host inbound traffic on TCP port 8443.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/3.4 host-inbound-traffic
system-services webapi-ssl
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your Web API configuration by entering the **show system services webapi** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct the configuration.

```
user {
  sunny;
  password "$ABC123"; ## SECRET-DATA
}
client {
  192.0.2.199;
}
https {
  port 8443;
  default-certificate;
}
debug-level {
  alert;
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm the configuration for the interface used for host inbound traffic from the CPPM by entering the **show interfaces ge-0/0/3.4** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the verification process in this example to correct it.

```
vlan-id 340;
family inet {
```

```
    address 192.51.100.21/32;  
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your security zone configuration that allows host-inbound traffic from the CPPM using the secure Web API service (web-api-ssl) by entering the **show security zones security-zone trust** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the verification process in this example to correct it.

```
interfaces {  
  ge-0/0/3.4 {  
    host-inbound-traffic {  
      system-services {  
        webapi-ssl;  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring the ClearPass Authentication Table Entry Timeout and Priority

Step-by-Step Procedure

This procedure configures the following information:

- The timeout parameter that determines when to age out idle authentication entries in the ClearPass authentication table.
 - The ClearPass authentication table as the first authentication table in the lookup order for the SRX Series device to search for user authentication entries. If no entry is found in the ClearPass authentication table and there are other authentication tables configured, the SRX Series device will search them, based on the order that you set.
1. Set the timeout value that is used to expire idle authentication entries in the ClearPass authentication table to 20 minutes.

```
[edit services user-identification]
```

```
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass authentication-entry-timeout  
20
```

The first time that you configure the SRX Series device to integrate with an authentication source, you must specify a timeout value to identify when to expire idle entries in the ClearPass authentication table. If you do not specify a timeout value, the default value is assumed.

- default = 30 minutes
 - range = If set, the timeout value should be within the range [10,1440 minutes]. A value of 0 means that the entry will never expire.
2. Set the authentication table priority order to direct the SRX Series device to search for user authentication entries in the ClearPass authentication table first. Specify

the order in which other authentication tables are searched if an entry for the user is not found in the ClearPass authentication table.



NOTE: You need to set this value if the ClearPass authentication table is *not* the only authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine.

```
[edit security user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass priority 110
user@host# set authentication-source local-authentication-table priority 120
user@host# set authentication-source active-directory-authentication-table priority
125
user@host# set authentication-source firewall-authentication priority 150
user@host# set authentication-source unified-access-control priority 200
```

The default priority value for the ClearPass authentication table is 110. You must change the local authentication table entry from 100 to 120 to direct the SRX Series device to check the ClearPass authentication table first if there are other authentication tables on the Packet Forwarding Engine. [Table 19 on page 241](#) shows the new authentication table search priority.

Table 19: SRX Series Device Authentication Tables Search Priority Assignment

SRX Series Authentication Tables	Set Value
ClearPass authentication table	110
Local authentication table	120
Active Directory authentication table	125
Firewall authentication table	150
UAC authentication table	200

Results From configuration mode, confirm that the timeout value set for aging out ClearPass authentication table entries is correct. Enter the **show services user-identification** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct the configuration.

```
authentication-source aruba-clearpass {
  authentication-entry-timeout 20;
}
```

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
 - [Understanding Enforcement of ClearPass User and Group Authentication on the SRX Series Devices on page 243](#)

- [Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 271](#)

CHAPTER 22

Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement

- [Understanding Enforcement of ClearPass User and Group Authentication on the SRX Series Devices on page 243](#)
- [Example: Enforcing SRX Series Security Policies Using Aruba ClearPass as the Authentication Source on page 252](#)

Understanding Enforcement of ClearPass User and Group Authentication on the SRX Series Devices

This topic describes how the SRX Series device enforces user and group authentication when a user attempts to access a resource. It also explains how the SRX Series device handles information in the ClearPass authentication table user entries when a security policy that references a group in a user entry is removed. Understanding that process will help you troubleshoot issues related to group identity and give you insight into changes in the ClearPass authentication table user entries.

- [Understanding How the SRX Series Device Manages the ClearPass Authentication Table on page 243](#)
- [User Authentication Entries in the ClearPass Authentication Table on page 244](#)
- [Communication Between ClearPass and the SRX Series Device on page 246](#)
- [Understanding Domains and Interested Groups on page 248](#)
- [When a User Has Already Been Authenticated By Another Source on page 251](#)

Understanding How the SRX Series Device Manages the ClearPass Authentication Table

The integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature enables the SRX Series device and the Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) to collaborate in protecting your company's resources. It enables the SRX Series device to apply firewall security policies to user traffic and to control user access to protected resources based on user or group identity. To ensure the identity of the user, the SRX Series device relies on authenticated user information that it receives from the CPPM.

It is useful to understand how the SRX Series device gets authenticated user identity information from the CPPM, generates entries in its ClearPass authentication table, and

manages those entries in relation to security policies and user events. Understanding these processes will help you to quickly identify and resolve related problems.

This topic focuses on:

- How the SRX Series device obtains user identity information from the CPPM and manages it, and how you can use this information in security policies.
- How security policies that reference a group as the source (source-identity) have bearing on the groups listed in user entries in the ClearPass authentication table. Groups that are referenced by security policies are referred to as *interested groups*.

User Authentication Entries in the ClearPass Authentication Table

In their collaboration, ClearPass acts as the authentication source for the SRX Series device. The CPPM sends to the SRX Series device identity information about users that it has authenticated. The UserID daemon process in the SRX Series device receives this information, processes it, and synchronizes it to the Packet Forwarding Engine side in the independent ClearPass authentication table that is generated for this purpose.

As administrator of the SRX Series device, you can use the authenticated user identity information in security policies to control access to your protected resources and the Internet.

The collection of user identity information that the SRX Series device obtains from the CPPM and uses to create entries in its global Routing Engine authentication table that is synchronized to its individual ClearPass authentication table is referred to as a mapping, or, more commonly, an IP-user mapping because the username and the related group list are mapped to the IP address of the user's device.



NOTE: For each user authentication entry in the ClearPass authentication table, a group list identifies the groups that a user belongs to in addition to other information such as the posture token, which indicates state of the device, such as whether it is healthy.

You can use a username or a group name in security policies to identify a user and not rely directly on the IP address of the device used, because the IP address of the device is tied to the username and its groups in the ClearPass authentication table entry.



NOTE: For each user entry, the number of groups, or roles, in the entry cannot exceed 200. After the capacity is reached, additional roles are discarded and the following syslog message is sent:

```
userid_get_and_check_adauth_num: src_ip ip-address user domain:user  
dropped.record numrecord-number has arrived max num of db
```

The CPPM posts user information to the SRX Series device in the following format. The SRX Series device does not use all of this information.


```

<userfw-entries>
  <userfw-entry>
    <source>Aruba ClearPass</source>
    <timestamp>2016-01-29T0310Z</timestamp>
    <operation>logon</operation>
    <IP>192.0.2.123</IP>
    <domain>my-company-domain</domain>
    <user>user1</user>
    <role-list>
      <role>human-resources-grp</role>
      <role>[User Authenticated],</role>
    </role-list>
    <posture>HEALTHY</posture>
    <device_category>Computer</device_category>
  </userfw-entry>
</userfw-entries>

```

Here is the format for a ClearPass authentication table entry for a user, followed by an example entry and a description of its components.

IP-address, domain, user, user-group-list

In the following example, the user belongs to two groups, the human-resources-grp group and the posture-healthy group. The SRX Series device converts the posture information from the CPPM to a group name. You might configure a security policy that allows all users access to the marketing server if their devices belong to the posture-healthy group (role).

192.0.2.11 , my-company-domain, lin, human-resources-grp, posture-healthy

- IP address

This is the IP address of the device used.

- The name of the domain that the user belongs to.

In this example, the domain name is “my-company-domain.” The default domain name GLOBAL is used if a domain name is not provided.

- The username

The username is the user’s login name used to connect to the network, which, in this example, is lin.

This name is constant regardless of the device used.

When you configure a security policy whose source-identity tuple identifies the source of the traffic by username or group name, not by the IP address of the device used, it is as if the security policy were device independent; it applies to the user’s activity regardless of the device used.

- One or more groups that a user belongs to

It is here where the concept of *interested groups* and their relationship to security policies comes into play. An interested group is a group that is referenced in a security policy. The concept of interested groups is covered later in this topic.

Note that if a user is connected to the network using multiple devices, there might be more than one IP-user mapping for that user. Each mapping would have its own set of

values—that is, domain name and group-list—in conjunction with the username and IP address.

For example, the following three IP address-to-username mappings might exist for the user `abe` who is connected to the network using three separate devices:

```
203.0.113.5 abe, marketing-grp, posture-healthy
192.0.2.34 abe, marketing-grp, posture-transition
203.0.133.19 abe, marketing-grp, posture-unknown
```

Assume that the SRX Series device receives a logout message for `110.208.132.23, abe`. The following partial user authentication entry shows that the user `abe` is now logged in to the network using only two devices:

```
192.0.2.34 abe, marketing-grp, posture-transition
203.0.133.19 abe, marketing-grp, posture-unknown
```

Communication Between ClearPass and the SRX Series Device

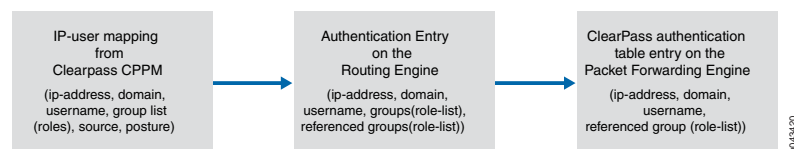
Here is a summary of how the SRX Series device and ClearPass communicate:

- A user joins the company network via a wired or wireless LAN.
- The CPPM authenticates the user.
- The CPPM initiates a secure connection with the SRX Series device using the integrated Web API.
- The SRX Series UserID daemon gets the full IP-user mapping from the CPPM. For each authenticated user, the UserID daemon generates an entry in the Routing Engine authentication table.

The Routing Engine authentication table is common in that it holds authentication entries based on information from other authentication sources in addition to ClearPass. For example, it might also hold entries for users authenticated by Microsoft Active Directory.

- The UserID daemon synchronizes the user authentication information from the Routing Engine authentication table to the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine. The ClearPass authentication table is dedicated to holding only ClearPass authentication information. See [Figure 21 on page 246](#).

Figure 21: User Information from the CPPM to the SRX Series Device Routing Engine Synchronized to the ClearPass Authentication Table



The SRX Series device uses the authenticated user identity information in the following process. When a user attempts to access an internal, protected resource or the Internet, the SRX Series device:

- Checks the traffic generated by the user for a matching security policy. The source traffic must match all of the tuples specified in the security policy. The match includes the source-identity field, which specifies a username or a group name.

To identify a match, the SRX Series device compares the username or the group name with the source-identity specification that is configured in a security policy, along with all other security policy values.

- Checks the ClearPass authentication table for an authentication entry for the user, if a security policy match was found.

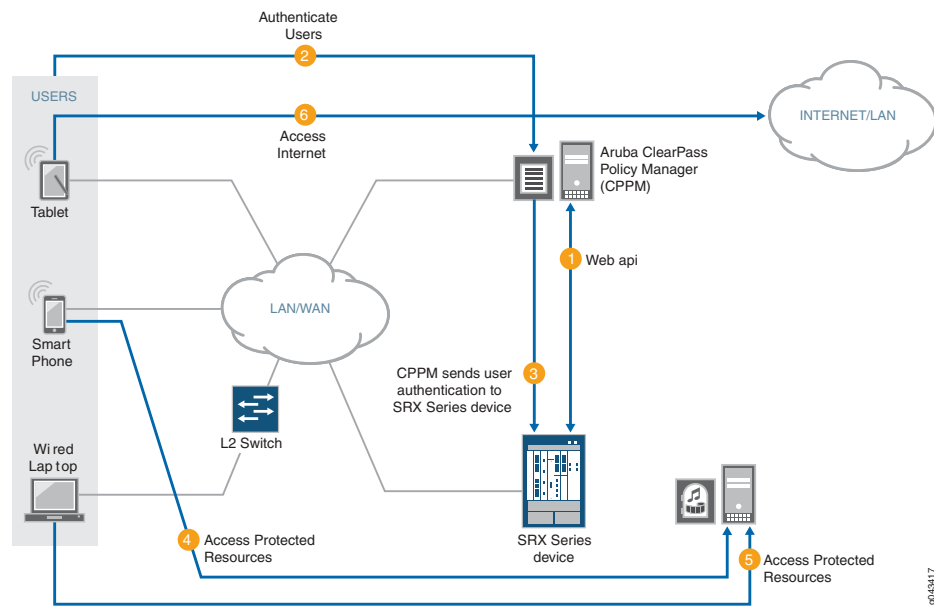
If it does not find an entry in the ClearPass authentication table, the SRX Series device checks other local authentication tables, in the order that you specified, until a match is found. However, it does not check other local authentication tables if the user query function is configured. See [“Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function”](#) on page 271.



NOTE: The SRX Series device can query the CPPM for individual user information, under certain circumstances, when it has not already received that information from the CPPM. This feature is referred to as user query.

Figure 22 on page 247 illustrates the connection and communication between the SRX Series device and the CPPM. It also shows the paths entailed in authenticating users and allowing them access to the Internet and internal, protected resources.

Figure 22: ClearPass and SRX Series Device Communication and User Authentication Process



As [Figure 22 on page 247](#) depicts, the following activity takes place:

1. The CPPM initiates a secure connection with the SRX Series device using the Web API.
2. Three users join the network and are authenticated by the CPPM.
 - A tablet user joins the network across the corporate WAN.
 - A smartphone user joins the network across the corporate WAN.
 - A wireless laptop user joins the network from a wired laptop connected to a Layer 2 switch that is connected to the corporate LAN.
3. The CPPM sends the user authentication and identity information for the users who are logged in to the network to the SRX Series device in POST request messages using the Web API.

When traffic from a user arrives at the SRX Series device, the SRX Series device:

- Identifies a security policy that the traffic matches.
 - Locates an authentication entry for the user in the ClearPass authentication table.
 - Applies the security policy to the traffic after authenticating the user.
4. Traffic from the smartphone user who is requesting access to an internal, protected resource arrives at the SRX Series device. Because all of the conditions identified in Step 3 are met and the security policy permits it, the SRX Series device allows the user connection to the protected resource.
 5. Traffic from the wired laptop user who is requesting access to a protected resource arrives at the SRX Series device. Because all of the conditions identified in Step 3 are met and the security policy permits it, the SRX Series device allows the user connection to the resource.
 6. Traffic from the tablet user who is requesting access to the Internet arrives at the SRX Series device. Because all of the conditions identified in Step 3 are met and the security policy permits it, the SRX Series device allows the user connection to the Internet.

Understanding Domains and Interested Groups

How the user identity group information is managed on the SRX Series device is dominated by two concepts:

- Domain group

The SRX Series device follows the usual course in regard to how it handles usernames in domain namespaces. It makes use of the namespace to distinguish names that are the same—such as **admin**—but that are from different sources and are in different domains. Because they belong to different domains, the names are not in conflict.

Any group that is part of an IP-user mapping will always belong to a domain, whether that domain is a specific domain or the GLOBAL domain. If a domain name is not specified in the IP-user mapping, then the GLOBAL domain is assumed.

Table 20 on page 249 illustrates how the domain for a group is determined, based on the IP-user mapping information obtained from the CPPM.

Table 20: Assigning a Domain to a Group

Does the IP-User Mapping Contain a Domain Name?	What Domain Is Applied to the Group?
<p>No</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>IP, , user1, group-list</p> <p>The second comma serves as a placeholder for the domain name and the GLOBAL domain is applied.</p>	<p>Groups included in group-list belong to the GLOBAL domain.</p>
<p>Yes</p> <p>For example:</p> <p>IP, domain1, user1, group-list</p> <p>NOTE: In this example, the IP-user mapping specifies the domain name as domain1.</p>	<p>The domain name, domain1, is included in the IP-user mapping from the CPPM, and it is used. It is retained in the entry for the authenticated user in the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine.</p>

- Interested group

A group qualifies as an *interested group* if it is referenced by a security policy—that is, if it is specified in a policy's source-identity field. On the Routing Engine authentication table, each user entry contains a group referenced by a policy list that identifies the names of the groups for which a security policy exists. If a group included in a user entry is not currently used in a security policy, it is not included in this list. A group can move in and out of the groups referenced by a policy list.

- Interested group lists

An interested group list, or a list of groups referenced by policies, is a subset of overall groups. It is the intersection of the group list in a user authentication entry and the source-identity list for security policies. That is, any group included in a ClearPass authentication table user entry qualifies as an interested group. The Routing Engine synchronizes to the user entry in the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine only those groups that are referenced by security policies.

Here is how it works:

- The UserID daemon gets the full IP-user role (group) mapping from the CPPM.
- For each group, the UserID daemon identifies whether it is an interested group by determining if there is a security policy that references it. Any qualifying groups are included in the groups referenced by a policy list on the Routing Engine. The UserID daemon synchronizes to the user entry in the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine interested groups along with the rest of the user authentication and identity information.

The interested groups list for a user entry on the Routing Engine can change, based on the following events:

- A new security policy is configured that references a group included in the user entry on the Routing Engine but that is not already in the entry's referenced groups list.
- A currently configured security policy that references a group in its source-identity is deleted.

Consider the following example:

- Assume that the CPPM posted the following information for two users to the SRX Series device:

```
192.51.100.1, abe, group1, group2, group3, group4, healthy
192.0.2.21, john, group1, group5, healthy
```

- After the SRX Series device maps the posture, defining it as a group, the two user entries in the SRX Series device Routing Engine authentication table appear as follows:

```
192.51.100.1, abe, group1, group2, group3, group4, posture-healthy
192.0.2.21, john, group1, group5, posture-healthy
```

- Assume that several security policies include source-identity fields that reference one of the following: group1, group3, posture-healthy.

The intersection of the preceding sets—the original group list and the list of security policies that refer to the groups—results in the following interested groups list:

- For the user john, the groups referenced by policy list includes group1 and posture-healthy.
- For the user abe, the groups referenced by policy list includes group1, group3, and posture-healthy.

Now suppose that the security policy whose source-identity field specified group1 was deleted. The groups referenced by policy lists for the user authentication entries for the two users—john and abe—would be changed, producing the following results:

- For the user john, the list would include only posture-healthy.
- For the user abe, the list would include group3 and posture-healthy.

[Table 21 on page 251](#) shows how a security policy that references a group affects the ClearPass authentication table. It also shows the effect on the ClearPass authentication table when a group is *not* referenced by a security policy, and therefore is not an interested group.

Table 21: Interested Groups: Effect on the ClearPass Authentication Table

Security Policies Configuration and Modification	Resulting Effect on ClearPass Authentication Table Packet Forwarding Engine Entries
Case 1: The SRX Series device gets the IP-user mapping for a user from the CPPM. None of the groups in the user mapping are referenced by security policies.	
IP-user mapping from the CPPM: 203.0.113.9 ,user1, g1, g2, g3, g4	The user authentication entry written to the ClearPass authentication table in the Packet Forwarding Engine for this user does not contain any groups. 203.0.113.9 , ,user1
Case 2: The SRX Series device gets the IP-user mapping for a user from the CPPM. It checks the groups list against the security policies list and finds that two of the groups are referenced by security policies.	
IP-user mapping on the Routing Engine: 192.0.2.1, domain1, user2, g1, g2, g3, g4	The user authentication entry written to the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine for this user includes the following groups that are included in the groups referenced by the policy list on the Routing Engine: 192.0.2.1, domain1, user2, g2, g4

When a User Has Already Been Authenticated By Another Source

It can happen that the SRX Series device Routing Engine authentication table and the individual Microsoft Active Directory authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine, for example, contain an entry for a user who was authenticated by Active Directory. As usual, the CPPM sends the IP-user mapping for the user to the SRX Series device. The SRX Series device must resolve the problem because its Routing Engine authentication table is common to both Active Directory and ClearPass.

Here is how the SRX Series device handles the situation:

- On the Routing Engine authentication table:
 - The SRX Series device overwrites the Active Directory authentication entry for the user in its common Routing Engine authentication table with the newly generated one from the IP-user mapping for the user from the CPPM.

There is now no IP address or username conflict.
- On the Packet Forwarding Engine:

- The SRX Series device deletes the existing Active Directory authentication entry for the user from the Active Directory authentication table.

This will delete active sessions associated with the IP address.

- The SRX Series device generates a new entry for the CPPM-authenticated user in the Packet Forwarding Engine ClearPass authentication table.

Traffic associated with the IP-user mapping entry will initiate new sessions based on user authentication in the ClearPass authentication table.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
- [Example: Enforcing SRX Series Security Policies Using Aruba ClearPass as the Authentication Source on page 252](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 274](#)

Example: Enforcing SRX Series Security Policies Using Aruba ClearPass as the Authentication Source

This example covers how to configure security to protect your resources and control access to the internet using the SRX Series device integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature, which relies on the Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager as its authentication source. The SRX Series integrated ClearPass feature allows you to configure security policies that control access to company resources and the Internet by identifying users by username, group name, or the name of a role that ties together a group of users and a device type.

Today's network environments are more open to attacks of various kinds because they support *anywhere, anytime, any device* access, to a greater or lesser degree, and they allow a user to use multiple concurrently network-connected devices. Because it allows you identify the user by username, the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature narrows the security gap that these capabilities introduce.

For details on how user authentication and identity information is conveyed from the CPPM to the SRX Series device, see the following topics:

- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)
- [Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 271](#)

The example covers the following processes:

- How to control access at the user level based on username or group name, not device IP address.

You can use the source-identity parameter in a security policy to specify the name of a user or the name of a group of users whose authentication is provided by the CPPM. The policy is applied to traffic generated by the users when they attempt to access a protected resource or the Internet regardless of the device used. The access control is tied to the user's name, and not directly to the IP address of the user's device.



NOTE: You can configure different security policies for a single user that specify different actions, differentiated by the zones and the destination addresses specified or a group that the user belongs to.

- How to display and interpret the contents of the ClearPass authentication table.

The SRX Series device creates the ClearPass authentication table to contain user authentication and identity information that it receives from the CPPM. The device refers to the table to authenticate a user who requests access to a resource.

The ClearPass authentication table contents are dynamic. They are modified to reflect user activity in response to various events and also in regard to security policies that reference groups.

For example, when a user logs out of the network or in to the network, the ClearPass authentication table is modified, as is the case when a user is removed from a group or a referenced security policy that specifies a group that the user belongs to is deleted. In the latter case, the user entry no longer shows the user as belonging to that group.

In this example, the ClearPass authentication table contents are displayed to depict changes made because of two events. The content for the users is displayed:

- Before and after a specific user logs out of the network
- Before and after a referenced security policy is deleted

The entry for the user who belonged to the group referenced by the security policy is displayed before and after the policy is deleted.

- [Requirements on page 254](#)
- [Overview on page 254](#)
- [Configuration on page 257](#)
- [Verification on page 267](#)

Requirements

This section defines the software and hardware requirements for the topology for this example. See [Figure 23 on page 257](#) for the topology design.

The hardware and software components are:

- Aruba ClearPass. The ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) is configured to use its local authentication source to authenticate users.



NOTE: It is assumed that the CPPM is configured to provide the SRX Series device with user authentication and identity information, including the username, a list of the names of any groups that the user belongs to, the IP addresses of the devices used, and the device posture token.

- SRX Series device running Junos OS that includes the integrated ClearPass feature.
- A server farm composed of six servers, all in the servers-zone:
 - marketing-server-protected (203.0.113.23)
 - human-resources-server (203.0.113.25)
 - accounting-server (203.0.113.72)
 - public-server (203.0.113.62)
 - corporate-server (203.0.113.71)
 - sales-server (203.0.113.81)

- AC 7010 Aruba Cloud Services Controller running ArubaOS.
- Aruba AP wireless access controller running ArubaOS.

The Aruba AP is connected to the AC7010.

Wireless users connect to the CPPM through the Aruba AP.

- Juniper Networks EX4300 switch used as the wired 802.1 access device.

Wired users connect to the CPPM using the EX4300 switch.

- Six end-user systems:
 - Three wired network-connected PCs running Microsoft OS
 - Two BYOD devices that access the network through the Aruba AP access device
 - One wireless laptop running Microsoft OS

Overview

In its capacity as the authentication source for the integrated ClearPass feature, the CPPM posts to the SRX Series device user authentication and identity information. When it receives this information, the SRX Series UserID daemon processes it and generates

entries for the authenticated users in the Routing Engine authentication table and then synchronizes that information to the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine side.

The SRX Series device requires the user authentication and identity information to verify that a user is authenticated when the user makes an access request and the traffic generated from the user's device arrives at the SRX Series device. If a security policy exists that specifies in the source-identity parameter the username or the name of a group that the user belongs to, the SRX Series device searches the contents of its ClearPass authentication table for an entry for that user.

If it does not find an entry for the user in its ClearPass authentication table, the SRX Series device can search its other authentication tables, if you have configured a search order that includes them. See [“Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass” on page 232](#) for information about the authentication table search order.

The integrated ClearPass feature allows you to create identity-aware security policies configured to match traffic issued by users based on their username or the name of a group that they belong to.



NOTE: You configure role mappings on the CPPM, not on the SRX Series device.

For example, a device type role mapping might tie user identities to company-owned computers. You could specify this role as a group in a security policy configured to apply to all users who are mapped to the rule. In this case, the conditions set by CPPM for the rule—use of company-owned computer—would apply to all users mapped to the rule. The SRX Series device does not consider the conditions, but rather accepts the rule from the CPPM.

The following configurations included in this example cover security policies that are applicable based on the type of device used as defined by the CPPM through rule mappings. It is assumed that the CPPM posted to the SRX Series device the following mapped rules that are used as groups in security policies:

- marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group

Maps jxchan to the device type PC.

The policy that specifies marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group in its source-identity field allows jxchan, and other users who are mapped to it, access to the marketing-server-protected server using their PC, whether it is company owned or not.

- accounting-grp-and-company-device

Maps users who belong to accounting groups using company devices. The CPPM sends the role accounting-grp-and-company-device to the SRX Series device. The mapping is done on the CPPM by role mapping rules.

The policy that specifies accounting-grp-and-company-device in its source identity field allows users who are mapped to the rule to access protected resources on the

accounting-server. The group accounting-grp is mapped to the rule. Therefore the mapped rule applies to the members of accounting-grp.

The user viki2 belongs to accounting-grp. If all conditions apply—that is, if viki2 is using a company-owned device and the policy permits access—she is allowed access to the resources on accounting-server. But, recall that the SRX Series device does not analyze the rule. Rather it applies it to all users who are mapped to it by the CPPM.

- guest-device-byod

Maps the guest group to the device type byod—that is, any user-owned device brought to the network.

The policy that specifies guest-device-byod in its source identity field denies users who are mapped to the rule access to all servers in the server zone if they are using smartphones or other user-owned devices. The username guest2 is mapped to this rule by the CPPM.

For all cases, if the users are allowed or denied access according to the security policy conditions, you can assume that the following conditions exist:

- The CPPM posted the correct authentication information for the users and groups to the SRX Series device.
- The SRX Series device processed the authenticated user information correctly and generated entries for the users and groups in its ClearPass authentication table.

[Table 22 on page 256](#) summarizes the users, their groups, and the zones to which they belong. All users belong to the default GLOBAL domain.

Table 22: Authenticated User Information for Security Policy Example

User	Group	Zone
Abe (abew1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • marketing-access-limited-grp 	marketing-zone
John (jxchan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • posture-healthy • marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group • marketing-general • sales-limited • corporate-limited 	marketing-zone
Lin (lchen1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • posture-healthy • human-resources-grp • accounting-limited • corporate-limited 	human-resources-zone
Viki (viki2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • posture-healthy • accounting-grp • accounting-grp-and-company-device • corporate-limited 	accounting-zone

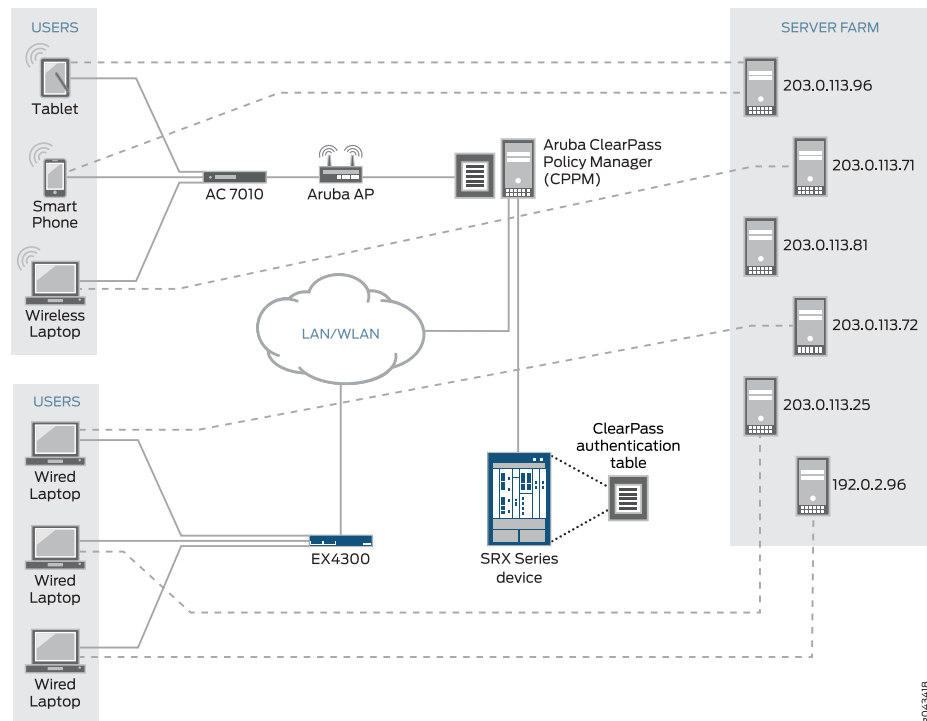
Table 22: Authenticated User Information for Security Policy Example (*continued*)

User	Group	Zone
guest1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> posture-healthy guest 	public-zone
guest2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> posture-healthy guest-device-byod 	public-zone

Topology

Figure 23 on page 257 shows the topology for this example.

Figure 23: Topology for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Enforcement Through Security Policies Example



Configuration

This section covers how to configure the SRX Series device to include security policies that match traffic issued by users authenticated by the CPPM.

- [Configuring Interfaces, Zones, and an Address Book on page 260](#)
- [Configuring Identity-Aware Security Policies to Control User Access to Company Resources on page 263](#)
- [Results on page 266](#)

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following statements, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the statements into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/3 vlan-tagging
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.0 vlan-id 300 family inet address 203.0.113.45/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.1 vlan-id 310 family inet address 192.0.2.18/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/3.2 vlan-id 320 family inet address 192.0.2.14/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/4 vlan-tagging
set interfaces ge-0/0/4.0 vlan-id 400 family inet address 192.0.2.16/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/4.1 vlan-id 410 family inet address 192.0.2.19/24
set security zones security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.0
  host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.0
  host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone accounting-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
  host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone accounting-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
  host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone human-resources-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
  host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone human-resources-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
  host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone public-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.0 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
set security zones security-zone public-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.0 host-inbound-traffic
  protocols all
set security zones security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.1 host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
set security zones security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.1 host-inbound-traffic
  protocols all
set security address-book servers-zone-addresses address marketing-server-protected
  203.0.113.23
set security address-book servers-zone-addresses address human-resources-server
  203.0.113.25
set security address-book servers-zone-addresses address accounting-server 203.0.113.72
set security address-book servers-zone-addresses address corporate-server 203.0.113.71
set security address-book servers-zone-addresses address public-server 203.0.113.91
set security address-book servers-zone-addresses attach zone servers-zone
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
  match source-address any destination address any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
  match application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
  match source-identity "global\marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group"
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
  then permit
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
  match source-address any destination address marketing-zone-protected
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
  match application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
  match source-identity "global\abew1"
```

```
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
  then permit
set security policies from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy acct-cp-device
  match source-address any destination-address accounting-server
set security policies from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy acct-cp-device
  match application any
set security policies from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy acct-cp-device
  match source-identity "global\accounting-grp-and-company-device"
set security policies from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy acct-cp-device
  then permit
set security policies from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
  human-resources-p1 match source-address any destination-address corporate-server
set security policies from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
  human-resources-p1 match application any
set security policies from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
  human-resources-p1 match source-identity "global\corporate-limited"
set security policies from-zone human-resources-zone to servers-zone policy
  human-resources-p1 then permit
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
  match source-address any destination-address corporate-server
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
  match application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
  match source-identity "global\marketing-access-limited-grp"
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
  then permit
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
  match source-address any destination-address human-resources-server
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
  match application any
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
  match source-identity "global\sales-limited-group"
set security policies from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
  then permit
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-allow-access
  match source-address any destination address public-server
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-allow-access
  match application any
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-allow-access
  match source-identity "global\guest"
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-allow-access
  then permit
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-deny-access
  match source-address any destination-address any
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-deny-access
  match application any
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-deny-access
  match source-identity "global\guest-device-byod"
set security policies from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy guest-deny-access
  then deny
```

Configuring Interfaces, Zones, and an Address Book

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode*.

Configure the following interfaces and assign them to zones:

- ge-0/0/3.0 > marketing-zone
- ge-0/0/3.1 > human-resources-zone
- ge-0/0/3.2 > accounting-zone
- ge-0/0/4.0 > public-zone
- ge-0/0/4.1 > servers-zone

Because this example uses logical interfaces, you must configure VLAN tagging.

1. Configure interfaces for the SRX Series device:

```
[edit interfaces]
set ge-0/0/3 vlan-tagging
set ge-0/0/3.0 vlan-id 300 family inet address 203.0.113.45/24
set ge-0/0/3.1 vlan-id 310 family inet address 192.0.2.18/24
set ge-0/0/3.2 vlan-id 320 family inet address 192.0.2.14/24
set ge-0/0/4 vlan-tagging
set ge-0/0/4.0 vlan-id 400 family inet address 192.0.2.16/24
set ge-0/0/4.1 vlan-id 410 family inet address 192.0.2.19/24
```

2. Configure zones.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host#set security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.0
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set security-zone marketing-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.0
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host#set security-zone accounting-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set security-zone accounting-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.1
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host#set security-zone human-resources-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set security-zone human-resources-zone interfaces ge-0/0/3.2
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host#set security-zone public-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.0 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host#set security-zone public-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.0 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all
user@host#set security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.1 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host#set security-zone servers-zone interfaces ge-0/0/4.1 host-inbound-traffic
protocols all
```


3. Configure an address book containing the IP addresses of the servers to use as destination addresses in security policies.

```
[edit security address-book servers-zone-addresses]
user@host# set address marketing-server-protected 203.0.113.23
user@host# set address human-resources-server 203.0.113.25
user@host# set address accounting-server 203.0.113.72
user@host# set address corporate-server 203.0.113.71
user@host# set address public-server 203.0.113.91
```

4. Attach the servers-zone-addresses address book to servers-zone.

```
[edit security address-book]
user@host# set servers-zone-addresses attach zone servers-zone
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration for interfaces by entering the **show interfaces** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct the configuration.

```
ge-0/0/3 {
  unit 0 {
    vlan-id 300;
    family inet {
      address 203.0.113.45/24;
    }
  }
  unit 1 {
    vlan-id 310;
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.18/24;
    }
  }
  unit 2 {
    vlan-id 320;
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.14/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/4 {
  vlan-tagging;
  unit 0 {
    vlan-id 400;
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.16/24;
    }
  }
  unit 1 {
    vlan-id 410;
    family inet {
      address 192.0.2.19/24;
    }
  }
}
```

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration for zones by entering the **show security zones** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct the configuration.

```
security-zone human-resources-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.2 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-zone accounting-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.1 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-zone marketing-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/3.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
security-zone servers-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/4.1 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}
}
security-zone public-zone {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/4.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}

```

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration for the address book by entering the **show security address-book** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct the configuration.

```

servers-zone-addresses {
  address marketing-zone-protected 203.0.113.23 /32;
  address human-resources-server 203.0.113.25 /32;
  address accounting-server 203.0.113.72/32;
  address corporate-server 203.0.113.71/32;
  address public-server 203.0.113.91/32;
  attach {
    zone servers-zone;
  }
}

```

Configuring Identity-Aware Security Policies to Control User Access to Company Resources

Step-by-Step Procedure This task entails configuring security policies that apply to a user's access to resources based on username or group name, and not the IP address of the device used.

Note that all users belong to the default GLOBAL domain.

1. Configure a security policy that specifies marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group as the source-identity. It allows the user jxchan, who belongs to this group, access to any of the servers in the servers-zones when he is using a PC, whether it is a personal device or a company-owned device. The username jxchan is mapped by the CPPM to the rule marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group.

[edit security policies]

```

user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
match source-address any destination address any
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
match application any

```

```
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
match source-identity "global\marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group"
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p1
then permit
```

2. Configure a security policy that allows the user abew1 access to the marketing-zone-protected server (IP address 203.0.113.23) in the servers-zone regardless of the device that he uses.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
match source-address any destination address marketing-zone-protected
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
match application any
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
match source-identity "global\abew1"
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p2
then permit
```

3. Configure a security policy that allows the user viki2 access to the accounting-server (IP address 203.0.113.72) in the servers-zone when she is using a company-owned device. The user viki2 belongs to accounting-grp which is mapped to the company-owned-device rule (accounting-grp-and-company-device) by the CPPM.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
acct-cp-device match source-address any destination-address accounting-server
user@host# set from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
acct-cp-device match application any
user@host# set from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
acct-cp-device match source-identity
"global\accounting-grp-and-company-device"
user@host# set from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
acct-cp-device then permit
```

4. Configure a security policy that allows users who belong to the corporate-limited group limited access to the corporate-server server (IP address 203.0.113.71) in the servers-zone when they are initiating a request from the human-resources zone.

If the source-address were specified as "any", the policy would apply to other users who also belong to the corporate-limited group.

```
[edit security policies]
user@host# set from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
human-resources-p1 match source-address any destination-address
corporate-server
user@host# set from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
human-resources-p1 match application any
user@host# set from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
human-resources-p1 match source-identity "global\corporate-limited"
user@host# set from-zone human-resources-zone to servers-zone policy
human-resources-p1 then permit
```

5. Configure a security policy that allows the user `abewl` access to the corporate-server (IP address 203.0.113.71) server in the servers-zone. The user `abewl` belongs to marketing-access-limited-grp to which the security policy applies.

```
[edit security policies]
```

```
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
match source-address any destination-address corporate-server
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
match application any
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
match source-identity "global\marketing-access-limited-grp"
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p0
then permit
```

6. Configure a security policy that allows users who belong to the sales-limited-group access to the human-resources-server (IP address 203.0.113.81) server when they initiate a request from the marketing-zone. The user `jxchan` belongs to sales-limited-group.

```
[edit security policies]
```

```
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
match source-address any destination-address human-resources-server
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
match application any
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
match source-identity "global\sales-limited-group"
user@host# set from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone policy marketing-p3
then permit
```

7. Configure a security policy that allows users who belong to the guest group access to the public-server (IP address 203.0.113.91) in the servers-zone.

```
[edit security policies]
```

```
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-allow-access match source-address any destination-address public-server
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-allow-access match application any
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-allow-access match source-identity "global\guest"
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-allow-access then permit
```

8. Configure a security policy that denies users who belong to the guest-device-byod group access to any servers in the servers-zone when they use their own devices.

```
[edit security policies]
```

```
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-deny-access match source-address any destination-address any
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-deny-access match application any
user@host# user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-deny-access match source-identity "global\guest-device-byod"
user@host# set from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone policy
guest-deny-access then deny
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your security policies configuration for integrated ClearPass by entering the **show security policies** command.

If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
from-zone marketing-zone to-zone servers-zone {
  policy marketing-p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
  policy marketing-p2 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address marketing-zone-protected;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\abew1";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
  policy marketing-p0 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address corporate-server;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\marketing-access-limited-grp";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
  policy marketing-p3 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address human-resources-server;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\sales-limited-group";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

```

from-zone accounting-zone to-zone servers-zone {
  policy acct-cp-device {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address accounting-server;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\accounting-grp-and-company-device";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone {
  policy human-resources-pl {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address corporate-server;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\corporate-limited";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone public-zone to-zone servers-zone {
  policy guest-allow-access {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address public-server;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\guest";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
  policy guest-deny-access {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\guest-device-byod";
    }
    then {
      deny;
    }
  }
}

```

Verification

This section verifies the ClearPass authentication table contents after certain events occur that cause some of its user authentication entries to be modified. It also shows

how to ensure that the ClearPass authentication table has been deleted successfully after you issue the delete command. It includes the following parts:

- [Displaying the ClearPass Authentication Table Contents Before and After an Authenticated User Logs Out of the Network on page 268](#)
- [Displaying the Authentication Table Contents Before and After a Referenced Security Policy Is Deleted on page 268](#)

Displaying the ClearPass Authentication Table Contents Before and After an Authenticated User Logs Out of the Network

Purpose Display the ClearPass authentication table contents when a specific, authenticated user is logged in to the network and after the user logs out.

Action Enter the **show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source authentication-source** command for the ClearPass authentication table, which is referred to as *aruba-clearpass*. Notice that the ClearPass authentication table includes an entry for the user *wiki2*.

```
show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
```

Source IP	Username	groups(Ref by policy)	state
203.0.113.21	wiki2	accounting-grp-and-company-dev	Valid
203.0.113.89	abew1	marketing-access-limited-grp	Valid
203.0.113.52	jxchan	marketing-access-for-pcs-limit	Valid
203.0.113.53	lchen1	corporate-limited	Valid
203.0.113.54	guest1		Valid
203.0.113.55	guest2		Valid

Enter the same command again after *wiki2* logs out of the network. Notice that the ClearPass authentication table no longer contains an entry for *wiki2*.

```
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
```

Source IP	Username	groups(Ref by policy)	state
203.0.113.89	abew1	marketing-access-limited-grp	Valid
203.0.113.52	jxchan	marketing-access-for-pcs-limit	Valid
203.0.113.53	lchen1	corporate-limited	Valid
203.0.113.54	guest1		Valid
203.0.113.55	guest2		Valid

Displaying the Authentication Table Contents Before and After a Referenced Security Policy Is Deleted

Purpose Display the ClearPass authentication table contents for a specific user—*lchen1*—who belongs to a group that is referenced by a security policy. Delete that security policy, then display the entry for that user again.

Action Enter the **show service user-identification authentication-table authentication-source user *user-name*** command to display the ClearPass authentication table entry for a specific user, lchen1. Notice that it includes the group corporate-limited.

```
show service user-identification authentication-table authentication-source user lchen1
Domain: GLOBAL
Source IP      Username      groups(Ref by policy)      state
203.0.113.53   lchen1        corporate-limited          Valid
```

The human-resources-p1 security policy source-identity field refers to the group corporate-limited. As shown above in the ClearPass authentication entry for him, the user lchen1 belongs to that group. Here is the configuration for the human-resources-p1 referenced security policy:

```
from-zone human-resources-zone to-zone servers-zone {
  policy human-resources-p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address corporate-server;
      application any;
      source-identity "global\corporate-limited";
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

After you delete the human-resources-p1 security policy, whose source-identity parameter refers to the group called corporate-limited, enter the same command again. Notice that the authentication entry for lchen1 does not contain the corporate-limited group.

```
show service user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass
user lchen1
Domain: GLOBAL
Source IP      Username      groups(Ref by policy)      state
203.0.113.53   lchen1
```

Take a different approach in verifying the ClearPass authentication table state after the modification. Display the entire table to verify that the group—corporate-limited—is not included in any of the user entries. Note that if more than one user belonged to the corporate-limited group, authentication entries for all of the affected users would not show that group name.

From operational mode, enter the **show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass** command.

```
show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source IP      Username      groups(Ref by policy)      state
203.0.113.21   viki2         accounting-grp-and-company-dev Valid
203.0.113.89   abew1         marketing-access-limited-grp Valid
203.0.113.52   jxchan        marketing-access-for-pcs-limit Valid
```

203.0.113.53	lchen1	Valid
203.0.113.54	guest1	Valid
203.0.113.55	guest2	Valid

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
- [Understanding Enforcement of ClearPass User and Group Authentication on the SRX Series Devices on page 243](#)
- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)

CHAPTER 23

Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function

- [Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 271](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 274](#)

Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function

This topic focuses on how you can obtain user authentication and identity information for an individual user when that information is not posted directly to the SRX Series device by the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM).

The SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature allows the SRX Series device and Aruba ClearPass to control access to protected resources and the Internet from wireless and wired devices. For this to occur, ClearPass sends user authentication and identity information to the SRX Series device. The SRX Series device stores the information in its ClearPass authentication table. To send this information, usually the CPPM uses the Web API (webapi) services implementation, which allows it to make HTTP or HTTPS POST requests to the SRX Series device.

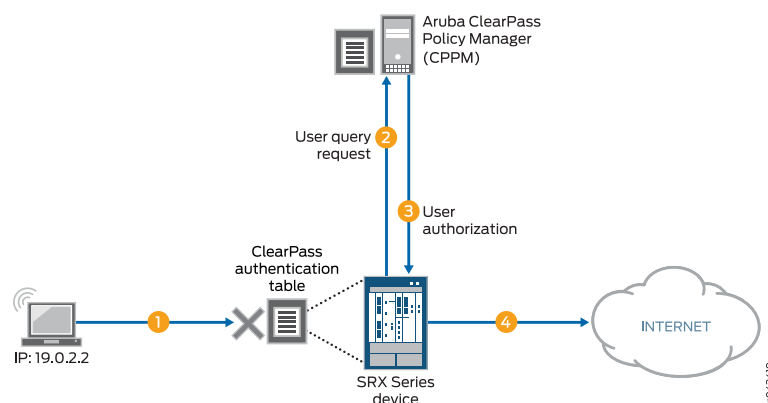
It can happen that the CPPM does not send user authentication information for a user, for various reasons. When traffic from that user arrives at the SRX Series device, the device cannot authenticate the user. If you configure the SRX Series device to enable the user query function, it can query the ClearPass webserver for authentication information for an individual user. The SRX Series device bases the query on the IP address of the user's device, which it obtains from the user's access request traffic.

If the user query function is configured, the query process is triggered automatically when the SRX Series device does not find an entry for the user in its ClearPass authentication table when it receives traffic from that user requesting access to a resource or the Internet. The SRX Series device does not search its other authentication tables. Rather, it sends a query to the CPPM requesting authentication information for the user.

[Figure 24 on page 272](#) depicts the user query process. In this example:

1. A user attempts to access a resource. The SRX Series device receives the traffic requesting access. The SRX Series device searches for an entry for the user in its ClearPass authentication table, but none is found.
2. The SRX Series device requests authentication for the user from the CPPM.
3. The CPPM authenticates the user and returns the user authentication and identity information to the SRX Series device.
4. The SRX Series device creates an entry for the user in its ClearPass authentication table, and grants the user access to the Internet.

Figure 24: The SRX Series ClearPass Integration User Query Function



You can control when the SRX Series device sends its requests automatically by configuring the following two mechanisms:

- The **delay-query-time** parameter

To determine the value to set for the **delay-query-time** parameter, it helps to understand the events and duration involved in how user identity information is transferred to the SRX Series device from ClearPass, and how the **delay-query-time** parameter influences the query process.

A delay is incurred from when the CPPM initially posts user identity information to the SRX Series device using the Web API to when the SRX Series device can update its local ClearPass authentication table with that information. The user identity information must first pass through the ClearPass device's control plane and the control plane of the SRX Series device. In other words, this process can delay when the SRX Series device can enter the user identity information in its ClearPass authentication table.

While this process is taking place, traffic might arrive at the SRX Series device that is generated by an access request from a user whose authentication and identity information is in transit from ClearPass to the SRX Series device.

Rather than allow the SRX Series device to respond automatically by sending a user query *immediately*, you can set a **delay-query-time** parameter, specified in seconds, that allows the SRX Series device to wait for a period of time before sending the query.

After the delay timeout expires, the SRX Series device sends the query to the CPPM and creates a pending entry in the Routing Engine authentication table. During this period, the traffic matches the default policy and is dropped or allowed, depending on the policy configuration.



NOTE: If there are many query requests in the queue, the SRX Series device can maintain multiple concurrent connections to ClearPass to increase throughput. However, to ensure that ClearPass is not stressed by these connections, the number of concurrent connections is constrained to no more than 20 (≤ 20). You cannot change this value.

- A default policy, which is applied to a packet if the SRX Series device does not find an entry for the user associated with the traffic in its ClearPass authentication table.

The system default policy is configured to drop packets. You can override this action by configuring a policy that specifies a different action to apply to this traffic.

Table 23 on page 273 shows the effect on the user query function in regard to whether or not Active Directory is enabled.

Table 23: Relationship Between User Query Function and Active Directory Authentication as Processed by the CLI

Active Directory Is Configured	ClearPass User Query Function Is Enabled	CLI Check Result
No	No	Pass
No	Yes	Pass
Yes	No	Pass
Yes	Yes	Fail

To avoid the failure condition reflected in the bottom row of the table, you must disable either Active Directory or the user query function. If both are configured, the system displays the following error message:

The priority of CP auth source is higher than AD auth source, and the CP user-query will shadow all AD features. Therefore, please choose either disabling CP user-query or not configuring AD.

In its response to the user query request, the ClearPass web server returns information for the user's device whose IP address was specified in the request. This response includes a time stamp, which is expressed in UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) as defined by ISO 8601.

Here are some examples:

- 2016-12-30T09:30:10.678123Z
- 2016-12-30T09:30:10Z

- 2016-06-06T00:31:52-07:00

Table 24 on page 274 shows the components that comprise a timestamp format.

Table 24: Time Stamp Components as Defined by ISO 8601

Format Component	Meaning
YYYY	two-digit month
DD	two-digit day of month
hh	two-digits of hour (00 through 23)
mm	two-digits of minute
ss	two-digits of second
s	one or more digits representing a decimal fraction of a second
TZD	time zone designator: Z or +hh:mm or -hh:mm

Related Documentation

- [Example: Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 274](#)
- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Feature to Allow the Device to Receive User Authentication Data from ClearPass on page 232](#)

Example: Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function

This example covers how to configure the SRX Series device to enable it to query Aruba ClearPass automatically for user authentication and identity information for an individual user when that information is not available.



NOTE: The user query function is supplementary to the Web API method of obtaining user authentication and identity information, and it is optional.

- [Requirements on page 275](#)
- [Overview on page 275](#)
- [Configuration on page 278](#)
- [Verification on page 281](#)

Requirements

This section defines the software and hardware requirements for the overall topology that includes user query requirements. See [Figure 26 on page 278](#) for the topology. For details on the user query process, see [Figure 25 on page 276](#).

The hardware and software components are:

- Aruba ClearPass (CPPM). The CPPM is configured to use its local authentication source to authenticate users.



NOTE: It is assumed that the CPPM is configured to provide the SRX Series device with user authentication and identity information, including the username, a list of the names of any groups that the user belongs to, the IP addresses of the devices used, and the device posture token.

- SRX Series device running Junos OS that includes the integrated ClearPass feature.
- A server farm composed of six servers, all in the servers-zone:
 - marketing-server-protected (203.0.113.23)
 - human-resources-server (203.0.113.25)
 - accounting-server (203.0.113.72)
 - public-server (203.0.113.91)
 - corporate-server (203.0.113.71)
 - sales-server (203.0.113.81)

- AC 7010 Aruba Cloud Services Controller running ArubaOS.
- Aruba AP wireless access controller running ArubaOS.

The Aruba AP is connected to the AC7010.

Wireless users connect to the CPPM through the Aruba AP.

- Juniper Networks EX4300 switch used as the wired 802.1 access device.

Wired users connect to the CPPM using the EX4300 switch.

- Six end-user systems:
 - Three wired network-connected PCs running Microsoft OS
 - Two BYOD devices that access the network through the Aruba AP access device
 - One wireless laptop running Microsoft OS

Overview

You can configure the user query function to enable the SRX Series device to obtain authenticated user identity information from the CPPM for an individual user when the

SRX Series device's ClearPass authentication table does not contain an entry for that user. The SRX Series device bases the query on the IP address of the user's device that generated the traffic issuing from the access request.

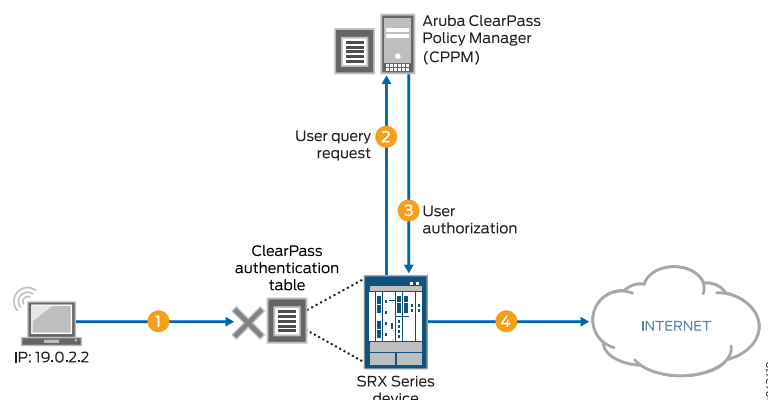
There are a number of reasons why the SRX Series device might not already have authentication information from the CPPM for a particular user. For example, it can happen that a user has not already been authenticated by the CPPM. This condition could occur if a user joined the network through an access layer that is not on a managed switch or WLAN.

The user query function provides a means for the SRX Series device to obtain user authentication and identity information from the CPPM for a user for whom the CPPM did not post that information to the SRX Series device using the Web API. When the SRX Series device receives an access request from a user for which there is not an entry in its ClearPass authentication table, it will automatically query the CPPM for it if this function is configured.

Figure 25 on page 276 shows the user query flow process, which encompasses the following steps:

1. A user attempts to access a resource. The SRX Series device receives the traffic requesting access. The SRX Series device searches for an entry for the user in its ClearPass authentication table, but none is found.
2. The SRX Series device requests authentication for the user from the CPPM.
3. The CPPM authenticates the user and returns the user authentication and identity information to the SRX Series device.
4. The SRX Series device creates an entry for the user in its ClearPass authentication table, and grants the user access to the Internet.

Figure 25: User Query Function Process



For details on the parameters that you can use to control when the SRX Series device issues the query, see [“Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function”](#) on page 271.



NOTE: You can also manually query the CPPM for authentication information for an individual user when this feature is configured.

The ClearPass endpoint API requires use of OAuth (RFC 6749) to authenticate and authorize access to it. For the SRX Series device to be able to query the CPPM for individual user authentication and authorization information, it must acquire an access token. For this purpose, the SRX Series device uses the Client Credentials access token grant type, which is one of the two types that ClearPass supports.

As administrator of the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM), you must create an API client on the CPPM with the `grant_type` set to `client_credentials`. You can then configure the SRX Series device to use that information to obtain an access token. Here is an example of the message format for doing this:

```
curl https://{Server}/api/oauth -- insecure -- data
"grant_type=client_credentials&client_id=Client2&client_secret=
m2Tvcklsi9je0kH9UTwuXQwlutKLC2obaDL54/fC2DzC"
```

A successful request from the SRX Series device to obtain an access token results in a response that is similar to the following example:

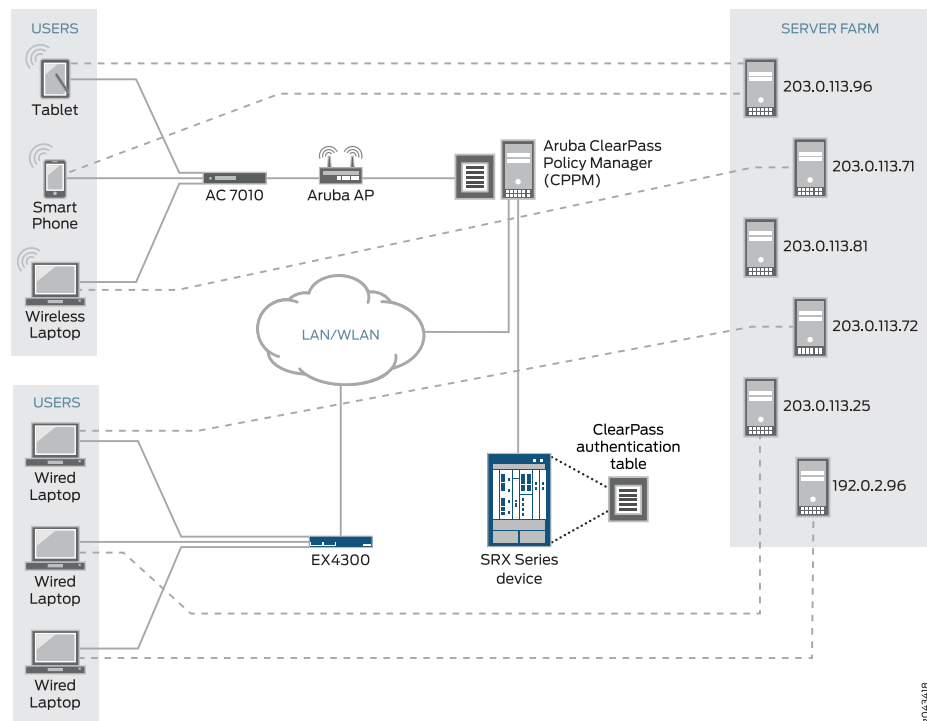
```
{
  "access_token": "ae79d980adf83ecb8e0eaca6516a50a784e81a4e",
  "expires_in": 2880,
  "token_type": "Bearer",
  "scope": "nu";
}
```

Before the access token expires, the SRX Series device can obtain a new token using the same message.

Topology

[Figure 26 on page 278](#) shows the overall topology for this deployment, which encompasses the user query environment.

Figure 26: Topology for the Overall Deployment that Includes User Query



Configuration

To enable and configure the user query function, perform these tasks:

- [Configure the User Query Function \(Optional\) on page 279](#)
- [Manually Issuing a Query to the CPPM for Individual User Authentication Information \(Optional\) on page 281](#)

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following statements, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the statements into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
  web-server cp-webserver address 192.0.2.199
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba_clearpass user-query
  ca-certificate RADUIServerCertificate.crt
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query client-id
  client-1
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
  client-secret 7cTr13#
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query token-api
  "api/aouth"
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query IP
  address "api/vi/insight/endpoint/ip/$IP$"
```

Configure the User Query Function (Optional)

Step-by-Step Procedure Configure the user query function to allow the SRX Series device to connect automatically to the ClearPass client to make requests for authentication information for individual users.

The user query function supplements input from the CPPM sent using the Web API. The Web API daemon does not need to be enabled for the user query function to work. For the user query function, the SRX Series device is the HTTP client. By it sends HTTPS requests to the CPPM on port 443.

To enable the SRX Series device to make individual user queries automatically:

1. Configure Aruba ClearPass as the authentication source for user query requests, and configure the ClearPass webserver name and its IP address. The SRX Series device requires this information to contact the ClearPass webserver.



NOTE: You must specify `aruba-clearpass` as the authentication source.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query web-server
cp-webserver address 192.0.2.199
```



NOTE: You can configure only one ClearPass webserver.

Optionally, configure the port number and connection method, or accept the following values for these parameters. This example assumes the default values.

- `connect-method` (default is HTTPS)
- `port` (by default, the SRX Series device sends HTTPS requests to the CPPM on port 443)

However, if you were to explicitly configure the connection method and port, you would use these statements:

```
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
web-server cp-webserver connect method <https/http>
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
web-server cp-webserver port port-number
```

2. (Optional) Configure the ClearPass CA certificate file for the SRX Series device to use to verify the ClearPass webserver. (The default certificate is assumed if none is configured.)

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba_clearpass user-query ca-certificate
RADUIServerCertificate.crt
```

The ca-certificate enables the SRX Series device to verify the authenticity of the ClearPass webserver and that it is trusted.

Before you configure the certificate, as administrator of the ClearPass device you must take the following actions:

- Export the ClearPass webserver's certificate from CPPM and import the certificate to the SRX Series device.
- Configure the ca-certificate as the path, including its CA filename, as located on the SRX Series device. In this example, the following path is used:

```
/var/tmp/RADUIServerCertificate.crt
```

3. Configure the client ID and the secret that the SRX Series device requires to obtain an access token required for user queries.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query client-id client-1
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query client-secret
7cTr13#
```

The client ID and the client secret are required values. They must be consistent with the client configuration on the CPPM.



TIP: When you configure the client on the CPPM, copy the client ID and secret to use in the SRX Series device configuration.

4. Configure the token API that is used in generating the URL for acquiring an access token.



NOTE: You must specify the token API. It does not have a default value.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
token-api "api/oauth"
```

In this example, the token API is `api/oauth`. It is combined with the following information to generate the complete URL for acquiring an access token `https://192.0.2.199/api/oauth`

- The connection method is HTTPS.
 - In this example, the IP address of the ClearPass webserver is 192.0.2.199.
-

5. Configure the query API to use for querying individual user authentication and identity information.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query query-api
'api/vi/insight/endpoint/ip/$IP$'
```

In this example, the query-api is `api/vi/insight/endpoint/ip/IP`. It is combined with the URL `https://192.0.2.199/api/oauth` resulting in `https://192.0.2.199/api/oauth/api/vi/insight/endpoint/ip/IP`.

The `$IP` variable is replaced with the IP address of the end-user's device for the user whose authentication information the SRX Series is requesting.

6. Configure the amount of time in seconds to delay before the SRX Series device sends the individual user query.

```
[edit services user-identification]
user@host# set authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query delay-query-time
10
```

Manually Issuing a Query to the CPPM for Individual User Authentication Information (Optional)

Step-by-Step Procedure

- Configure the following statement to manually request authentication information for the user whose device's IP address is 203.0.113.46.

```
root@device>request service user-identification authentication-source
aruba-clearpass user-query address 203.0.113.46
```

Verification

Use the following procedures to verify that the user query function is behaving as expected:

- [Verifying That the ClearPass Webserver Is Online on page 281](#)
- [Enabling Trace and Checking the Output on page 282](#)
- [Determining If the User Query Function Is Executing Normally on page 282](#)
- [Determining If a Problem Exists by Relying on User Query Counters on page 282](#)

Verifying That the ClearPass Webserver Is Online

- Purpose** Ensure that the ClearPass webserver is online, which is the first mean of verifying that the user query request can complete successfully.

Action Enter the **show service user-identification authentication-source authentication-source user-query status** command to verify that ClearPass is online.

```
show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query status
```

```
Authentication source: aruba-clearpass
Web server Address: 192.0.2.199
Status: Online
Current connections: 0
```

Enabling Trace and Checking the Output

Purpose Display in the trace log any error messages generated by the user query function.

Action Set the trace log file name and enable trace using the following commands:

```
set system services webapi debug-log trace-log-1
set services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass traceoptions flag user-query
```

Determining If the User Query Function Is Executing Normally

Purpose Determine if there is a problem with user query function behavior.

Action Check syslog messages to determine if the user query request failed.

If it failed, the following error message is reported:

```
LOG1: sending user query for IP <ip-address> to ClearPass web server failed.
:reason
```

The reason might be “server unconnected” or “socket error”.

Determining If a Problem Exists by Relying on User Query Counters

Purpose Display the user query counters to home in on the problem, if one exists, by entering the **show service user-identification authentication-source authentication-source user-query counters** command.



NOTE: The timestamp returned by ClearPass in response to the user query request can be specified in any of the ISO 8601 formats, including the format that includes a time zone.

Action `show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query counters`

Authentication source: `aruba-clearpass`

Web server Address: Address: *ip-address*

Access token: *token-string*

RE quest sent number: *counter*

Routing received number: *counter*

Time of last response: *timestamp*

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 271](#)
 - [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
 - [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)

Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication Threat and Attack Function

- [Understanding How the Integrated ClearPass Feature Detects Threats and Attacks and Notifies the CPPM on page 285](#)
- [SRX Series Threat and Attack Logs Sent to Aruba ClearPass on page 287](#)
- [Example: Configuring Integrated ClearPass to Filter and Rate-limit Threat and Attack Logs on page 289](#)

Understanding How the Integrated ClearPass Feature Detects Threats and Attacks and Notifies the CPPM

The integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature allows you to integrate your SRX Series device with the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) to obtain authenticated user identity information. It also allows the SRX Series device to send attack and threat logs to the CPPM. This topic focuses on sending attack and threat logs to the CPPM.

When the SRX Series device features detect threat and attack events, the event is recorded in the SRX Series device event log. The SRX Series device uses syslog to forward the logs to the CPPM. The CPPM can evaluate the logs and take action based on matching conditions. As administrator of ClearPass, you can use the information from the SRX Series device and define appropriate actions on the CPPM to harden your security.

Junos OS on the SRX Series device generates over 100 different types of log entries issued by more than 10 of its modules. Among the SRX Series device features that generate threat and attack logs are SCREENS, IDP, and UTM. To avoid overburdening the SRX Series device and the log server, the integrated ClearPass feature allows you to configure the SRX Series device to send to the CPPM only attack and threat log entries that were written to the event log in response to activity detected by the SCREENS, IDP, and UTM security features.

You can set the following conditions to control the log transmission:

- A log stream filter to ensure that only threat and attack logs are sent.
- A rate limiter to control the transmission volume. The SRX Series device log transmission will not exceed the rate-limiting conditions that you set.

For the CPPM to analyze the log information that the SRX Series sends to it, the content must be formatted in a standard, structured manner. The SRX Series log transmission follows the syslog protocol, which has a message format that allows vendor-specific extensions to be provided in a structured way.

Here is an example of an attack log generated by IDP:

```
<14>1 2014-07-24T1358.362+08:00 bjsolar RT_IDP - IDP_ATTACK_LOG_EVENT
[junos@2636.1.1.1.2.86 epoch-time="1421996988" message-type="SIG"
source-address="192.0.2.66" source-port="32796" destination-address="192.0.2.76"
destination-port="21" protocol-name="TCP" service-name="SERVICE_IDP"
application-name="NONE" rule-name="1" rulebase-name="IPS" policy-name="idpengine"
export-id="4641"repeat-count="0" action="NONE" threat-severity="MEDIUM"
attack-name="FTPROOT" nat-source-address="0.0.0.0" nat-source-port="0"
nat-destination-address="0.0.0.0" nat-destination-port="0" elapsed-time="0"
inbound-bytes="0" outbound-bytes="0" inbound-packets="0" outbound-packets="0"
source-zone-name="untrust" source-interface-name="ge-0/0/1.0"
destination-zone-name="trust" destination-interface-name="ge-0/0/7.0"
packet-log-id="0" alert="no" username="N/A" roles="N/A" message="-"]
```

Table 25 on page 286 uses the content of this example IDP attack log to identify the parts of an attack log entry. See “SRX Series Threat and Attack Logs Sent to Aruba ClearPass” on page 287 for further details on types of attack and threat logs.

Table 25: Attack Log Fields Using Example Log

Log Entry Component	Meaning	Format	Example
Priority	pri = LOG_USER + severity. Version is always 1	pri version	<14>1
Time and Time Zone	When the log was recorded and in what time zone.	y-m-dThs.ms+time zone <ul style="list-style-type: none"> y = year m=month d = day T+hours 	2014-07-24T1358.362+08:00
Device/Host Name	Name of the device from which the event log was sent. This value is configured by the user.	string, hostname	bjsolar
Service Name	SRX Series feature that issued the event log.	string service	SERVICE_IDP
Application Name	Application that generated the log entry.	string application-name	NONE

Table 25: Attack Log Fields Using Example Log (*continued*)

Log Entry Component	Meaning	Format	Example
PID	<p>Process ID.</p> <p>The process ID is not meaningful in this context, so <i>pid</i> is replaced by “-”.</p> <p>The value “-” is a placeholder for process ID.</p>	<i>pid</i>	-
Errmsg Tag	Log ID name, error message tag.	string, <i>log-name and tag</i>	IDP_ATTACK_LOG_EVENT
Errmsg Tag Square Bracket	Log content enclosed in square brackets.	[]	-
OID	Product ID provided by the chassis daemon (chassisd).	junos@oid	junos@2636.1.1.1.2.86
Epoch Time	The time when the log was generated after the epoch.	<i>number</i>	1421996988

Related Documentation

- [SRX Series Threat and Attack Logs Sent to Aruba ClearPass on page 287](#)
- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)
- [Example: Configuring the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement User Query Function on page 274](#)

SRX Series Threat and Attack Logs Sent to Aruba ClearPass

The SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature collaborates with Aruba ClearPass in protecting a company’s resources against potential and actual attacks through use of attack and threat event logs. These logs that are generated by the SRX Series SCREENS, IDP, and UTM components clearly identify the types of attacks and threats that threaten a company’s network security.

The SRX Series device filters from the overall log entries the logs that report on threat and attack events, and it forwards these log entries to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) to be used in assessing and enforcing the company’s security policy. The SRX Series device transmits the logs in volumes determined by the rate-limiting conditions that you set.

[Table 26 on page 288](#) identifies the types of threat and attack log entries and the events that they represent.

Table 26: Threat and Attack Log Entries Generated by SRX Series Components

Log Type	Description
RT_SCREEN_ICMP	ICMP attack
RT_SCREEN_ICMP_LS	
RT_SCREEN_IP	IP attack
RT_SCREEN_IP_LS	
RT_SCREEN_TCP	TCP attack
RT_SCREEN_TCP_LS	
RT_SCREEN_TCP_DST_IP	TCP destination IP attack
RT_SCREEN_TCP_DST_IP_LS	
RT_SCREEN_TCP_SRC_IP	TCP source IP attack
RT_SCREEN_TCP_SRC_IP_LS	
RT_SCREEN_UDP	UDP attack
RT_SCREEN_UDP_LS	
AV_VIRUS_DETECTED_MT	Virus infection
AV_VIRUS_DETECTED_MT_LS	A virus was detected by the antivirus scanner.
ANTISPAM_SPAM_DETECTED_MT	spam
ANTISPAM_SPAM_DETECTED_MT_LS	The identified e-mail was detected to be spam.
IDP_APPDDOS_APP_ATTACK_EVENT	Application-level distributed denial of service (AppDDoS) attack
IDP_APPDDOS_APP_ATTACK_EVENT_LS	The AppDDoS attack occurred when the number of client transactions exceeded the user-configured connection, context, and time binding thresholds.
IDP_APPDDOS_APP_STATE_EVENT	AppDDoS attack
IDP_APPDDOS_APP_STATE_EVENT_LS	The AppDDoS state transition occurred when the number of application transactions exceeded the user-configured connection or context thresholds.
IDP_ATTACK_LOG_EVENT	Attack discovered by IDP
IDP_ATTACK_LOG_EVENT_LS	IDP generated a log entry for an attack.

Example: Configuring Integrated ClearPass to Filter and Rate-limit Threat and Attack Logs

The SRX Series device can dynamically send to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) information about threats and attacks identified by its security modules that protect network resources. It detects attack and attack threats that pertain to the activity of specific devices and their users, and it generates corresponding logs. To control this transmission, you must configure the type of logs to be sent and the rate at which they are sent. You can then use this information in setting policy rules on the CPPM to harden your network security.

This example shows how to configure the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature to filter and transmit only threat and attack logs to the CPPM and to control the volume and rate at which the SRX Series device transmits them.

- [Requirements on page 289](#)
- [Overview on page 289](#)
- [Configuration on page 291](#)

Requirements

The topology for this example uses the following hardware and software components:

- Aruba CPPM implemented in a virtual machine (VM) on a server. The CPPM is configured to use its local authentication source to authenticate users.
- SRX Series device running Junos OS that includes the integrated ClearPass feature. The SRX Series device is connected to the Juniper Networks EX4300 switch and to the Internet. The SRX Series device communicates with ClearPass over a secure connection.
- Juniper Networks EX4300 switch used as the wired 802.1 access device. The EX4300 Layer 2 switch connects the endpoint users to the network. The SRX Series device is connected to the switch.
- Wired, network-connected PC running Microsoft OS. The system is directly connected to the EX4300 switch.

Threat and attack logs are written for activity from these devices triggered by events that the security features catch and protect against.

Overview

The SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature participates with Aruba ClearPass in protecting your company's resources against actual and potential attacks. The SRX Series device informs the CPPM about threats to your network resources and attacks against them through logs that it sends. You can then use this information to assess configuration of your security policy on the CPPM. Based on this information, you can harden your security in regard to individual users or devices.

To control the behavior of this feature, you must configure the SRX Series device to filter for attack and threat log entries and set rate-limiting conditions.

You can tune the behavior of this function in the following ways:

- Set a filter to direct the SRX Series device to send only threat and attack logs to the CPPM. This filter allows you to ensure that the SRX Series device and the log server do not need to handle irrelevant logs.
- Establish rate limit conditions to control the volume of logs that are sent.

You set the rate-limit parameter to control the volume and rate that logs are sent. For example, you can set the rate-limit parameter to 1000 to specify that a maximum of 1000 logs are sent to ClearPass in 1 second. In this case, if there is an attempt to send 1015 logs, the number of logs over the limit—15 logs, in this case—would be dropped. The logs are not queued or buffered.

You can configure a maximum of three log streams with each individual log defined by its destination, log format, filter, and rate limit. Log messages are sent to all configured log streams. Each stream is individually rate-limited.



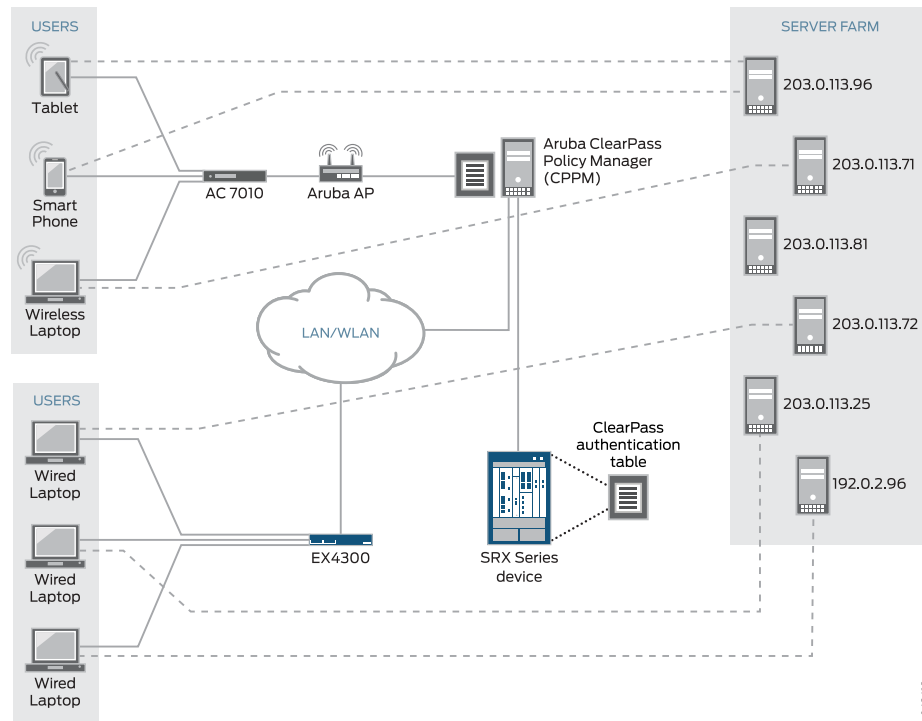
NOTE: To support rate-limiting, log messages are sent out from the device's local SPU at a divided rate. In the configuration process, the Routing Engine assigns a divided rate to each SPU. The divided rate is equal to the configured rate divided by the number of SPUs on the device:

$$\text{divided-rate} = \text{configured-rate} / \text{number-of-SPUs}$$

Topology

Figure 27 on page 291 shows the topology for this example.

Figure 27: Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Deployment Topology



Configuration

This example covers how to configure a filter to select threat and attack logs to be sent to ClearPass. It also covers how to set a rate limiter to control the volume of logs sent during a given period. It includes these parts:

- [Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement to Filter for Threat and Attack Logs Sent to the CPPM on page 292](#)
- [Results on page 292](#)

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following statements, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the statements into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security log stream threat-attack-logs host 203.0.113.47
set security log mode stream
set security log source-interface ge-0/0/1.0
set security log stream to_clearpass format sd-syslog
set security log stream to_clearpass filter threat-attack
set security log stream to_clearpass rate-limit 1000
```

Configuring Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement to Filter for Threat and Attack Logs Sent to the CPPM

Step-by-Step Procedure

1. Specify a name for the log stream and the IP address of its destination.

```
[edit security]  
user@host# set security log stream threat-attack-logs host 203.0.113.47
```
2. Set the log mode to stream.

```
[edit security]  
user@host# set log mode stream
```
3. Set the host source interface number.

```
[edit security]  
user@host# set log source-interface ge-0/0/1.0
```
4. Set the log stream to use the structured syslog format for sending logs to ClearPass through syslog.

```
[edit security]  
user@host# set log stream to_clearpass format sd-syslog
```
5. Specify the type of events to be logged.

```
[edit security]  
user@host# set log stream to_clearpass filter threat-attack
```



NOTE: This configuration is mutually exclusive in relation to the current category set for the filter.

6. Set rate limiting for this stream. The range is from 1 through 65,535.
This example specifies that up to 1000 logs per second can be sent to ClearPass. When the maximum is reached, any additional logs are dropped.

```
[edit security]  
user@host# set log stream to_clearpass rate-limit 1000
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration for interfaces by entering the **show interfaces** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the instructions in this example to correct the configuration.

```
mode stream;  
source-interface ge-0/0/1.0;  
stream threat-attack-logs {
```



```
    host {  
        203.0.113.47;  
    }  
}  
stream to_clearpass {  
    format sd-syslog;  
    filter threat-attack;  
    rate-limit {  
        1000;  
    }  
}
```

Related Documentation

- [Understanding How the Integrated ClearPass Feature Detects Threats and Attacks and Notifies the CPPM on page 285](#)
- [SRX Series Threat and Attack Logs Sent to Aruba ClearPass on page 287](#)
- [Understanding the SRX Series Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement Feature on page 225](#)
- [Understanding How ClearPass Initiates a Session and Communicates User Authentication Information to the SRX Series Device Using the Web API on page 229](#)

PART 6

Configuration Statements and Operational Commands

- [Configuration Statements on page 297](#)
- [Operational Commands on page 463](#)

Configuration Statements

- [actions \(Services SSL Proxy\) on page 302](#)
- [active-directory-access on page 304](#)
- [active-directory-authentication-table on page 306](#)
- [address \(Services\) on page 307](#)
- [address \(Services User Identification\) on page 307](#)
- [admin-search on page 308](#)
- [application \(Security Policies\) on page 309](#)
- [application-services \(Security Policies\) on page 310](#)
- [assemble on page 311](#)
- [auth-only-browser on page 312](#)
- [auth-user-agent on page 313](#)
- [authentication-entry-timeout \(Services User Identification\) on page 314](#)
- [authentication-source \(Services User Identification ClearPass\) on page 315](#)
- [authentication-source \(Services User Identification Device Identity\) on page 316](#)
- [banner \(Access FTP HTTP Telnet Authentication\) on page 317](#)
- [banner \(Access Web Authentication\) on page 318](#)
- [base-distinguished-name on page 318](#)
- [ca-certificate \(Services User Identification\) on page 319](#)
- [ca-profile \(Services\) on page 319](#)
- [captive-portal \(Services UAC\) on page 320](#)
- [captive-portal \(Services UAC Policy\) on page 320](#)
- [certificate \(System Services\) on page 321](#)
- [certificate-key \(System Services\) on page 322](#)
- [certificate-verification on page 323](#)
- [client \(System Services\) on page 324](#)
- [client-id \(Services User Identification\) on page 324](#)
- [client-group on page 325](#)
- [client-idle-timeout \(Access Profile\) on page 325](#)

- [client-name-filter](#) on page 326
- [client-secret](#) (Services User Identification) on page 327
- [client-session-timeout](#) (Access Profile) on page 327
- [configuration-file](#) on page 328
- [connect-method](#) (Services User Identification) on page 328
- [count](#) on page 329
- [custom-ciphers](#) on page 330
- [debug-level](#) (System Services) on page 331
- [debug-log](#) (System Services) on page 332
- [default-certificate](#) (System Services) on page 332
- [default-profile](#) on page 333
- [delay-query-time](#) (Services User Identification) on page 334
- [distinguished-name](#) (Access) on page 335
- [domain-name](#) (Access Profile) on page 335
- [enable-flow-tracing](#) (Services) on page 336
- [enable-session-cache](#) on page 336
- [end-user-profile](#) on page 337
- [fail](#) on page 338
- [file](#) (Services) on page 339
- [files](#) (Services) on page 340
- [file](#) (Services User Identification) on page 341
- [file](#) (System Logging) on page 342
- [filter](#) (Security) on page 344
- [firewall-authentication](#) on page 345
- [firewall-authentication](#) (Security) on page 346
- [firewall-authentication](#) (Security Policies) on page 347
- [firewall-authentication](#) (User Identification) on page 348
- [firewall-authentication-service](#) on page 349
- [firewall-user](#) on page 349
- [flag](#) (Services) on page 350
- [from-zone](#) (Security Policies) on page 351
- [ftp](#) (Access) on page 353
- [group-profile](#) (Access) on page 354
- [http](#) (Access) on page 355
- [http](#) (Services) on page 356
- [http](#) (Services User Identification) on page 357
- [http](#) (System Services) on page 358

- [https \(Services\) on page 359](#)
- [https \(Services User Identification\) on page 360](#)
- [https \(System Services\) on page 362](#)
- [infranet-controller on page 363](#)
- [interface \(Services\) on page 364](#)
- [interval \(Services\) on page 365](#)
- [ip-address \(Access Profile\) on page 365](#)
- [ip-user-mapping on page 366](#)
- [ldap-options on page 367](#)
- [ldap-server on page 368](#)
- [level \(Services\) on page 369](#)
- [level \(Services User Identification\) on page 370](#)
- [lifetime-seconds \(Security IKE\) on page 371](#)
- [link \(Access\) on page 371](#)
- [local-authentication-table on page 372](#)
- [log \(Services\) on page 373](#)
- [login \(Access\) on page 374](#)
- [match \(Services\) on page 374](#)
- [network \(Access\) on page 375](#)
- [no-remote-trace \(Services\) on page 375](#)
- [no-remote-trace \(Services User Identification\) on page 376](#)
- [no-user-query \(Services User Identification\) on page 376](#)
- [no-tls-certificate-check on page 377](#)
- [pass-through on page 378](#)
- [password \(Access\) on page 379](#)
- [password \(Services\) on page 379](#)
- [password \(System Services\) on page 380](#)
- [permit \(Security Policies\) on page 381](#)
- [pki-local-certificate \(Services\) on page 382](#)
- [policies on page 383](#)
- [pool \(Access\) on page 388](#)
- [port \(Access LDAP\) on page 389](#)
- [port \(Services\) on page 390](#)
- [port \(System Services\) on page 391](#)
- [preferred-ciphers on page 392](#)
- [prefix \(Access IPv6\) on page 392](#)
- [priority \(Security User Identification\) on page 393](#)

- [protocol-version](#) on page 394
- [query-api](#) (Services User Identification) on page 395
- [radius-options](#) (Access) on page 396
- [radius-server](#) (Access) on page 397
- [range](#) (Access) on page 398
- [rate-limit](#) (Security Log) on page 399
- [redirect-traffic](#) on page 400
- [redirect-url](#) on page 401
- [retry](#) (Access LDAP) on page 402
- [retry](#) (Access RADIUS) on page 403
- [revert-interval](#) (Access LDAP) on page 403
- [revert-interval](#) (Access RADIUS) on page 404
- [root-ca](#) (Services) on page 404
- [routing-instance](#) (Access LDAP) on page 405
- [routing-instance](#) (Access RADIUS) on page 405
- [search](#) on page 406
- [search-filter](#) on page 407
- [secret](#) (Access Profile) on page 407
- [securid-server](#) on page 408
- [separator](#) on page 409
- [server-certificate](#) (Services) on page 409
- [server-certificate-subject](#) on page 410
- [session-options](#) (Access Profile) on page 410
- [size](#) (Services) on page 411
- [source-address](#) (Access LDAP) on page 411
- [source-address](#) (Access RADIUS) on page 412
- [source-end-user-profile](#) on page 413
- [source-identity-log](#) (Security) on page 414
- [ssl](#) (Services) on page 415
- [ssl-termination-profile](#) on page 417
- [success](#) on page 417
- [system-generated-certificate](#) on page 418
- [telnet](#) (Access) on page 418
- [termination](#) (Services) on page 419
- [test-only-mode](#) on page 420
- [then](#) (Security Policies) on page 421
- [timeout](#) (Access LDAP) on page 423

- [timeout \(Access RADIUS\) on page 423](#)
- [timeout \(Services\) on page 424](#)
- [timeout-action on page 425](#)
- [tls-min-version on page 426](#)
- [tls-peer-name on page 426](#)
- [tls-timeout on page 427](#)
- [tls-type on page 428](#)
- [token-api \(Services User Identification\) on page 429](#)
- [to-zone \(Security Policies\) on page 430](#)
- [traceoptions \(Access\) on page 433](#)
- [traceoptions \(Active Directory Access\) on page 435](#)
- [traceoptions \(Security Firewall Authentication\) on page 437](#)
- [traceoptions \(Services SSL\) on page 438](#)
- [traceoptions \(Services UAC\) on page 440](#)
- [traceoptions \(Services User Identification\) on page 441](#)
- [trusted-ca \(Services\) on page 442](#)
- [uac-policy \(Application Services\) on page 443](#)
- [uac-service on page 444](#)
- [unified-access-control \(Security\) on page 445](#)
- [unified-access-control \(Services\) on page 446](#)
- [user-group-mapping on page 447](#)
- [user-identification \(Services\) on page 449](#)
- [webapi \(System Services\) on page 452](#)
- [webapi-clear-text \(Security\) on page 453](#)
- [webapi-ssl \(Security\) on page 453](#)
- [web-authentication on page 454](#)
- [web-authentication \(Access\) on page 455](#)
- [web-authentication \(Interfaces\) on page 456](#)
- [web-management \(System Services\) on page 457](#)
- [web-redirect on page 460](#)
- [web-redirect-to-https on page 460](#)
- [web-server \(Services\) on page 461](#)
- [whitelist \(Services\) on page 461](#)
- [wins-server \(Access\) on page 462](#)

actions (Services SSL Proxy)

Syntax

```
actions {
  crl {
    disable;
    if-not-present (allow | drop);
    ignore-hold-instruction-code;
  }
  disable-session-resumption;
  ignore-server-auth-failure;
  logs {
    all;
    errors;
    info;
    sessions-allowed;
    sessions-dropped;
    sessions-ignored;
    sessions-whitelisted;
    warning;
  }
  renegotiation {
    (allow | allow-secure | drop);
  }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit services ssl proxy profile *profile-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. The **crl** statement is supported from 15.1X49-D30.

Description Specify the logging and traffic related actions.

- Options**
- **crl**—Specify the certificate revocation actions.
 - **disable**—Disable CRL verification.
 - **if-not-present**—Specify actions for sessions.
 - **allow**—Allow sessions when CRL information is not available.
 - **drop**—Drop sessions when CRL information is not available.
 - **ignore-hold-instruction-code**—Ignore the unconfirmed (on hold) revocation status, and accept a certificate.
 - **disable-session-resumption**—Disable session resumption.
 - **ignore-server-auth-failure**—Ignore server authentication failure.
 - **log**—Specify the logging actions.
 - **all**—Log all events.
 - **errors**—Log all error events.

- **info**—Log all information events.
- **sessions-allowed**—Log SSL session allowed events after an error.
- **sessions-dropped**—Log only SSL session dropped events.
- **sessions-ignored**—Log session ignored events.
- **sessions-whitelisted**—Log SSL session whitelisted events.
- **warning**—Log all warning events.
- **renegotiation**—Specify the renegotiation options.
 - **allow**—Allow secure and nonsecure renegotiation.
 - **allow-secure**—Allow secure negotiation only.
 - **drop**—Drop session on renegotiation request.

Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
---------------------------------	---

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• SSL Proxy Overview on page 11• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy on page 32
------------------------------	--

active-directory-access

Syntax

```
active-directory-access {  
  domain domain-name {  
    user username;  
    password password;  
    domain-controller domain-controller-name {  
      address domain-controller-address;  
    }  
    ip-user-mapping {  
      discovery-method {  
        wmi {  
          event-log-scanning-interval seconds;  
          initial-event-log-timespan hours;  
        }  
      }  
    }  
  }  
  user-group-mapping {  
    ldap {  
      authentication-algorithm {  
        simple;  
      }  
      ssl;  
      base base;  
      user name {  
        password password;  
      }  
      address ip-address {  
        port port;  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit services user-identification]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.

Description Identify the domain and domain controllers where the integrated user firewall feature is implemented; configure the IP address-to-user mapping information and the user-to-group mapping information for accessing the LDAP server.

Options

- domain *domain-name***—Required. Name of the domain; the length of the name ranges from 1 through 64 characters. The SRX Series device can have the integrated user firewall feature configured in a maximum of two domains.
- user *username***—Required. Active Directory account name.
- Range:** 1 through 64 characters.
- password *password***—Required. Password of the Active Directory account.

Range: 1 through 128 characters.

domain-controller *domain-controller-name*—Required. Name of the domain controller; the length of the name can range from 1 through 64 characters. A maximum of 10 domain controllers can be configured.

address *domain-controller-address*—Required. IP address of the domain controller.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege	security—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level	security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• user-identification (Services) on page 449• LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152
------------------------------	---

active-directory-authentication-table

Syntax	<pre>active-directory-authentication-table { priority <i>priority</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security user-identification authentication-source]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	<p>An authentication table is generated by polling Active Directory domain controllers for source identity information about active users. Each entry in the table correlates an authenticated user with an IP address and associated user groups. That information is used for matching in IP-based firewall policies. The user information must be retrieved from the table before policy lookup can proceed and traffic is allowed to pass through the firewall.</p>
Options	<p>priority <i>priority</i>—Specify the priority of the Active Directory authentication table. The priority determines the sequence for searching among various other authentication tables to retrieve a user role. The priorities of the following tables are considered: local authentication table, firewall authentication table, Active Directory authentication table, and UAC authentication table.</p> <p>Each authentication table is given a unique priority value. The lower the value, the higher the priority. A table with priority 120 is searched before a table with priority 200. Setting the priority value of a table to 0 is equivalent to disabling the table and eliminating it from the search sequence.</p> <p>Range: A unique value from 0 through 65535.</p> <p>Default: The default priority of the Active Directory authentication table is 125.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>authentication-source (Security)</i>• Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143• <i>Understanding User Role Firewalls</i>• <i>Understanding the User Identification Table</i>

address (Services)

Syntax	<code>address <i>ip-address</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller <i>hostname</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the IP address of the IC Series device with which the SRX Series devices should communicate.</p> <p>This statement is required when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p><code>services</code>—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p><code>services-control</code>—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding Unified Access Control on page 103 • Acquiring User Role Information from an Active Directory Authentication Server on page 103


address (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>address (<i>ip-address</i> <i>hostname</i>);</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query web-server]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configure for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature the address of the ClearPass webserver that the SRX Series device communicates with. The SRX Series device requests user authentication and identity information for an individual user from the ClearPass webserver whose address is configured. If you configure the user query function, the SRX Series device can obtain this information for a specific user when it does not receive it from the ClearPass Policy Manager through Web API POST requests.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p><code>services</code>—To view this statement in the configuration</p> <p><code>services-control</code>—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

admin-search

Syntax	admin-search { distinguished-name <i>distinguished-name</i> ; password <i>password</i> ; }
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options search], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options search]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify that a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) administrator search is performed. To perform an administrator search, you must specify administrator credentials, which are used in the bind as part of performing the search.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. Default: Anonymous search. To perform an administrator search, you must specify administrator credentials, which are used in the bind as part of performing the search.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

application (Security Policies)

Syntax	<pre> application { [application]; any; } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> match] [edit security policies global policy <i>policy-name</i> match]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the IP or remote procedure call (RPC) application or set of applications to be used as match criteria.
Options	<p><i>application-name-or-set</i>—Name of the predefined or custom application or application set used as match criteria.</p> <p><i>any</i>—Any predefined or custom applications or application sets.</p>
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p>NOTE: A custom application that does not use a well-known destination port for the application will not be included in the <i>any</i> option, and must be named explicitly.</p> </div> </div>	
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Security Policies Overview</i>

application-services (Security Policies)

Syntax	<pre>application-services { application-firewall { rule-set <i>rule-set-name</i>; } application-traffic-control { rule-set <i>rule-set-name</i>; } gprs-gtp-profile <i>profile-name</i>; gprs-sctp-profile <i>profile-name</i>; idp; redirect-wx reverse-redirect-wx; ssl-proxy { profile-name <i>profile-name</i>; } uac-policy { captive-portal <i>captive-portal</i>; } utm-policy <i>policy-name</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 11.1.
Description	Enable application services within a security policy.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Application Firewall Overview</i>

assemble

Syntax	<pre>assemble { common-name <i>common-name</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify that a user's LDAP distinguished name (DN) is assembled through the use of a common name identifier, the username, and base distinguished name.
Options	common-name <i>common-name</i> —Common name identifier used as a prefix for the username during the assembly of the user's distinguished name. For example, uid specifies “user id,” and cn specifies “common name.”
Required Privilege Level	access —To view this statement in the configuration. access-control —To add this statement to the configuration.

auth-only-browser

Syntax	<code>auth-only-browser <auth-user-agent [<i>user-agent</i>] >;</code> <code>auth-only-browser;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication pass-through] [edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90.
Description	<p>Configure firewall authentication to ignore non-browser HTTP/HTTPS traffic. This feature allows you to ensure that unauthenticated users issuing access requests through HTTP/HTTPS browsers are presented with a captive portal interface to allow them to authenticate. By default, firewall authentication responds to all HTTP/HTTPS traffic.</p> <p>It can happen that non-browser HTTP/HTTPS services running in the background can trigger captive portal authentication, creating a race condition that suppresses presentation of the captive portal interface to the HTTP/HTTPS browser user.</p> <p>When auth-only-browser is configured, non-browser HTTP traffic is dropped to allow for captive portal to be presented to unauthenticated users who request access using a browser.</p>
Options	<p>auth-user-agent <i>user-agent</i>—Allow the SRX Series device to use the user-agent strings that you specify to verify that the browser traffic is HTTP/HTTPS traffic. Firewall authentication checks the strings against the User-Agent field in the browser header. You can specify only one value for this parameter. It must not contain spaces and it does not need to be enclosed in parenthesis. For example, auth-user-agent might specify Opera1 as one of its values.</p> <p>You can use the auth-user-agent parameter alone for pass-through or user-firewall authentication or in conjunction with auth-only-browser.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• auth-user-agent on page 313• Understanding SRX Series Assured Captive Portal Support for Unauthenticated Browser Users on page 171

auth-user-agent

Syntax	<code>auth-user-agent [<i>user-agent</i>];</code>
Hierarchy Level	<p>[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication pass-through]</p> <p>[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication pass-through auth-only-browser]</p> <p>[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall]]</p> <p>[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication user-firewall auth-only-browser]</p>
Description	<p>Specify a user-agent value to be used to verify that the user's browser traffic is HTTP/HTTPS traffic. Firewall authentication checks the value against the User-Agent field in the browser header. For example, the auth-user-agent parameter might specify Opera1 to be verified against the browser's User-Agent field for a match.</p> <p>You can use the auth-user-agent parameter alone for pass-through or user-firewall authentication or in conjunction with auth-only-browser.</p> <p>The auth-only-browser directs firewall authentication to ignore non-browser HTTP/HTTPS traffic to ensure that unauthenticated users using an HTTP/HTTPS browser are authenticated by captive portal before they are granted access to protected resources. It can happen that non-browser HTTP/HTTPS services running in the background can trigger captive portal authentication creating a race condition that suppresses presentation of the captive portal interface to the HTTP/HTTPS browser user.</p>
Options	<p>user-agent—A string to be matched against values specified in the browser's User-Agent header field that identifies the traffic as HTTP/HTTPS browser traffic. You can specify only one user-agent value for a security policy configuration. The value must not contain spaces. You do not need to enclose the string in parenthesis. The length of a string must be 17 characters or less.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • auth-only-browser on page 312 • Understanding SRX Series Assured Captive Portal Support for Unauthenticated Browser Users on page 171

authentication-entry-timeout (Services User Identification)

Syntax	authentication-entry-timeout <i>minutes</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Configure for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature the timeout interval after which idle entries in the ClearPass authentication table expire.
Options	<p>minutes—Timeout interval. The timeout interval begins from when the user authentication entry is added to the ClearPass authentication table. If a value of 0 is specified, the entries will never expire.</p> <p>Range: 10 through 1440 minutes</p> <p>Default: 30 minutes</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

authentication-source (Services User Identification ClearPass)

```
Syntax authentication-source name {
    authentication-entry-timeout minutes;
    no-user-query;
    traceoptions {
        file {
            filename;
            files number;
            match regular-expression;
            size maximum-file-size;
            (world-readable |no-world-readable);
        }
        flag flag;
        level level ;
        no-remote-trace;
    }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit services user-identification]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Configure ClearPass as the authentication source for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature. You must specify `aruba-clearpass` as the value of authentication source *name*, followed by its defining characteristics. You cannot specify the authentication source alone—that is, apart from its configuration parameters that qualify it.

The ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM), as the authentication source and client of the SRX Series device HTTP server, initiates a connection to the SRX Series device using the Web API that the SRX Series device exposes to it. The CPPM sends user authentication and identity information to the SRX Series device across this connection using HTTP or HTTPS POST request messages.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level

- services—To view this statement in the configuration.
- services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

authentication-source (Services User Identification Device Identity)

Syntax	authentication-source <i>authentication-source</i> (active-directory network-access-controller)
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification device-information]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	<p>Specify the device identity authentication source. The integrated user firewall device identity authentication feature enables you to control access to resources based on the identity of the device and not that of the user of the device. Supported authentication sources include Active Directory and third-party network access systems.</p> <p>The SRX Series device obtains the device identity information for authenticated devices from the authentication source. After the SRX Series device obtains the device information, it creates a device identity authentication table to use to store device identity entries.</p> <p>The SRX Series device searches the device identity authentication table for a device match when traffic issuing from a user's device arrives at the SRX Series device. If it finds a match, the SRX Series device searches for a matching security policy. If it finds a matching security policy, the security policy's action is applied to the traffic.</p>
Options	<p>active-directory—Specifies Microsoft Active Directory as the authentication source.</p> <p>The SRX Series device obtains the device identity information for authenticated devices from Active Directory. It reads the Active Directory domain controller event logs to obtain the IP addresses of devices logged into the domain and authenticated by Windows. Then, for each authenticated device, it obtains from the Active Directory LDAP server the names of the groups to which the device belongs, based on the IP addresses of the devices.</p> <p>network-access-controller—Specifies the authentication source as that of a third-party network access controller (NAC) system. If your network environment is configured for a NAC solution and you decide to take this approach, the NAC system sends the device identity information to the SRX Series device. The SRX Series device exposes a RESTful Web services API implementation that enables you to send the device identity information to the SRX Series device in a formal XML structure. If you take this approach, you must verify that your NAC solution works with the SRX Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191• Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194

- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)

banner (Access FTP HTTP Telnet Authentication)

Syntax	<pre> banner { fail <i>string</i>; login <i>string</i>; success <i>string</i>; } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through (ftp http telnet)]
Release Information	<p>Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.</p> <p>HTTPS for Web authentication is supported on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and SRX Series Services Gateways from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.</p> <p>TheaAndZoren#1</p>
Description	Configure the banners that appear to users during the FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, and Telnet firewall authentication process. The banners appear during login, after successful authentication, and after failed authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization on page 85

banner (Access Web Authentication)

Syntax	<pre>banner { success <i>string</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication web-authentication]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure the banner that appears to users during the Web authentication process. The banner appears during login, after successful authentication, and after failed authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

base-distinguished-name

Syntax	<pre>base-distinguished-name <i>base-distinguished-name</i>;</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	<p>Specify the base distinguished name (DN), which can be used in one of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you are using the assemble statement so that the user's distinguished name is being assembled, the base distinguished name is appended to a username to generate the user's distinguished name. The resulting distinguished name is used in the LDAP bind call.• If you are using the search statement so that the user's distinguished name is found by a search, the search is restricted to the subtree of the base distinguished name.
Options	<i>base-distinguished-name</i> —Series of basic properties that define the user. For example in the base distinguished name o=juniper,c=us , where c stands for country, and o for organization.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

ca-certificate (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>ca-certificate <i>certificate-file</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query https]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Specify the certificate file that the SRX Series device uses to verify the Clearpass server's certificate for the SSL connection that is used for the user query function. As the ClearPass administrator, you must export the server's certificate from the CPPM and import it to the SRX Series device. Afterward, you must configure the ca-certificate path and the certificate filename on the SRX Series device. Here is an example:</p> <pre>'/var/tmp/RADIUSServerCertificate.crt'</pre> <p>This configuration is part of the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature user query function configuration. User query enables the SRX Series device to query the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) for authentication and identity information for an individual user under certain circumstance when it does not receive that information from the CPPM through the Web API POST requests.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

ca-profile (Services)

Syntax	<code>ca-profile <i>ca-profile</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller <i>hostname</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the certificate authority (CA) of the certificate that the SRX Series device should use in communications with an Infranet Enforcer. The SRX Series device uses the CA to validate the IC Series UAC Appliance server certificate.</p> <p>Use this statement if you have loaded certificates from multiple certificate authorities (CAs) onto your SRX Series device and you need to configure the device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series appliance .</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>


captive-portal (Services UAC)

Syntax	<code>captive-portal <i>redirect-policy-name</i>{ redirect-traffic (all unauthenticated); redirect-url <i>redirect-url</i>; }</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	<p>Specify the preconfigured security policy for captive portal on the Junos OS Enforcer to enable the captive portal feature. The captive portal policy is configured as part of the UAC policy.</p> <p>By configuring the captive portal feature, you can redirect traffic destined for protected resources to the IC Series device or to the URL you configure on the Junos OS Enforcer.</p>
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.


captive-portal (Services UAC Policy)

Syntax	<code>captive-portal <i>captive-portal-policy-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit application-services uac-policy]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	Create the captive portal policy in the UAC security policy. You use the captive portal policy to configure the captive portal feature on the Junos OS Enforcer. By configuring the captive portal feature, you can redirect traffic destined for protected resources to the IC Series device or to the URL you configure on the Junos OS Enforcer.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>

certificate (System Services)

Syntax	<code>certificate <i>certificate-filename</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi https]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configures a custom certificate to be used for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature Web API (webapi) configuration when the HTTPS protocol is configured.</p> <p>When you configure the Web API (webapi) function to use HTTPS, you can use the default certificate, a custom one, or a certificate generated by the PKI local store.</p> <p>If you configure a custom certificate, you must configure a certificate key with it. Here is an example of how to configure a certificate and certificate key:</p> <pre>set system services webapi https certificate /var/tmp/certificate.crt set system services webapi https certificate-key /var/tmp/certificate.key</pre> <p> NOTE: The Web API supports only the PEM format for the custom certificate and certificate key.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

certificate-verification

Syntax	certificate-verification [optional required warning]
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Description	<p>This option determines whether server certificate verification is required when initiating a connection between an SRX Series device and a Junos Pulse Access Control Service in a UAC configuration. If no CA profile contains the certificate authority (CA) that signed the configured server certificate for the Access Control Service, this option determines whether the commit check should fail, a warning should be displayed, or the connection should be made without any warning.</p>
	<div>  <p>NOTE: For strict security, this option should be reset to required, and the proper CA certificate should be specified in the CA profile.</p> </div>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • optional—Certificate verification is not required. If the CA certificate is not specified in the ca-profile option, the commit check passes and no warning is issued. • required—Certificate verification is required. If the CA certificate is not specified in the ca-profile option, an error message is displayed, and the commit check fails. Use this option to ensure strict security. <p>Default: warning—Certificate verification is not required. A warning message is displayed during commit check if the CA certificate is not specified in the ca-profile option.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding Communications Between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series UAC Appliance on page 95 • Understanding User Role Firewalls

client (System Services)

Syntax	client <i>ip-address</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configures the IP address of the client. For the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature Web API daemon configuration, the client is the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM).</p> <p>The SRX Series Web API daemon acts as an HTTP(S) server. The CPPM client sends POST request messages containing user authentication and identity information to the Web API daemon. The SRX Series device accepts information only from the configured address of the client.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

client-id (Services User Identification)

Syntax	client-id <i>client-id</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configures the client ID that the SRX Series device requires to obtain an access token for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement user query function. The client ID must be consistent with the API client configured on the CPPM.</p> <p>The ClearPass endpoint API requires use of OAuth (RFC 6749) to authenticate and authorize the SRX Series device access. The SRX Series device uses the Client Credentials grant type access token, which is one of the two types that ClearPass supports.</p> <p>If it is configured, the user query function allows the SRX Series device to query the CPPM for authentication and identity information about individual users when it does not receive this information from the CPPM through the SRX Series Web API daemon (webapi).</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

client-group

Syntax	<code>client-group [<i>group-names</i>];</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i>]</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> session-options]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify a list of client groups that the client belongs to. If the group list is not defined as part of the client profile, the client group configured at the <code>[edit access profile session-options]</code> hierarchy level is used.
Options	<i>group-names</i> —Names of one or more groups the client belongs to, separated by spaces—for example g1, g2, g3 . The total length of the group name string cannot exceed 256 characters.
Required Privilege Level	<code>access</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>access-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.

client-idle-timeout (Access Profile)

Syntax	<code>client-idle-timeout <i>minutes</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> session-options]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the grace period that begins after an authenticated user terminates all sessions and connections. Authentication is not required if a new connection is initiated during the grace period by the same user.
Options	<i>minutes</i> —Number of minutes of idle time that elapse before the session is terminated. Range: 10 through 255 minutes Default: 10 minutes
Required Privilege Level	<code>access</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>access-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.

client-name-filter

Syntax	<pre>client-name-filter <i>client-name</i> { count <i>number</i>; domain-name <i>domain-name</i>; separator <i>special-character</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Define client-name-related restrictions. Clients whose names follow these restrictions are authenticated on the server.
Options	<p><i>client-name</i>—Name of the client.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

client-secret (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>client-secret <i>client-secret</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configures the client secret used with the client ID that the SRX Series device requires to obtain an access token for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement user query function. The client secret must be consistent with the client secret configured on the CPPM.</p> <p>The ClearPass endpoint API requires use of OAuth (RFC 6749) to authenticate and authorize SRX Series device access. The SRX Series device uses the Client Credentials grant type access token, which is one of the two types that ClearPass supports.</p> <p>If it is configured, the user query function allows the SRX Series device to query the CPPM for authentication and identity information about individual users when it does not receive this information from the CPPM through the SRX Series Web API daemon (webapi).</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

client-session-timeout (Access Profile)

Syntax	<code>client-session-timeout <i>minutes</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> session-options]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the amount of time after which user sessions are terminated, regardless of user activity (also known as a forced or hard authentication timeout).
Options	<p>minutes —Number of minutes after which user sessions are terminated.</p> <p>Range: 1 through 10,000 minutes</p> <p>Default: Off</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

configuration-file

Syntax	<code>server-name configuration-file <i>filepath</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access securid-server]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 9.1 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the path of the SecurID server configuration file. The file is copied on the devices in some directory location—for example, <code>/var/db/securid/sdconf.rec</code> .
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• server-name—Name of the SecurID authentication server.• filepath—Path of the SecurID server configuration file.
Required Privilege Level	secret—To view this statement in the configuration. secret-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

connect-method (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>connect-method (http https);</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query web-server]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Configure the application protocol used for the SRX Series device connection to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) for user query requests. You identify the connection protocol as part of the configuration that identifies the CPPM server. The user query function allows the SRX Series device to request from the CPPM user authentication and identity information for an individual user.
Options	HTTP —Protocol that the CPPM uses to connect to the SRX Series device. HTTPS —Secure version of the protocol that the CPPM uses to connect to the SRX Series device. Default: HTTPS—The connect-method configuration is optional. If it is not configured, HTTPS is assumed.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

count

Syntax	<code>count <i>number</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client-name-filter <i>client-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the number of characters to be stripped from a client name, from right to left, until the specified number of characters are deleted. The resulting name is sent to the authentication server.
Options	<i>number</i> —Number of characters to be stripped in a client name.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

custom-ciphers

Syntax	custom-ciphers [rsa-with-rc4-128-md5 RSA 128bit rc4 md5 hash rsa-with-rc4-128-sha RSA 128bit rc4 sha hash rsa-with-des-cbc-sha RSA des cbc sha hash rsa-with-3des-edc-cbc-sha RSA 3des edc/cbc sha hash rsa-with-aes-128-cbc-sha RSA 128 bit aes/cbc sha hash rsa-with-aes-256-cbc-sha RSA 256 bit aes/cbc sha hash rsa-export-with-rc4-40-md5 RSA-export 40 bit rc4 md5 hash rsa-export-with-des40-cbc-sha RSA-export 40 bit des/cbc sha hash rsa-with-null-md5 RSA no symmetric cipher md5 hash rsa-with-null-sha RSA no symmetric cipher sha hash];
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl initiation profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Display the custom cipher list. This statement is supported in the SRX550M, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• SSL Proxy Overview on page 11• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy on page 32

debug-level (System Services)

Syntax	<code>debug-level <i>level</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Specify the trace level for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement Web API daemon (webapi).
Options	<p>level—A flag that specifies the type of logs to be written to the log file for the Web API daemon (webapi).</p> <p>alert—Matches alert messages.</p> <p>crit—Matches critical messages.</p> <p>emerg—Matches emergency messages.</p> <p>error—Matches error messages.</p> <p>notice—Matches notification messages.</p> <p>warn—Matches warning messages.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

debug-log (System Services)

Syntax	debug-log <i>filename</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Specify the name of the log file to which trace messages for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement Web API daemon (webapi) are written.</p> <p>The debug level flag determines the kind of logs that are written to this file. Possible values are:</p> <p>alert—Matches alert messages.</p> <p>crit—Matches critical messages.</p> <p>emerg—Matches emergency messages.</p> <p>error—Matches error messages.</p> <p>notice—Matches notification messages.</p> <p>warn—Matches warning messages.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

default-certificate (System Services)

Syntax	default-certificate;
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi https]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Specify that the default certificate is to be used for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement Web API daemon (webapi) HTTPS configuration. To ensure security, the Junos OS default certificate key size is 2084 bits.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

default-profile

Syntax	<code>default-profile <i>profile-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the authentication profile to use if no profile is specified in a policy.
Options	<i>profile-name</i> —Name of the profile.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

delay-query-time (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>delay-query-time <i>delay-time-in-seconds</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>If the CPPM does not send to the SRX Series device authentication and identity information for a particular user, the SRX Series device can request that information for the user if you configure the user query function.</p> <p>Delays can occur from when the CPPM initially posts user authentication information to the SRX Series device to when the SRX Series device updates its ClearPass authentication table with that information. In its transit, the user identity information must first pass through the CPPM device's control plane and the control plane of the SRX Series device.</p> <p>During that period, traffic might arrive at the SRX Series device that is generated by an access request from a user whose authentication and identity information is in transit from the CPPM to the SRX Series device. Rather than allow the SRX Series device to respond automatically by sending a user query request <i>immediately</i>, you can set the delay time parameter specifying in seconds how long the SRX Series device should wait before sending the request.</p> <p>After the delay timeout expires, the SRX Series device sends the query to the CPPM and creates a pending entry for the user in the Routing Engine authentication table. During this period, any arriving traffic matches the default policy whose action on the traffic you can configure.</p>
Options	<p><i>delay-time-in-seconds</i>—Amount of time for the SRX Series device to delay before sending queries to the Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) for authentication and identity information for individual users</p> <p>Range: 0 through 60 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

distinguished-name (Access)

Syntax	<code>distinguished-name <i>distinguished-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options search admin-search], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options search admin-search]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the distinguished name of an administrative user. The distinguished name is used in the bind for performing the LDAP search.
Options	<i>distinguished-name</i> —Set of properties that define the user. For example, <code>cn=admin, ou=eng, o=juniper, dc=net</code> .
Required Privilege Level	secret—To view this statement in the configuration. secret-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

domain-name (Access Profile)

Syntax	<code>domain-name <i>domain-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client-name-filter <i>client-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify a domain name that must be in a client's name during the authentication process.
Options	<i>domain-name</i> —Domain name that must be in a client name. The name must not exceed 128 characters.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

enable-flow-tracing (Services)

Syntax	enable-flow-tracing;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl initiation profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Enable flow tracing for the profile. This statement is supported on the SRX550M, SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• SSL Proxy Overview on page 11• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy on page 32

enable-session-cache

Syntax	enable-session-cache;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl initiation profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. This statement is supp
Description	Enable SSL session cache. This statement is supported on the SRX550M, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• SSL Proxy Overview on page 11• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Enabling Debugging and Tracing for SSL Proxy on page 32

end-user-profile

Syntax

```
end-user-profile profile-name profile-name
domain-name domain-name;
{
  attribute device-category {
    string string-value;
  }
  attribute device-identity {
    string string-value;
  }
  attribute device-vendor {
    string string-value;
  }
  attribute device-type {
    string string-value;
  }
  attribute device-os {
    string string-value;
  }
  attribute device-os-version {
    string string-value;
  }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit services user-identification device-information]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS 15.1X49-D70.

Description Specify the name of the device identity profile, also referred to as the **end-user-profile**, and either one or more of its attributes or the name of the Active Directory domain to which the device belongs.

The device identity profile is a key component of the SRX Series device identity feature, which enables you to control access to network resources based on the identity of the user's device, not the identity of the user of the device. The device identity profile includes the domain name and a collection of attributes that characterize the device.



NOTE: You cannot configure the device identity profile without specifying either the domain that the device belongs to at least one of its attributes.

- Options**
- **profile-name** *profile-name*—Name of the device identity profile; for example, marketing-west-coast. The profile is specified in the **source-end-user-profile** field of a security policy.
 - **domain** *domain-name*—Name of the domain to which the device belongs; for example, domain1.

- attribute device-identity *string*—Name given to the device, for example, my-device1.
- attribute device-category *string*—Category of the device, for example, laptop.
- attribute device-vendor *string*—Name of the manufacturer of the device, for example, Lenovo.
- attribute device-type *string*—Type of device; for example, ThinkPad.
- attribute device-os *string*—Operating system running on the device; for example, Windows.
- attribute device-os-version *string*—Version of the operating system that is running on the device; for example, 10.1.

Required Privilege Level services—To view this statement in the configuration.
services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194](#)
- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)

fail

Syntax fail *string*;

Hierarchy Level [edit access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile *profile-name* (ftp | http | telnet) banner]

Release Information Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.

Description Specify the banner that a client sees if the authentication process fails.

Options *string*—Banner text. Maximum length of the message text is 250 characters. Enclose the banner text within spaces or special characters—for example, quotation marks (" ").

Required Privilege Level access—To view this statement in the configuration.
access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Junos OS Security Configuration Guide](#)

file (Services)

Syntax	<pre>file <i>file-name</i>; { files; match; no-world-readable size; world-readable; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices, and vSRX..
Description	Specify the trace file information. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • files—Specify the maximum number of trace files. Range: 2 through 1000. • match—Specify the regular expression for lines to be logged. • no-world-readable size—Do not allow any user to read the log file. • size—Specify the maximum trace file size. Range: 10,240 to 1,073,741,824. • world-readable—Allow any user to read the log file.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

files (Services)

Syntax	<code>files <i>files</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit services ssl traceoptions file <i>file-name</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the maximum number of trace files.
Options	files —Specify the maximum number of trace files. Range: 2 through 1000
Required Privilege Level	<code>services</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>services-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

file (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<pre> file { filename files <i>number</i>; match <i>regular-expression</i>; size <i>maximum-file-size</i>; (world-readable no-world-readable); } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Configure the name of the trace log file and its characteristics to which messages for the behavior of the authentication source are logged. For the SRX Series device integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature, the authentication source is the Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM).
Options	<p><i>filename</i>—Name of the log file.</p> <p><i>files max-number-of-files</i>—Specifies the maximum number of trace files. Range: 2 through 1000</p> <p><i>match regular-expression</i>—Specifies a regular expression that determines which lines are logged.</p> <p><i>no-world-readable</i>—Denies users the ability to read the log file.</p> <p><i>size max-file-size</i>—Specifies the trace file maximum file size. Range: 10,240 through 1,073,741,824.</p> <p><i>world-readable</i>—Allows users to read the log file.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

file (System Logging)

```
Syntax  file filename {
    allow-duplicates;
    any (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    archive {
        archive-sites {
            url password;
        }
        (binary-data | no-binary-data);
        files number;
        size size;
        start-time start-time;
        transfer-interval transfer-interval;
        (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
    authorization (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    change-log (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    conflict-log (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    daemon (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    dfc (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    explicit-priority;
    external (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    firewall (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    ftp (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    interactive-commands (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    kernel (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    match "regular-expression";
    ntp (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    pfe (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    security (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
    structured-data {
        brief;
    }
    user (alert | any | critical | emergency | error | info | none | notice | warning);
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit system syslog]

Release Information Statement introduced before Junos OS Release 12.1X47 for SRX Series.

Description Specify the file in which to log data.

- Options**
- *filename*—Specify the name of the file in which to log data.
 - *allow-duplicates*—Do not suppress the repeated messages.
 - *any*—Specify all facilities information.
 - *alert*—Specify the conditions that should be corrected immediately.
 - *critical*—Specify the critical conditions.

- *emergency*—Specify the conditions that cause security functions to stop.
- *error*—Specify the general error conditions.
- *info*—Specify the information about normal security operations.
- *none*—Do not specify any messages.
- *notice*—Specify the conditions that should be handled specifically.
- *warning*—Specify the general warning conditions.
- *archive*—Specify the archive file information.
 - *archive-sites*—Specify a list of destination URLs for the archived log files.
 - *url*—Specify the primary and failover URLs to receive archive files.
 - *binary-data*—Mark file such that it contains binary data.
 - *no-binary-data*—Do not mark the file such that it contains binary data.
 - *files*—Specify the number of files to be archived. Range: 1 through 1000 files.
 - *size*—Specify the size of files to be archived. Range: 65,536 through 1,073,741,824 bytes.
 - *world-readable*—Allow any user to read the log file.
 - *no-world-readable*—Do not allow any user to read the log file.
 - *start-time*—Specify the start time for file transmission. Enter the start time in the yyyy-mm-dd.hh:mm format.
 - *transfer-interval*—Specify the frequency at which to transfer the files to archive sites.
- *authorization*—Specify the authorization system.
- *change-log*—Specify the configuration change log.
- *conflict-log*—Specify the configuration conflict log.
- *daemon*—Specify the various system processes.
- *dfc*—Specify the dynamic flow capture.
- *explicit-priority*—Include the priority and facility in messages.
- *external*—Specify the local external applications.
- *firewall*—Specify the firewall filtering system.
- *ftp*—Specify the FTP process.
- *interactive-commands*—Specify the commands executed by the UI.
- *kernel*—Specify the kernel information.
- *match*—Specify the regular expression for lines to be logged.
- *ntp*—Specify the NTP process.
- *pfe*—Specify the Packet Forwarding Engine.

- *security*—Specify the security-related information.
- *structured-data*—Log the messages in structured log format.
 - *brief*—Omit English language text from the end of the logged message.
- *user*—Specify the user processes.
 - *info*—Specify the informational messages.

Required Privilege system—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

filter (Security)

Syntax filter threat-attack

Hierarchy Level [edit security log stream *stream-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Configure the log stream filter to transmit only threat and attack logs to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM). The integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature sends to the CPPM threat and attack logs detected by the SRX Series device security modules. You can use these reports to inform your approach to hardening the CPPM security policy. Setting the log stream filter to threat-attack ensures that the SRX Series device and the log server are not overburdened by irrelevant logs.



.....

NOTE: Unlike for other features that use a filter for log streams, threat-attack is the only log stream filter supported for integrated ClearPass. Therefore, it is not shown here as an option.

.....

Required Privilege security—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

firewall-authentication

```

Syntax  firewall-authentication {
            pass-through {
                default-profile profile-name;
                ftp {
                    banner {
                        fail string;
                        login string;
                        success string;
                    }
                }
                http {
                    banner {
                        fail string;
                        login string;
                        success string;
                    }
                }
                telnet {
                    banner {
                        fail string;
                        login string;
                        success string;
                    }
                }
            }
            traceoptions {
                file {
                    filename;
                    files number;
                    flag flag;
                    match regular-expression;
                    no-remote-trace;
                    size maximum-file-size;
                    (world-readable | no-world-readable);
                }
            }
            web-authentication {
                banner {
                    success string;
                }
                default-profile profile-name;
            }
        }

```

Hierarchy Level [edit access]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure default firewall authentication settings used by firewall authentication policies that restrict and permit access of firewall users to protected resources behind a firewall.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level access—To view this statement in the configuration.
access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Dynamic VPN Overview](#)
- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)

firewall-authentication (Security)

Syntax

```
firewall-authentication {  
  traceoptions {  
    flag flag;  
  }  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Define data-plane firewall authentication tracing options.

Options

- **flag**—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.
- **all**—Enable all tracing operations.
- **authentication**—Trace data-plane firewall authentication events.
- **proxy**—Trace data-plane firewall authentication proxy events.
- **detail**—Display moderate amount of data.
- **extensive**—Display extensive amount of data.
- **terse**—Display minimum amount of data.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Understanding Logical System Firewall Authentication](#)

firewall-authentication (Security Policies)

Syntax	<pre> firewall-authentication { pass-through { access-profile <i>profile-name</i>; client-match <i>user-or-group-name</i>; ssl-termination-profile <i>profile-name</i>; web-redirect; web-redirect-to-https; auth-only-browser auth-user-agent } user-firewall { access-profile <i>profile-name</i>; domain <i>domain-name</i> ssl-termination-profile <i>profile-name</i>; web-redirect; web-redirect-to-https; auth-only-browser } web-authentication { client-match <i>user-or-group-name</i>; } } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit]
Release Information	<p>Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.</p> <p>Support added for the user-firewall option in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10.</p> <p>Support for the ssl-termination-profile and web-redirect-to-https options added on SRX5600 and SRX5800 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10, on SRX5400 devices starting from 12.1X46-D10, and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.</p> <p>Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, support for the web-redirect and web-redirect-to-https options under user-firewall added on SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX Services Gateways.</p> <p>Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90, support for the auth-only-browser option was added under pass-through and user-firewall and the auth-user-agent option was added under pass-through auth-only-browser on SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX Services Gateways.</p>
Description	Configure firewall authentication methods.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *Understanding User Role Firewalls*

firewall-authentication (User Identification)

Syntax firewall-authentication priority *priority*;

Hierarchy Level [edit security user-identification authentication-source]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. Support for **disable** option dropped in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.

Description Enables the firewall authentication table as an authentication source. The priority of this table among other authentication tables establishes the search sequence used to identify user and role values.

Options *priority*—A unique value between 0 and 65535 that determines the sequence for searching multiple tables to retrieve a user role. Each table is given a unique priority value. The lower the value, the higher the priority. A table with priority 120 is searched before a table with priority 200.

Default: 150

Setting the priority value of the firewall authentication table to 0 is equivalent to disabling the table and eliminating it from the search sequence.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *authentication-source (Security)*
- *Understanding User Role Firewalls*

firewall-authentication-service

Syntax	firewall-authentication-service (enable disable);
Hierarchy Level	[edit system processes]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Enable or disable the firewall authentication service process.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • enable—Start the firewall authentication service process. • disable—Stop the firewall authentication service process.
Required Privilege Level	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

firewall-user

Syntax	<pre>firewall-user { password <i>password</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client <i>client-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify a client as a firewall user and the associated password (encrypted).
Options	password <i>password</i> —Password used by the firewall user during local authentication. Range: 1 through 128 characters
Required Privilege Level	secret—To view this statement in the configuration. secret-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

flag (Services)

Syntax	<code>flag (all cli-configuration initiation proxy selected-profile termination);</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Description	Specify the tracing flag parameters.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>all</i>—Trace all the parameters.• <i>cli-configuration</i>—Trace CLI configuration events.• <i>initiation</i>—Trace initiation service events.• <i>proxy</i>—Trace proxy service events.• <i>selected-profile</i>—Trace events for profiles with enable-flow-tracing set.• <i>termination</i>—Trace termination service events.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

from-zone (Security Policies)

```

Syntax  from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name {
    policy policy-name {
        description description;
        match {
            application {
                [application];
                any;
            }
            destination-address {
                [address];
                any;
                any-ipv4;
                any-ipv6;
            }
            source-address {
                [address];
                any;
                any-ipv4;
                any-ipv6;
            }
            source-identity {
                [role-name];
                any;
                authenticated-user;
                unauthenticated-user;
                unknown-user;
            }
            source-end-user-profile {
                profile-name;
            }
        }
        scheduler-name scheduler-name;
        then {
            count {
                alarm {
                    per-minute-threshold number;
                    per-second-threshold number;
                }
            }
            deny;
            log {
                session-close;
                session-init;
            }
            permit {
                application-services {
                    application-firewall {
                        rule-set rule-set-name;
                    }
                }
                application-traffic-control {
                    rule-set rule-set-name;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

    gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
    gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
    idp;
    redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
    ssl-proxy {
        profile-name profile-name;
    }
    uac-policy {
        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    user-firewall {
        access-profile profile-name;
        domain domain-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    initial-tcp-mss mss-value;
    reverse-tcp-mss mss-value;
    sequence-check-required;
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
tunnel {
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
    pair-policy pair-policy;
}
}
reject;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [\[edit security policies\]](#)

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for the **services-offload** option added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for the **source-identity** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the **description** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the **ssl-termination-profile** and **web-redirect-to-https** options added in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. Support for the **user-firewall** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. Support for the **initial-tcp-mss** and **reverse-tcp-mss** options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20.

Description Specify a source zone and destination zone to be associated with the security policy.

- Options**
- **from-zone *zone-name***—Name of the source zone.
 - **to-zone *zone-name***—Name of the destination zone.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

- Related Documentation**
- *Security Policies Overview*
 - *Understanding Security Policy Rules*
 - *Understanding Security Policy Elements*

ftp (Access)

Syntax

```
ftp {
  banner {
    fail string;
    login string;
    success string;
  }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit access firewall-authentication pass-through]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure banners for the FTP login prompt, successful authentication, and failed authentication.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately.

Required Privilege Level access—To view this statement in the configuration.
access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

group-profile (Access)

Syntax	<pre>group-profile <i>profile-name</i> { ppp { cell-overhead; encapsulated-overhead; framed-pool <i>address-pool-name</i>; idle-timeout <i>seconds</i>; interface-id <i>interface-identifier</i>; keepalive <i>seconds</i>; primary-dns <i>IP address</i>; primary-wins <i>IP address</i>; secondary-dns <i>IP address</i>; secondary-wins <i>IP address</i>; } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure a group profile to define Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) attributes. Any client referencing the configured group profile inherits all the group profile attributes.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ppp—Configure Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) attributes.• cell-overhead—Configure the session to use Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)-aware egress shaping.• framed-pool <i>pool-name</i>—Configure a framed-pool.• idle-timeout—Configure the idle timeout for a user.• interface-id—Configure the interface identifier.• keep-alive—Configure the keepalive interval for an L2TP tunnel.• primary-dns—Specify the primary-dns IP address.• secondary-dns—Specify the secondary-dns IP address.• primary-wins—Specify the primary-wins IP address.• secondary-wins—Specify the secondary-wins IP address.
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>


http (Access)

Syntax	<pre>http { banner { fail <i>string</i>; login <i>string</i>; success <i>string</i>; } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure banners for the HTTP login prompt, successful authentication, and failed authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9


http (Services)

Syntax	<pre>http { interfaces [<i>interface-names</i>]; port <i>port</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services web-management]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Unencrypted HTTP connection setting.
Options	<p>interfaces [<i>interface-names</i>]—Name of one or more interfaces on which to allow the HTTP service.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Pass-Through Authentication on page 43• Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Web Authentication on page 60• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

http (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>http port <i>port-number</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source <i>name</i> user-query web-server <i>name</i> connect-method]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configure HTTP as the connection protocol to use for the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature's connection to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) webserver for individual user authentication queries. You identify the connection protocol as part of the configuration that identifies the CPPM webserver (mutually exclusive with HTTPS).</p> <p>If the SRX Series devices does not find an authentication entry for a user in its local ClearPass authentication table, it can query the Aruba ClearPass webserver for this information.</p>
	<div>  <p>NOTE: This configuration assumes that aruba-clearpass is specified as the authentication source.</p> </div>
Options	<i>port-number</i> —Port numbr to use for the HTTP connection protocol.
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

http (System Services)

Syntax	http port <i>port-number</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Specify HTTP as the communication protocol for the Web API function of the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature.</p> <p>The SRX Series device exposes to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) the Web API for it to use to initiate a connection and then use that connection to send to the SRX Series device user authentication and identity information.</p> <p>This statement also specifies the port number to use for the HTTP connection. The port number is optional.</p>
	<div> NOTE: If you deploy HTTP along with a Web management application, you must ensure that they run on different service ports.</div>
Options	<p><i>port-number</i>—Port for HTTP to use for the Web API function.</p> <p>Default: 8080</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

https (Services)

Syntax	<pre> https { interfaces [<i>interface-names</i>]; local-certificate <i>local-certificate-name</i>; pki-local-certificate <i>pki-local-certificate-name</i>; port <i>port</i>; system-generated-certificate <i>name</i>; } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services web-management]
Release Information	Statement introduced on the SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.
Description	Encrypted HTTPS connections.
Options	<p><i>interface-names</i>—Name of one or more interfaces on which to allow the HTTPS service.</p> <p><i>local-certificate-name</i> —Name of the X.509 certificate for a Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection. An SSL connection is configured at the [edit security certificates local] hierarchy.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Pass-Through Authentication on page 43 • Example: Configuring HTTPS Traffic to Trigger Web Authentication on page 60 • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

https (Services User Identification)

Syntax https (
 certificate *local-certificate*;
 certificate-key *local-certificate-key*;
 default-certificate;
 pki-local-certificate *certificate-name*;
 port *port-number*;
)

Hierarchy Level [edit services user-identification authentication-source *name* user-query web-server *name* connect-method]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Configure HTTPS as the connection protocol used for the SRX Series connection to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) for user query requests. You identify the connection protocol as part of the configuration that identifies the CPPM webserver.

The integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement user query function allows the SRX Series device to request from the CPPM user authentication and identity information for an individual when the SRX Series ClearPass authentication table does not contain that information.



NOTE: This configuration assumes that *aruba-clearpass* is specified as the authentication source.

Options **https**—Use the encrypted HTTPS protocol. (Mutually exclusive with HTTP.)

Default: HTTPS

default-certificate—Use the default HTTPS certificate.

 For security reasons, the HTTPS default-certificate key size 2048.

filename—Custom certificate file.

 The Web API supports only the Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM) format for the custom certificate and certificate key configuration.

local-certificate-key—Web API daemon service certificate key. This parameter is required if a custom service certificate file is configured.

pki-certificate—Use the local X.509 PKI certificate.

port-number—HTTPS service port.

Range: 1 through 65535.

Default: 8443

Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration.
	services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

https (System Services)

Syntax `https (
 certificate local-certificate;
 certificate-key local-certificate-key;
 default-certificate;
 pki-local-certificate certificate-name;
 port port-number;
)`

Hierarchy Level [edit system services webapi connect-method]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Specify HTTPS as the communication protocol for the Web API function of the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature. When you configure HTTPS, you specify the service certificate and certificate key. You can also specify the port to be used.

The Web API daemon, acting as an HTTPS server, allows the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM), acting as the client, to send POST request messages to it. The CPPM, which is the authentication source for this feature, sends to the SRX Series device user authentication and identity information.



NOTE: If you deploy HTTPS with a Web management application, ensure that they run on different service ports.

Options **https**—Specifies use of the encrypted HTTPS protocol. (Mutually exclusive with HTTP.)

default-certificate—Configures the Web API daemon (webapi) to use the default HTTPS certificate.

Default: key size, 2048

filename—Configures the Web API daemon to use the specified, custom certificate file.

 For certificate and certificate key configuration, the Web API function supports only the Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM) format.

local-certificate-key—Configures the Web API daemon service certificate key. This parameter is required if a custom service certificate file is configured.

certificate-name—Configures the Web API daemon to use the local X.509 PKI certificate.

port-number—Configures the HTTPS service port.

Range: For port number, 1 through 65,535.

Default: For port, 8443.

Required Privilege Level	system—To view this statement in the configuration.
	system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

infranet-controller

Syntax	<pre>infranet-controller <i>host-name</i> { address <i>ip-address</i>; ca-profile [<i>ca-profile</i>]; interface <i>interface-name</i>; password <i>password</i>; port <i>port-number</i>; server-certificate-subject <i>subject</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>To configure an Infranet Controller, specify the hostname of the IC Series device with which the SRX Series device should communicate. Possible values for this statement range from 1 to 31 characters.</p> <p>This statement is required when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p> <p>One or more IC Series devices can be configured as Infranet Controllers on the SRX Series device. There is no maximum number of IC Series devices that can be configured. However, only one IC Series device can be active at any time. The others are failover devices. A round-robin algorithm determines which of the configured IC Series devices is the active Infranet Controller. If the active Infranet Controller becomes inoperative, the algorithm is reapplied to the remaining IC Series devices that are configured to establish the new active Infranet Controller.</p>
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

interface (Services)

Syntax	interface <i>interface-name</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller <i>hostname</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the SRX Series interface through which the IC Series device should connect.</p> <p>This statement is required when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• port (Services) on page 390• password (Services) on page 379

interval (Services)

Syntax	<code>interval <i>seconds</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the value in seconds that the SRX Series device should expect to receive a heartbeat signal from the IC Series device (default 30). This configuration statement is used in conjunction with the timeout statement to test active communications with the IC Series device. The value of the interval statement must be smaller than the value of timeout statement.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • timeout (Services) on page 424 • timeout-action on page 425

ip-address (Access Profile)

Syntax	<code>ip-address <i>address</i></code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>name</i> client <i>name</i> xauth]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the IP address for the client.
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

ip-user-mapping

Syntax	<pre>ip-user-mapping { discovery-method { wmi { event-log-scanning-interval <i>seconds</i>; initial-event-log-timespan <i>hours</i>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification active-directory domain]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	<p>Control how the SRX Series device accesses a domain controller in order to monitor and scan security event logs on the domain controller. By parsing the event log, the SRX Series gets IP address-to-user mappings. This process is part of the integrated user firewall feature. The ip-user-mapping statement is optional because WMI is the default discovery method and its properties have default values.</p> <p>The other available method the SRX Series uses to retrieve address-to-user mapping information is manual (on-demand) probing of a domain PC.</p>
Options	<p>discovery-method—Method of discover IP address-to-user mappings.</p> <p> wmi—Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) is the discovery method used to access the domain controller.</p> <p> event-log-scanning-interval <i>seconds</i>—Optional. Interval at which the SRX Series scans the event log on the domain controller.</p> <p> Range: 5 through 60 seconds</p> <p> Default: 10 seconds</p> <p> initial-event-log-timespan <i>hours</i>—Optional. Time of the earliest event log on the domain controller that the SRX Series will initially scan. This argument applies to the initial deployment only. After WMIC and the user identification start working, the SRX Series scans only the latest event log.</p> <p> Range: 1 through 168 hours</p> <p> Default: 1 hour</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• active-directory-access on page 304• clear services user-identification active-directory-access on page 480• request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe on page 484

- [user-identification \(Services\)](#) on page 449
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics](#) on page 553
- [traceoptions \(Active Directory Access\)](#) on page 435

ldap-options

Syntax	<pre> ldap-options { assemble { common-name <i>common-name</i>; } base-distinguished-name <i>base-distinguished-name</i>; revert-interval <i>seconds</i>; search { admin-search { distinguished-name <i>distinguished-name</i>; password <i>password</i>; } search-filter <i>filter-name</i>; } } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	<pre> [edit access], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>] </pre>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure LDAP authentication options.
Options	The remaining options are explained separately.
Required Privilege Level	<pre> access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration. </pre>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

ldap-server

Syntax	<pre>ldap-server <i>server-address</i> { port <i>port-number</i>; retry <i>attempts</i>; routing-instance <i>routing-instance-name</i>; source-address <i>source-address</i>; timeout <i>seconds</i>; no-tls-certificate-check; tls-min-version (v1.1 v1.2); tls-peer-name; tls-timeout; tls-type { start-tls; } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access] [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify that the device uses a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server for authentication.
Options	<i>server-address</i> —Address of the LDAP authentication server. The remaining statements are explained separately.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9• LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152

level (Services)

Syntax	level [<i>brief</i> <i>detail</i> <i>extensive</i> <i>verbose</i>];
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the level of debugging the output. This statement is supported on the SRX550M, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>brief</i>—Specify brief debugging output.• <i>detail</i>—Specify detailed debugging output.• <i>extensive</i>—Specify extensive debugging output.• <i>verbose</i>—Specify verbose debugging output.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

level (Services User Identification)

Syntax	level (brief detail extensive verbose);
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configure the level of messages to be written to the trace log file about authentication source behavior.</p> <p>For the integrated ClearPass authentication enforcement feature, the authentication source is Aruba ClearPass.</p>
Options	<p>all—Matches all levels.</p> <p>error—Matches error conditions.</p> <p>info—Matches informational messages.</p> <p>notice—Matches conditions that require special handling.</p> <p>verbose—Matches verbose messages.</p> <p>warning—Matches warning messages.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

lifetime-seconds (Security IKE)

Syntax	<code>lifetime-seconds seconds;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security ike proposal <i>proposal-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Default value modified in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	Specify the lifetime (in seconds) of an IKE security association (SA). When the SA expires, it is replaced by a new SA and security parameter index (SPI) or terminated.
Options	<p>seconds—Lifetime of the IKE SA.</p> <p>Range: 180 through 86,400 seconds</p> <p>Default: 28,800 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPsec VPN Overview • Understanding User Authentication Methods

link (Access)

Syntax	<code>link pool-name;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access address-assignment pool]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the name of the secondary address-assignment pool that is linked to a primary address-assignment pool. The secondary pool provides a backup pool for local address assignment.
Options	pool-name —Name of the address assignment pool.
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7 • Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9

local-authentication-table

Syntax	<code>local-authentication-table priority <i>priority</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security user-identification authentication-source]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for disable option dropped in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	An authentication table created on the SRX Series device using the request security user-identification local-authentication-table add command.
Options	<p>priority <i>priority</i>—A unique value between 0 and 65535 that determines the sequence for searching multiple tables to retrieve a user role. Each table is given a unique priority value. The lower the value, the higher the priority. A table with priority 120 is searched before a table with priority 200. The default priority value of the local authentication table is 100.</p> <p>Setting the priority value of the local authentication table to 0 is equivalent to disabling the table and eliminating it from the search sequence.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Understanding User Role Firewalls</i>• <i>Understanding the User Identification Table</i>

log (Services)

Syntax	<pre>log { all; errors; info; sessions-allowed; sessions-dropped; sessions-ignored; sessions-whitelisted; warning; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i> actions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the logging actions.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Log all events.• errors—Log all error events.• info—Log all information events.• sessions-allowed—Log SSL session allowed events after an error.• sessions-dropped—Log only SSL session dropped events.• sessions-ignored—Log session ignored events.• sessions-whitelisted—Log SSL session whitelisted events.• warning—Log all warning events.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

login (Access)

Syntax	login <i>string</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile <i>profile-name</i> (ftp http telnet) banner]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the login banner for users using FTP, HTTP, and Telnet during the authentication process.
Options	string —Banner text. Maximum length of the message text is 250 characters. Enclose the banner text within spaces or special characters—for example quotation marks (" ").
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9

match (Services)

Syntax	match <i>match</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl traceoptions file <i>file-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the regular expression for lines to be logged. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	match —Specify the regular expression for lines to be logged.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

network (Access)

Syntax	network
Hierarchy Level	[edit access address-assignment pool <name> family (inet inet6)]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the IPv4 network address for the pool. This attribute is mandatory. For an IPv6 pool, you will set the IPv6 network prefix.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

no-remote-trace (Services)

Syntax	no-remote-trace;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Disable remote tracing.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21

no-remote-trace (Services User Identification)

Syntax	no-remote-trace;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass traceoptions]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Disable remote tracing.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

no-user-query (Services User Identification)

Syntax	no-user-query;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Disable the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement user query function, if it is configured. You can use the no-user-query statement to turn off the user query function without having to delete the configuration.</p> <p>The user query function allows the SRX Series device to query the ClearPass webserver for authentication and identity information for an individual user whose information was not posted to the SRX Series device by ClearPass.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

no-tls-certificate-check

Syntax	no-tls-certificate-check;
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>ip-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	Specify validation of the server certificate not required. SRX Series devices support an additional check on the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server's certificate during the Transport Layer Security (TLS) handshake for LDAP authentication. If the validation of the server certificate is not required, you can use this option to ignore the validation and accept the certificate without checking. By default, this option is disabled.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155

pass-through

Syntax

```
pass-through {  
  default-profile profile-name;  
  ftp {  
    banner {  
      fail string;  
      login string;  
      success string;  
    }  
  }  
  http {  
    banner {  
      fail string;  
      login string;  
      success string;  
    }  
  }  
  telnet {  
    banner {  
      fail string;  
      login string;  
      success string;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit access firewall-authentication]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
HTTPS for pass-through authentication is supported on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.

Description Configure pass-through , when a host or user from one zone needs to access a protected resource in another zone. A user must use an FTP, Telnet, or HTTP client to access the IP address of the protected resource and get authenticated by the firewall. The device uses FTP, Telnet, and HTTP to collect username and password information. Subsequent traffic from the user or host is allowed or denied based on the result of this authentication. After the user is authenticated, the firewall proxies the connection.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level access—To view this statement in the configuration.
access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)
- [Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9](#)

password (Access)

Syntax	<code>password password;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options search admin-search], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options search admin-search]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the plain-text password for the administrative user. This password is used in the bind for performing the LDAP search.
Options	<i>password</i> —Administrative user password.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

password (Services)

Syntax	<code>password password;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller <i>hostname</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the password that the SRX Series device should send to the IC Series device to establish communications. The SRX Series device sends the password in its first message to the IC Series device.</p> <p>This statement is required when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ca-profile (Services) on page 319 • server-certificate-subject on page 410

password (System Services)

Syntax	<code>password password;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi user]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Specify the password for the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature Web API daemon (webapi) user.</p> <p>Range: 1 through 128 characters.</p> <p>The Web API daemon, acting as an HTTP server, exposes to the Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) an API that allows the CPPM, acting as a client, to send POST request messages to it. The CPPM, which serves as the authentication source, initiates the session to the SRX Series device and sends it user authentication and identity information.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

permit (Security Policies)

```
Syntax  permit {
    application-services {
        application-firewall {
            rule-set rule-set-name;
        }
        application-traffic-control {
            rule-set rule-set-name;
        }
        gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
        gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
        idp;
        redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
        ssl-proxy {
            profile-name profile-name;
        }
        uac-policy {
            captive-portal captive-portal;
        }
        utm-policy policy-name;
    }
    destination-address {
        drop-translated;
        drop-untranslated;
    }
    firewall-authentication {
        pass-through {
            access-profile profile-name;
            client-match user-or-group-name;
            ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
            web-redirect;
            web-redirect-to-https;
        }
        user-firewall {
            access-profile profile-name;
            domain domain-name;
            ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        }
        web-authentication {
            client-match user-or-group-name;
        }
    }
    services-offload;
    tcp-options {
        sequence-check-required;
        syn-check-required;
    }
    tunnel {
        ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
        ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
        pair-policy pair-policy;
    }
}
```

Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for the tcp-options added in Junos OS Release 10.4. Support for the services-offload option added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for the ssl-termination-profile and web-redirect-to-https options added in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. Support for the user-firewall option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10.
Description	Specify the policy action to perform when packets match the defined criteria.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

pki-local-certificate (Services)

Syntax	pki-local-certificate <i>pki-certificate</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi https]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Configure the Web API daemon to use the local X.509 PKI certificate for HTTPS when HTTPS is specified as the communication protocol. The SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature exposes the Web API to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) to allow the CPPM to initiate a connection to the SRX Series device. For this feature, ClearPass acts as the authentication source. The CPPM uses the HTTPS connection to send user authentication and identity information to the SRX Series device.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

policies

```

Syntax  policies {
        default-policy (deny-all | permit-all);
        from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name {
            policy policy-name {
                description description;
                match {
                    application {
                        [application];
                        any;
                    }
                    destination-address {
                        [address];
                        any;
                        any-ipv4;
                        any-ipv6;
                    }
                    source-address {
                        [address];
                        any;
                        any-ipv4;
                        any-ipv6;
                    }
                    source-identity {
                        [role-name];
                        any;
                        authenticated-user;
                        unauthenticated-user;
                        unknown-user;
                    }
                }
            }
            scheduler-name scheduler-name;
            then {
                count {
                    alarm {
                        per-minute-threshold number;
                        per-second-threshold number;
                    }
                }
                deny;
                log {
                    session-close;
                    session-init;
                }
                permit {
                    application-services {
                        application-firewall {
                            rule-set rule-set-name;
                        }
                    }
                    application-traffic-control {
                        rule-set rule-set-name;
                    }
                    gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
                }
            }
        }
    }

```

```
    gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;  
    idp;  
    redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;  
    ssl-proxy {  
        profile-name profile-name;  
    }  
    uac-policy {  
        captive-portal captive-portal;  
    }  
    utm-policy policy-name;  
}  
destination-address {  
    drop-translated;  
    drop-untranslated;  
}  
firewall-authentication {  
    pass-through {  
        access-profile profile-name;  
        client-match user-or-group-name;  
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;  
        web-redirect;  
        web-redirect-to-https;  
    }  
    user-firewall {  
        access-profile profile-name;  
        domain domain-name  
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;  
    }  
    web-authentication {  
        client-match user-or-group-name;  
    }  
}  
services-offload;  
tcp-options {  
    sequence-check-required;  
    syn-check-required;  
}  
tunnel {  
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;  
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;  
    pair-policy pair-policy;  
}  
}  
reject;  
}  
}  
}  
global {  
    policy policy-name {  
        description description;  
        match {  
            application {  
                [application];  
                any;  
            }  
        }  
        destination-address {
```

```

    [address];
    any;
    any-ipv4;
    any-ipv6;
}
from-zone {
    [zone-name];
    any;
}
source-address {
    [address];
    any;
    any-ipv4;
    any-ipv6;
}
source-identity {
    [role-name];
    any;
    authenticated-user;
    unauthenticated-user;
    unknown-user;
}
to-zone {
    [zone-name];
    any;
}
}
scheduler-name scheduler-name;
then {
    count {
        alarm {
            per-minute-threshold number;
            per-second-threshold number;
        }
    }
    deny;
    log {
        session-close;
        session-init;
    }
    permit {
        application-services {
            application-firewall {
                rule-set rule-set-name;
            }
            application-traffic-control {
                rule-set rule-set-name;
            }
            gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
            gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
            idp;
            redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
            ssl-proxy {
                profile-name profile-name;
            }
            uac-policy {

```

```

        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    initial-tcp-mss mss-value;
    reverse-tcp-mss mss-value;
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
}
reject;
}
}
}
policy-rematch;
policy-stats {
    system-wide (disable | enable) ;
}
traceoptions {
    file {
        filename;
        files number;
        match regular-expression;
        size maximum-file-size;
        (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
    flag flag;
    no-remote-trace;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information	<p>Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.</p> <p>Support for the services-offload option added in Junos OS Release 11.4.</p> <p>Support for the source-identity option added in Junos OS Release 12.1.</p> <p>Support for the description option added in Junos OS Release 12.1.</p> <p>Support for the ssl-termination-profile and web-redirect-to-https options added on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.</p> <p>Support for the user-firewall option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10.</p> <p>Support for the domain option, and for the from-zone and to-zone global policy match options, added in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.</p> <p>Support for the initial-tcp-mss and reverse-tcp-mss options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20. Support for the extensive option for policy-rematch added in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D20.</p>
Description	Configure network security policies.
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>

pool (Access)

```
Syntax  pool pool-name {
        family {
            inet {
                dhcp-attributes {
                    boot-file boot file name;
                    boot-server boot server name;
                    domain-name domain name;
                    grace-period seconds;
                    maximum-lease-time (seconds | infinite);
                    name-server ipv4-address;
                    name-server address;
                    netbios-node-type (b-node | h-node | m-node | p-node);
                    option dhcp option-identifier-code;
                    option-match {
                        option-82 {
                            circuit-id match-value;
                            remote-id match-value;
                        }
                    }
                }
                router IPv4 address;
                server-identifier IP address;
                tftp-server server name;
                wins-server IPv4 address;
            }
            host hostname;
            network network address;
            range range-name {
                high upper-limit;
                low lower-limit;
            }
            xauth-attributes {
                primary-dns IP address;
                primary-wins IP address;
                secondary-dns IP address;
                secondary-wins IP address;
            }
        }
        inet6 {
            dhcp-attributes {
                dns-server IPv6-address;
                grace-period seconds;
                maximum-lease-time seconds;
                option dhcp-option-identifier-code;
                sip-server-address IPv6-address;
                sip-server-domain-name domain-name;
            }
            prefix IPv6-network-prefix;
            range range-name {
                high upper-limit;
                low lower-limit;
                prefix-length delegated-prefix-length;
            }
        }
    }
```



```
    link pool-name;  
}
```

Hierarchy Level	[edit access address-assignment]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the name of an address assignment pool. The remaining statements are explained separately.
Options	<i>pool-name</i> —Name assigned to the address-assignment pool.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7 • Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9

port (Access LDAP)

Syntax	port <i>port-number</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-server <i>server-address</i>], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>server-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the port number on which to contact the LDAP server.
Options	<i>port-number</i> —Port number on which to contact the LDAP server. Default: 389
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

port (Services)

Syntax	port <i>port-number</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller <i>hostname</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the port on the IC Series device through which the SRX Series device should establish connections (default 11123). Possible values for this statement range from 1 through 65,535.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• interface (Services) on page 364• password (Services) on page 379

port (System Services)

Syntax	<code>port <i>port-number</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services webapi http] [edit system services webapi https]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Specify the SRX Series device TCP port to use for incoming HTTP or HTTPS connection requests initiated by the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM). The SRX Series device integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature exposes its Web API (webapi) to the CPPM. The CPPM uses the Web API to establish a connection to the SRX Series device and send user authentication and identity information to it.
Options	<p><i>port-number</i>—For HTTP connection protocol.</p> <p>Range: 1 through 65535.</p> <p>Default: 8080</p> <p><i>port port-number</i>—For HTTPS connection protocol.</p> <p>Range: 1 through 65535.</p> <p>Default: 8443</p>
Required Privilege Level	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

preferred-ciphers

Syntax	<code>preferred-ciphers (custom medium strong weak);</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i>]</code> <code>[edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>]</code> <code>[edit services ssl initiation profile <i>profile-name</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Select the preferred ciphers.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• custom—Configure custom cipher suite and order of preference.• medium—Use ciphers with key strength of 128 bits or greater.• strong—Use ciphers with key strength of 168 bits or greater.• weak—Use ciphers with key strength of 40 bits or greater.
Required Privilege Level	<code>services</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>services-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• SSL Proxy Overview on page 11

prefix (Access IPv6)

Syntax	<code>prefix <i>IPv6-network prefix</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access address-assignment pool <i>pool-name</i> family inet6]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the IPv6 prefix for the IPv6 address-assignment pool. This statement is mandatory for IPv6 address-assignment pools.
Options	<code><i>IPv6-network-prefix</i></code> —IPv6 prefix.
Required Privilege Level	<code>access</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>access-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

priority (Security User Identification)

Syntax authentication-source {
 active-directory priority *priority*;
 aruba-clearpass priority *priority*;
 firewall-authentication priority *priority*;
 local-authentication-table priority *priority*;
 unified-access-control priority *priority*;
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit security user-identification]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Set the lookup priority to identify the order in which the SRX Series device checks its configured authentication tables for user authentication information. Authentication tables are searched in order based on their priority setting in which lowest value takes precedence.

For the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature, the SRX Series device must be configured to search the ClearPass authentication table first.



NOTE: Note that both the authentication source, Aruba ClearPass, and the SRX Series ClearPass authentication table are both referred to as `aruba-clearpass` in the CLI and its output.

You need to set this value only if the local authentication table, whose default value is 100, also resides on the Packet Forwarding Engine. In that case, you must configure a higher priority value, such as 120, for the local authentication table.

Options *priority*—Aruba-clearpass authentication table search priority.

Range: 1 through 65535.

Default: 110.

Default values for other authentication tables:

- Local authentication table: 100
- Active Directory (AD) table: 125
- UAC authentication table: 150
- Firewall authentication table: 200

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

protocol-version

Syntax	protocol-version (all tls1 tls11 tls12);
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl initiation profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. The tls11 and tls12 options are introduced in 15.1X49-D30.
Description	Specify the accepted SSL protocol version.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Accept all versions of TLS.• TLS version 1.0—Accept TLS version 1.0. It provides secure communication over networks by providing privacy and data integrity between communicating applications• TLS version 1.1—Accept TLS version 1.1. This enhanced version of TLS provides protection against cipher-block chaining (CBC) attacks.• TLS version 1.2—Accept TLS version 1.2. This enhanced version of TLS provides improved flexibility for negotiation of cryptographic algorithms.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• SSL Proxy Overview on page 11

query-api (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>query-api <i>query-api</i></code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configure query-api to specify the path of the URL that the SRX Series device uses to query the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) webserver for authentication and identity information for an individual user. For the SRX Series device to be able to make a request, you must have configured it to obtain an access token. See token-api (Services User Identification).</p> <p>The integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement user query function supplements the Web API function (webapi) by allowing the SRX Series device to obtain from the CPPM authentication information for an individual user whose information does not already exist in the SRX Series ClearPass authentication table.</p> <p>Consider the following query-api example:</p> <pre>api/v1/insight/endpoint/ip/\$IP\$</pre> <p>The SRX Series device generates the complete URL for the user query request by combining the query-api string with the connection method (HTTPS) and the CPPM webserver IP address ({<i>\$server</i>}).</p> <pre>https://{<i>\$server</i>}/api/v1/insight/endpoint/ip/\$IP\$</pre> <p>In this example, the SRX Series device replaces the variables with the following values resulting in a specific URL request for the individual user:</p> <pre>https://203.0.113.76/api/v1/insight/endpoint/ip/192.0.2.98</pre> <p>Under normal circumstances, the ClearPass webserver sends user authentication information to the SRX Series device in POST request messages and the SRX Series device writes that information to its ClearPass authentication table. When the SRX Series device receives an access request from a user, it searches its ClearPass authentication table for an entry for that user.</p> <p>It can happen that the SRX Series device might not have received authentication for a user from the CPPM because the user has not yet been authenticated by the CPPM. For example, the user might have joined the network through an access layer not on a managed switch or WLAN. When the CPPM receives the user query from the SRX Series device, it authenticates the user and returns the authentication information to the device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

radius-options (Access)

Syntax	radius-options { revert-interval <i>seconds</i> ; }
Hierarchy Level	[edit access]; [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure RADIUS options.
Options	The remaining statement is explained separately.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>


radius-server (Access)

Syntax	<pre>radius-server server-address { port port-number; retry attempts; routing-instance routing-instance-name; secret password; source-address source-address; timeout seconds; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Configure RADIUS for Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) or Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) authentication.</p> <p>To configure multiple RADIUS servers, include multiple radius-server statements. The servers are tried in order and in a round-robin fashion until a valid response is received from one of the servers or until all the configured retry limits are reached.</p>
Options	<p>server-address—Address of the RADIUS authentication server.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

range (Access)

Syntax	<pre>range <i>range-name</i> { high <i>upper-limit</i>; low <i>lower-limit</i>; prefix-length <i>delegated-prefix-length</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access address-assignment pool pool-name family inet6] [edit access address-assignment pool pool-name family inet]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure an IP name range used within an address-assignment pool. For IPv4, you do not create a prefix-length.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>range-name</i>—Name of the range.• high <i>upper-limit</i>—Upper limit of IPv6 address range.• low <i>lower-limit</i>—Lower limit of IPv6 address range.• prefix-length <i>delegated-prefix-length</i>—IPv6 delegated prefix length.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7


rate-limit (Security Log)

Syntax	<code>rate-limit <i>rate-limit</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security log stream <i>stream-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>The Integrated Authentication and Enforcement feature sends threat and attack logs generated by the SRX Series device security modules to the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) to use in its security policy assessment.</p> <p>The logs are sent in stream mode. To avoid overburdening the SRX Series device and the log server, you can control the rate at which these logs are sent. By setting a rate-limit value, you can constrain the number of logs that are sent in 1 second. After the limit is reached, no more logs are sent.</p> <p>Range: 1 through 65,535.</p>
	<p> NOTE: For devices with multicore systems that use SPUs, the number of log messages sent per SPU is a divided rate:</p> $\text{rate} = \text{configured-rate} / \text{number-of-SPUs}$ <p>Rate limiting on SRX 5400, SRX 5600, and SRX 5800 devices is generally not as accurate as it is on low-end platforms, because the generation of logs is not entirely balanced between SPUs.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

redirect-traffic

Syntax	redirect-traffic (all unauthenticated);
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control captive-portal <i>policy</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	Specify to redirect traffic destined for protected sources to the IC Series device. You can choose to redirect all traffic or only unauthenticated traffic.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Redirect all traffic destined for the protected sources to the IC Series device. Specify this option if you want to redirect all traffic (IPsec or source IP) to the currently connected IC Series device or to an IP address or domain name that you specify in a redirect URL.• unauthenticated—Redirect unauthenticated traffic destined for the protected sources to the IC Series device. Select this option if your deployment uses source IP only or a combination of source IP and IPsec. The Junos OS Enforcer redirects clear-text traffic from unauthenticated users to the currently connected IC Series device or to an IP address or domain name that you specify in a redirect URL.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

redirect-url

Syntax	<code>redirect-url url;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit services unified-access-control captive-portal <i>policy</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	<p>Specify to redirect traffic destined for protected sources to a specified URL.</p> <p>You can configure the following options in the redirect URL string:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • %dest-url%—Specifies the protected resource which the user is trying to access. • %enforcer-id%—Specifies the ID assigned to the Junos OS Enforcer by the IC Series device. • %policy-id%—Specifies the encrypted policy ID for the security policy that redirected the traffic. • %dest-ip%—Specifies the IP address or hostname of the protected resource that the user is trying to access. • %ic-ip%—Specifies the IP address or hostname of the IC Series device to which the Junos OS Enforcer is currently connected. <p>If you do not specify the redirect URL, the Junos OS Enforcer uses the following default configuration:</p> <pre>https://%ic-ip%/?target = %dest-url% &enforcer = %enforcer-id% &policy = %policy-id% &dest-ip = %dest-ip%</pre> <div>  <p>NOTE: The maximum size of a redirect payload is 1450 bytes. The size of the redirect URL is restricted to 1407 bytes (excluding a few HTTP headers). If a user accesses a destination URL that is larger than 1407 bytes, the Infranet Controller authenticates the payload, calculates the exact length of the redirect URL, and trims the destination URL so that it can fit into the redirect URL. The destination URL can be fewer than 1407 bytes based on what else is present in the redirect URL (for example, policy ID). The destination URL in the default redirect URL is trimmed so that the redirect packet payload size is limited to 1450 bytes. If the length of the payload is larger than 1450 bytes, the excess length is trimmed and the user is directed to the destination URL that has been resized to 1450 bytes.</p> </div>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

Related Documentation • [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)

retry (Access LDAP)

Syntax	<code>retry <i>attempts</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-server <i>server-address</i>], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>server-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the number of retries that a device can attempt to contact an LDAP server.
Options	<i>attempts</i> —Number of retries that the device is allowed to attempt to contact an LDAP server. Range: 1 through 10 Default: 3
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	• Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

retry (Access RADIUS)

Syntax	<code>retry attempts;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i>], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement modified in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the number of retries that a device can attempt to contact a RADIUS authentication server.
Options	attempts —Number of retries that the device is allowed to attempt to contact a RADIUS server. Range: 1 through 10 Default: 3
Required Privilege Level	secret—To view this statement in the configuration. secret-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

revert-interval (Access LDAP)

Syntax	<code>revert-interval seconds;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the amount of time that elapses before the primary server is contacted if a backup server is being used.
Options	seconds —Number of seconds that elapse before the primary server is contacted. Range: 60 through 4,294,967,295 seconds Default: 600 seconds
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

revert-interval (Access RADIUS)

Syntax	<code>revert-interval <i>seconds</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access radius-options]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the amount of time that elapses before the primary server is contacted if a backup server is being used.
Options	<i>seconds</i> —Number of seconds that elapse before the primary server is contacted. Range: 60 through 4,294,967,295 seconds Default: 600 seconds
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

root-ca (Services)

Syntax	<code>root-ca <i>root-certificate</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Root certificate for interdicting server certificates in proxy mode. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	<i>root-ca-name</i> —Specify root certificate for interdicting server certificates in proxy mode.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

routing-instance (Access LDAP)

Syntax	<code>routing-instance <i>routing-instance-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access ldap-server <i>server-address</i>],</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>server-address</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the routing instance used to send LDAP packets to the LDAP server. A routing instance is a collection of routing tables, the interfaces contained in the routing tables, and the routing protocol parameters that control the information in the routing tables.
Options	<i>routing-instance-name</i> —Name of the routing instance.
Required Privilege Level	<code>access</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>access-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

routing-instance (Access RADIUS)

Syntax	<code>routing-instance <i>routing-instance-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i>],</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement modified in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the routing instance used to send RADIUS packets to the RADIUS server. A routing instance is a collection of routing tables, the interfaces contained in the routing tables, and the routing protocol parameters that control the information in the routing tables.
Options	<i>routing-instance-name</i> —Name of the routing instance.
Required Privilege Level	<code>secret</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>secret-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

search

Syntax	<pre>search { admin-search { distinguished-name <i>distinguished-name</i>; password <i>password</i>; } search-filter <i>filter-name</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify that a search is used to get a user's LDAP distinguished name (DN). The search is performed based on the search filter and the part typed in by the user during authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

search-filter

Syntax	<code>search-filter <i>filter-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access ldap-options search], [edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-options search]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify that a search filter is used to find the user's LDAP distinguished name (DN). For example, a filter of cn specifies that the search matches a user whose common name is the username.
Options	<i>filter-name</i> —Name of the filter used to find the user's distinguished name.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

secret (Access Profile)

Syntax	<code>secret <i>password</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement modified in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the RADIUS secret password, which is shared between the router and the RADIUS server. The device uses this secret to encrypt the user's password that is sent to the RADIUS server.
Options	<i>password</i> —RADIUS secret. Maximum length is 256 characters.
Required Privilege Level	secret—To view this statement in the configuration. secret-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

securid-server

Syntax securid-server {
 server-name configuration-file *filepath*;
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit access]

Release Information Statement introduced in Release 9.1 of Junos OS.

Description Configure SecurID server for SecurID authentication type.

Options The remaining statement is explained separately.



NOTE: You can configure only one SecurID server. SecurID challenges are not yet supported.

Required Privilege Level access—To view this statement in the configuration.
 access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • *Junos OS Security Configuration Guide*

separator

Syntax	<code>separator <i>special-character</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> client-name-filter <i>client-name</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	<p>Specify a character to identify where stripping of characters occurs in a client name. Stripping removes characters to the right of each instance of the specified character, plus the character itself. The stripping begins with the rightmost separator character.</p> <p>Use the separator statement with the count statement to determine which characters in a client name are stripped. If the specified number of separator characters (count) exceeds the actual number of separator characters in the client name, stripping stops at the last available separator character.</p>
Options	<i>special-character</i> —Character used to identify where to start the stripping of characters in a client name.
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

server-certificate (Services)

Syntax	<code>server-certificate <i>server-certificate</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the local certificate identifier. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	server-certificate —Specify the name of the local certificate identifier.
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21 • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

server-certificate-subject

Syntax	<code>server-certificate-subject <i>subject</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller <i>hostname</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Optionally specify the full subject name of the certificate that the SRX Series device should use to validate the IC Series device's server certificate.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ca-profile (Services) on page 319• password (Services) on page 379

session-options (Access Profile)

Syntax	<pre>session-options { client-group [<i>group-names</i>]; client-idle-timeout <i>minutes</i>; client-session-timeout <i>minutes</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Define options that control a user's session after successful authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately.
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

size (Services)

Syntax	<code>size size;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl traceoptions file <i>file-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the maximum trace file size. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	<p>size—Specify the maximum trace file size.</p> <p>Range: 10,240 to 1,073,741,824.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21 • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

source-address (Access LDAP)

Syntax	<code>source-address source-address;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<p>[edit access ldap-server server-address],</p> <p>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>server-address</i>]</p>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure a source address for each configured LDAP server. Each LDAP request sent to a LDAP server uses the specified source address.
Options	source-address —Valid IP address configured on one of the device interfaces.
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

source-address (Access RADIUS)

Syntax	<code>source-address <i>source-address</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access radius-server <i>server-address</i>],</code> <code>[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> radius-server <i>server-address</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure a source address for each configured RADIUS server. Each RADIUS request sent to a RADIUS server uses the specified source address.
Options	<i>source-address</i> —Valid IP address configured on one of the device interfaces.
Required Privilege Level	<code>secret</code> —To view this statement in the configuration. <code>secret-control</code> —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

source-end-user-profile

Syntax	<code>source-end-user-profile <i>device-identity-profile-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>from-zone</i> to-zone <i>to-zone</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> match]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	<p>The source-end-user-profile field in a security policy enables you to specify a device identity profile that identifies the traffic source based on the device from which the traffic issued. The security policy action is applied to traffic issuing from a device if the device matches the attributes specified in the profile and it matches the rest of the security policy parameters.</p> <p>The device identity profile feature provides a solution for cases in which you cannot or do not want to use the user identity to control access to network resources. The device identity feature allows you to use the identity of a device and its attributes to control access to network resources instead of the identity of the user of that device.</p> <p>You might want to control network access based on the device identity for various reasons. For example, you might allow your users to use their own devices (BYOD) to access network resources and you do not want to use captive portal authentication. Also, some companies might have older switches that do not support 802.1, or they might not have a Network Access Control (NAC) system.</p>
Options	device-identity-profile-name —Device identity profile that specifies characteristics that can apply to one or more devices.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191 • Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194 • Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198

source-identity-log (Security)

Syntax	source-identity-log
Hierarchy Level	[edit security zones security-zone <i>zone-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D60.
Description	<p>Specify the source-identity-log parameter as part of the configuration for a zone to enable it to trigger user identity logging when that zone is used as the source zone (from-zone) in a security policy. If a zone is configured for zone-based user identity logging and it is used as the source zone in a security policy, the system logs the user identity of any user who belongs to that zone and whose traffic matches the security policy's terms.</p> <p>A zone configured for zone-based user identity logging is reusable. That is, you can use it as the source zone in any security policy.</p> <p>For zone-based user identity logging to occur, you must have configured the session initialization (session-init) and the session termination (session-close) events as actions for the security policy.</p> <p>Zone-based user identity logging allows you to broaden the scope of users whose identities are recorded in the session log. The source-identity security policy tuple writes the user or group name to log, but it restricts application of the security policy to the specified user or user group.</p>
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding How to Include User Identity Information in the Session Log File Based on the Source Zone on page 183• Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall to Write User Identity to the Session Log Based On the Source Zone on page 184• Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143• Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155

ssl (Services)

```
Syntax  ssl {
    initiation {
        profile profile-name {
            actions {
                ignore-server-auth-failure;
            }
            client-certificate;
            custom-ciphers [cipher];
            enable-flow-tracing;
            enable-session-cache;
            preferred-ciphers (custom | medium | strong | weak);
            protocol-version (all | tls1 | tls11 | tls12);
            trusted-ca (all | [ca-profile] );
        }
    }
    proxy {
        global-config {
            session-cache-timeout seconds;
        }
        profile profile-name {
            actions {
                crl {
                    disable;
                    if-not-present (allow | drop);
                    ignore-hold-instruction-code;
                }
                disable-session-resumption;
                ignore-server-auth-failure;
                log {
                    all;
                    errors;
                    info;
                    sessions-allowed;
                    sessions-dropped;
                    sessions-ignored;
                    sessions-whitelisted;
                    warning;
                }
                renegotiation {
                    (allow | allow-secure | drop);
                }
            }
            custom-ciphers [cipher];
            enable-flow-tracing;
            preferred-ciphers (custom | medium | strong | weak);
            root-ca root-certificate;
            trusted-ca (all | [ca-profile] );
            whitelist [global-address-book-addresses];
        }
    }
    termination {
        profile profile-name {
```

```
    custom-ciphers [cipher];
    enable-flow-tracing;
    enable-session-cache;
    preferred-ciphers (custom | medium | strong | weak);
    protocol-version (all | tls1 | tls11 | tls12);
    server-certificate certificate-identifier;
  }
}
traceoptions {
  file {
    filename;
    files number;
    match regular-expression;
    (no-world-readable | world-readable);
    size maximum-file-size;
  }
  flag flag;
  level [brief | detail | extensive | verbose];
  no-remote-trace;
}
```

Hierarchy Level	[edit services]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. The crl statement is supported from 15.1X49-D30. The protocol-version statement is updated to include tls11 and tls12 from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30.
Description	Specify the configuration for Secure Socket Layer (SSL) support service. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

ssl-termination-profile

Syntax	<code>ssl-termination-profile <i>profile-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication pass-through]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the SSL termination profile used for SSL offloading.
Options	<i>profile-name</i> —Specify the name of the SSL termination profile used to the SSL offload.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Security Policies Overview</i>

success

Syntax	<code>success <i>string</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile <i>name</i> (ftp http telnet) banner], [edit access firewall-authentication web-authentication]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the banner (message) that users see when trying to connect using FTP, HTTP, or Telnet after successful authentication.
Options	<i>string</i> —Banner text. Maximum length of the message text is 250 characters. Enclose the banner text within spaces or special characters—for example, quotation marks (" ").
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

system-generated-certificate

Syntax	system-generated-certificate;
Hierarchy Level	[edit system services web-management https]
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.1 for EX Series switches.
Description	Configure the automatically generated self-signed certificate for enabling HTTPS services.
Required Privilege Level	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Enabling HTTPS and XNM-SSL Services on Switches Using Self-Signed Certificates (CLI Procedure)</i>

telnet (Access)

Syntax	<pre>telnet { banner { fail <i>string</i>; login <i>string</i>; success <i>string</i>; } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure banners for Telnet login prompt, successful authentication, and failed authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

termination (Services)

Syntax	<pre> termination { profile <i>profile-name</i> { custom-ciphers [<i>cipher</i>]; enable-flow-tracing; enable-session-cache; preferred-ciphers (custom medium strong weak); protocol-version (all tls1 tls11 tls12); server-certificate <i>certificate-identifier</i>; } } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. The protocol-version statement is updated to include tls11 and tls12 from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D30.
Description	Specify the configuration for Secure Socket Layer (SSL) termination support service.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21 • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

test-only-mode

Syntax	test-only-mode (true false):
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Configure the device in test-only mode to log access decisions from the IC Series device without actually enforcing the decisions. When configured in test-only mode, the SRX Series device enables all UAC traffic to go through so you can test the implementation without impeding traffic.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

then (Security Policies)

```

Syntax  then {
        count {
            alarm {
                per-minute-threshold number;
                per-second-threshold number;
            }
        }
        deny;
        log {
            session-close;
            session-init;
        }
        permit {
            application-services {
                application-firewall {
                    rule-set rule-set-name;
                }
                application-traffic-control {
                    rule-set rule-set-name;
                }
                gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
                gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
                idp;
                redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
                ssl-proxy {
                    profile-name profile-name;
                }
                uac-policy {
                    captive-portal captive-portal;
                }
                utm-policy policy-name;
            }
            destination-address {
                drop-translated;
                drop-untranslated;
            }
            firewall-authentication {
                pass-through {
                    access-profile profile-name;
                    client-match user-or-group-name;
                    ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
                    web-redirect;
                    web-redirect-to-https;
                }
                user-firewall {
                    access-profile profile-name;
                    domain domain-name;
                    ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
                }
                web-authentication {
                    client-match user-or-group-name;
                }
            }
        }
    }

```

```
    }
    services-offload;
    tcp-options {
        initial-tcp-mss mss-value;
        reverse-tcp-mss mss-value;
        sequence-check-required;
        syn-check-required;
    }
    tunnel {
        ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
        ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
        pair-policy pair-policy;
    }
}
reject;
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security policies from-zone *zone-name* to-zone *zone-name* policy *policy-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for the **services-offload** option added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for the **ssl-termination-profile** and **web-redirect-to-https** options added in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10. Support for the **user-firewall** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. Support for the **initial-tcp-mss** and **reverse-tcp-mss** options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20.

Description Specify the policy action to be performed when packets match the defined criteria.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *Security Policies Overview*
- *Understanding Security Policy Rules*
- *Understanding Security Policy Elements*

timeout (Access LDAP)

Syntax	<code>timeout seconds;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access ldap-server server-address]</code> <code>[edit access profile profile-name ldap-server server-address]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the amount of time that the local device waits to receive a response from an LDAP server.
Options	seconds —Amount of time to wait. Range: 1 through 90 seconds Default: 3 seconds
Required Privilege Level	access —To view this statement in the configuration. access-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Junos OS Security Configuration Guide

timeout (Access RADIUS)

Syntax	<code>timeout seconds;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit access radius-server server-address]</code> <code>[edit access profile profile-name radius-server server-address]</code>
Release Information	Statement modified in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Configure the amount of time that the local device waits to receive a response from a RADIUS server.
Options	seconds —Amount of time to wait. Range: 1 through 90 seconds Default: 3 seconds
Required Privilege Level	secret —To view this statement in the configuration. secret-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

timeout (Services)

Syntax	timeout <i>seconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify the value, in seconds, that the SRX Series device should wait to get a heartbeat response from an IC Series UAC Appliance (default is 300). If the SRX Series device does not receive it in the specified time, it takes the action specified by the timeout-action configuration statement. It also tries again to make a connection to the IC Series appliance. After the second failed attempt, the SRX Series device fails over to the next IC Series appliance in the cluster. The SRX Series device continues trying to reach IC Series appliances in the cluster until a connection is established.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series appliance. When working with a cluster of IC Series appliances, the Junos OS Enforcer connects to one at a time, failing over to other IC Series appliances in the cluster as required.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• interval (Services) on page 365• timeout-action on page 425

timeout-action

Syntax	timeout-action (close no-change open):
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Specify what the SRX Series device should do when a timeout occurs and the device cannot connect to an Infranet Enforcer.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series UAC Appliance.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• close—Close existing sessions and block any further traffic. This is the default option.• no-change—Preserve existing sessions and require authentication for new sessions.• open—Preserve existing sessions and allow new sessions access.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• interval (Services) on page 365• timeout (Services) on page 424

tls-min-version

Syntax	tls-min-version (v1.1 v1.2);
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>ip-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	Configure Transport Layer Security (TLS) version to limit the lowest supported versions of TLS that are enabled for SSL connections.
Options	<p>v1.1—Accept TLS version 1.1. This enhanced version of TLS provides protection against cipher-block chaining (CBC) attacks.</p> <p>v1.2 —Accept TLS version 1.2. This enhanced version of TLS provides improved flexibility for negotiation of cryptographic algorithms.</p>
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Example: Configuring Integrated User Firewall on page 155

tls-peer-name

Syntax	tls-peer-name <i>peer-host-name</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>ip-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	Configure the peer hostname to be authenticated.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9• LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152

tls-timeout

Syntax	tls-timeout <i>seconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>ip-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	<p>Specify timeout value on the Transport Layer Security (TLS) handshake. The TLS handshake is responsible for the encryption keys exchange necessary to establish secure sessions between client and server.</p> <p>Range: 3 through 90 seconds.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9• LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152

tls-type

Syntax	<pre>tls-type { start-tls; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access profile <i>profile-name</i> ldap-server <i>ip-address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70.
Description	Configure Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) over Secure Sockets Layer/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TLS) for secure communication. Transport Layer Security StartTLS extension for LDAP is used for the firewall user authentication and the integrated user firewall authentication for obtaining username and role information through firewall authentication. StartTLS allows protocol data transfers between the LDAP server and client over the TLS layer after successful negotiation between the peers. StartTLS upgrades an existing insecure LDAP connection to a secure Secure Sockets Layer/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TLS) connection.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• start-tls—Configure LDAP over StartTLS. The StartTLS communications occurs over TCP port 389.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• Obtaining Username and Role Information Through Firewall Authentication on page 9• LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152

token-api (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<code>token-api <i>token-api</i></code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Configure the token API that is used in generating the URL for acquiring an access token. The token API is combined with the connection method and the IP address of the ClearPass webserver to produce the complete URL used for acquiring an access token.</p> <p>For example, if the token API is oauth, the connection method is HTTPS, and the IP address of the ClearPass webserver is 192.0.2.199, the complete URL for acquiring an access token would be https://192.0.2.199/api/oauth. This is a required parameter. There is no default value.</p> <p>The SRX Series device user query function requires an access token to be able to query the ClearPass webserver. If the user query function is configured, the SRX Series device can request from the ClearPass webserver user authentication and identity information for an individual user.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

to-zone (Security Policies)

```
Syntax  to-zone zone-name {  
        policy policy-name {  
            description description;  
            match {  
                application {  
                    [application];  
                    any;  
                }  
                destination-address {  
                    [address];  
                    any;  
                    any-ipv4;  
                    any-ipv6;  
                }  
                source-address {  
                    [address];  
                    any;  
                    any-ipv4;  
                    any-ipv6;  
                }  
                source-identity {  
                    [role-name];  
                    any;  
                    authenticated-user;  
                    unauthenticated-user;  
                    unknown-user;  
                }  
            }  
            scheduler-name scheduler-name;  
            then {  
                count {  
                    alarm {  
                        per-minute-threshold number;  
                        per-second-threshold number;  
                    }  
                }  
                deny;  
                log {  
                    session-close;  
                    session-init;  
                }  
                permit {  
                    application-services {  
                        application-firewall {  
                            rule-set rule-set-name;  
                        }  
                    }  
                    application-traffic-control {  
                        rule-set rule-set-name;  
                    }  
                    gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;  
                    gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;  
                    idp;  
                }  
            }  
        }  
    }
```

```

    redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
    ssl-proxy {
        profile-name profile-name;
    }
    uac-policy {
        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
        web-redirect;
        web-redirect-to-https;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
tunnel {
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
    pair-policy pair-policy;
}
}
reject;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security policies from-zone *zone-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for the **services-offload** and **junos-host** options added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for the **source-identity** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the **ssl-termination-profile** and **web-redirect-to-https** options added in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.

Description Specify a destination zone to be associated with the security policy.

- Options**
- **zone-name**—Name of the destination zone object.
 - **junos-host**—Default security zone for self-traffic of the device.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level

security	—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control	—To add this statement to the configuration.

- Related Documentation**
- *Security Policies Overview*
 - *Understanding Security Policy Rules*
 - *Understanding Security Policy Elements*

traceoptions (Access)

```
Syntax  traceoptions {
        file filename {
            files number;
            match regular-expression;
            size maximum-file-size;
            <world-readable | no-world-readable>;
        }
        flag flag;
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit access firewall-authentication]

Release Information Statement introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.

Description Define Routing Engine firewall authentication tracing options.

- Options**
- **file *filename***—Name of the file to receive the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name within quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory `/var/log`.
 - **files *number***—(Optional) Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named ***trace-file*** reaches its maximum size, it is renamed to ***trace-file.0***, then ***trace-file.1***, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. The oldest archived file is overwritten.
 - If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the size option and a filename.

Range: 2 through 1000 files

Default: 10 files

- **match *regular-expression***—(Optional) Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.
- **size *maximum-file-size***—(Optional) Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named ***trace-file*** reaches this size, it is renamed ***trace-file.0***. When the ***trace-file*** again reaches its maximum size, ***trace-file.0*** is renamed ***trace-file.1*** and ***trace-file*** is renamed ***trace-file.0***. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.
- If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the files option and filename.

Syntax: *x k* to specify KB, *x m* to specify MB, or *x g* to specify GB

Range: 10 KB through 1 GB

Default: 128 KB

- **world-readable | no-world-readable**—(Optional) By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation. The **world-readable** option enables any user to read the file. To explicitly set the default behavior, use the **no-world-readable** option.
- **flag flag**—Tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple flag statements. You can include the following flags.
- **all**—All tracing operations
- **authentication**—Trace authentication events
- **configuration**—Trace configuration events
- **setup**—Trace setup of firewall authentication service

Required Privilege	trace—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level	trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
------------------------------	---

traceoptions (Active Directory Access)

Syntax

```

traceoptions {
  file filename ;
  flag {
    active-directory-authentication;
    all;
    configuration;
    db;
    ip-user-mapping;
    ip-user-probe;
    ipc;
    user-group-mapping;
    wmic;
  }
  level {
    all
    error
    info
    notice
    verbose
    warning
  }
  no-remote-trace;
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit services user-identification active-directory-access]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.

Description Define Active Directory trace options for the integrated user firewall feature.

Options **file *filename***—Name of the file to receive the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name within quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory **/var/log**.

flag—Trace the operation or operations to perform on the integrated user firewall. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.

active-directory-authentication—Trace the building of and modifications to the Active Directory authentication table.

all—Trace everything.

configuration—Trace configuration events.

db—Trace the database.

ip-user-mapping—Trace the ip-user-mapping module.

ip-user-probe—Trace PC client probing.

ipc—Trace communication events with the Packet Forwarding Engine.

user-group-mapping—Trace the process of getting user-to-group-mapping.

wmic—Trace the Windows Management Instrumentation Client process.

level—Level of trace operation to perform.

all—Match all levels.

error—Match error conditions.

info—Match informational messages.

notice—Match conditions that should be handled specially.

verbose—Match verbose messages.

warning—Match warning messages.

no-remote-trace—Disallow tracing from a remote device.

Required Privilege	security—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level	security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• active-directory-access on page 304• user-identification (Services) on page 449• Overview of Integrated User Firewall on page 143
------------------------------	---

traceoptions (Security Firewall Authentication)

Syntax	<pre> traceoptions { flag { all <detail extensive terse>; authentication <detail extensive terse>; proxy <detail extensive terse>; } } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security firewall-authentication]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Define data-plane firewall authentication tracing options.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Enable all tracing operations • authentication—Trace data-plane firewall authentication events • proxy—Trace data-plane firewall authentication proxy events • detail—Display moderate amount of data in trace. • extensive—Display extensive amount of data in trace. • terse—Display minimum amount of data in trace.
Required Privilege Level	trace—To view this statement in the configuration. trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

traceoptions (Services SSL)

Syntax traceoptions {
 file {
 filename;
 files number;
 match regular-expression;
 size maximum-file-size;
 (world-readable | no-world-readable);
 }
 flag flag;
 level [brief | detail | extensive | verbose];
 no-remote-trace;
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit services ssl]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.

Description Specify the trace file information. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.

- Options**
- **file-name**—Specify the name of file in which to write trace information.
 - **files**—Specify the maximum number of trace files. Range: 2 to 1000.
 - **match**—Specify the regular expression for lines to be logged.
 - **no-world-readable size**—Do not allow any user to read the log file.
 - **size**—Specify the maximum trace file size. Range: 10,240 to 1,073,741,824.
 - **world-readable**—Allow any user to read the log file.
 - **flag**—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple **flag** statements.
 - **all**—Trace with all flags enabled
 - **compilation**—Trace rule set compilation events
 - **configuration**—Trace configuration events
 - **ipc**—Trace process inter communication events
 - **lookup**—Trace rule set lookup events
 - **level**—Set the level of debugging the output option.
 - **brief**—Match brief messages.
 - **detail**—Match detail messages.
 - **extensive**—Match extensive messages.
 - **verbose**—Match verbose messages.

- **no-remote-trace**—Set remote tracing as disabled.

Required Privilege Level services—To view this statement in the configuration.
 services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21](#)
 • [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)

traceoptions (Services UAC)

Syntax	<pre>traceoptions { file { filename; files number; match regular-expression; size maximum-file-size; (world-readable no-world-readable); } flag flag; no-remote-trace; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services unified-access-control]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Define Unified Access Control (UAC) tracing options.</p> <p>Use this statement when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series UAC Appliance.</p>
Options	<p>flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace option, include multiple flag statements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace with all flags enabled• config—Trace configuration information for all UAC-related configurations. This includes all configuration controlled through the unified-access-control statements at the edit services hierarchy level. It also includes other standard Junos OS configurations required for UAC enforcement such as zones, policies, and interfaces.• connect—Trace communications between the Junos OS Enforcer and the IC Series appliance, including SSL handshakes and timeouts.• ipc—Trace interprocess communications. Use this option to trace communications between the Routing Engine (RE) and the UACD enforcement plugin inside the Packet Forwarding Engine (PFE).
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding Unified Access Control on page 103• Acquiring User Role Information from an Active Directory Authentication Server on page 103

traceoptions (Services User Identification)

Syntax	<pre> traceoptions { file { filename; files number; match regular-expression; size maximum-file-size; (world-readable no-world-readable); } flag flag; level level ; no-remote-trace; } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Specify the name of the trace log file and its characteristics. Messages about the behavior of the authentication source are written to this log file. Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) is the authentication source for the SRX Series device integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature.
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

trusted-ca (Services)

Syntax	trusted-ca (all [<i>ca-profile</i>]);
Hierarchy Level	[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>] [edit services ssl initiation profile <i>profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the list of trusted certificate authority profiles. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices, and vSRX.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>trusted-ca-name</i>—Specify the certificate authority profile name.• <i>all</i>—Select all certificate authority profiles.
Required Privilege Level	services—To view this statement in the configuration. services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

uac-policy (Application Services)

Syntax	<pre>uac-policy { captive-portal <i>captive-portal</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit application-services]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	Enable Unified Access Control (UAC) for the security policy. This statement is required when you are configuring the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a UAC deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series UAC Appliance .
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Understanding User Role Firewalls</i>• <i>Example: Configuring a User Role Firewall on an SRX Series Device</i>

uac-service

Syntax	<pre>uac-service { command <i>binary-file-path</i>; disable; failover (alternate-media other-routing-engine); }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system processes]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the unified access control daemon process.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• command <i>binary-file-path</i>—Path to the binary process.• disable—Disable the unified access control daemon process.• failover—Configure the device to reboot if the software process fails four times within 30 seconds, and specify the software to use during the reboot.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• alternate-media—Configure the device to switch to backup media that contains a version of the system if a software process fails repeatedly.• other-routing-engine—Instruct the secondary Routing Engine to take mastership if a software process fails. If this statement is configured for a process, and that process fails four times within 30 seconds, then the device reboots from the secondary Routing Engine.
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

unified-access-control (Security)

Syntax	<code>unified-access-control priority <i>priority</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security user-identification authentication-source]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for disable option dropped in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	An authentication table pushed from a configured authentication device, such as the Junos Pulse Access Control Service.
Options	<p>priority <i>priority</i>—A unique value between 0 and 65535 that determines the sequence for searching multiple tables to retrieve a user role. Each authentication table is given a unique priority value. The lower the value, the higher the priority. A table with priority 120 is searched before a table with priority 200. The default priority value of the unified-access-control authentication table is 200.</p> <p>Setting the priority value of the unified-access-control authentication table to 0 is equivalent to disabling the table and eliminating it from the search sequence.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>authentication-source (Security)</i> • <i>Understanding User Role Firewalls</i> • <i>Understanding the User Identification Table</i>

unified-access-control (Services)

Syntax unified-access-control {
 captive-portal *redirect-policy-name*{
 redirect-traffic (all | unauthenticated);
 redirect-url *redirect-url*;
 }
 certificate-verification [optional | required | warning];
 infranet-controller *host-name* {
 address *ip-address*;
 ca-profile [*ca-profile*];
 interface *interface-name*;
 password *password*;
 port *port-number*;
 server-certificate-subject *subject*;
 }
 interval *seconds*;
 test-only-mode;
 timeout *seconds*;
 timeout-action (close | no-change | open);
 traceoptions {
 file {
 filename;
 files *number*;
 match *regular-expression*;
 (no-world-readable | world-readable);
 size *maximum-file-size*;
 }
 flag *flag*;
 no-remote-trace;
 }
}

Hierarchy Level [edit services]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.

Description Use this statement to configure the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series device.

Required Privilege Level services—To view this statement in the configuration.
services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

user-group-mapping

```
Syntax  user-group-mapping {
        ldap {
            address ip-address {
                port port;
            }
            authentication-algorithm {
                simple;
            }
            base base;
            ssl;
            user username {
                password password;
            }
        }
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit services user-identification active-directory-access domain]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.

Description Configure the SRX Series device to connect to an LDAP server, so that the server can provide the SRX Series with user-to-group mappings. These mappings are used to implement the integrated user firewall feature. The domain controller acts as the LDAP server in typical customer scenarios.

Most of this statement is optional, because the default communication method is LDAP and most arguments have default values. Only the LDAP keyword and the base are required.

Options **ldap**—Required. LDAP is the protocol used to access the LDAP server to get user-to-group mappings.

address *ip-address*—Optional. Specify the IP address of the LDAP server. If no address is specified, the system uses one of the configured Active Directory domain controllers.

port *port*—Optional. Specify the port number of the LDAP server. If no port number is specified, the system uses port 389 for plaintext or port 636 for encrypted text.

authentication-algorithm—Optional. Specify the algorithm used while the SRX Series communicates with the LDAP server. The default method is Kerberos.

simple—Configure simple (plaintext) authentication method.

base *base*—Required. LDAP base distinguished name (DN).

ssl—Optional. Enable Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) to ensure secure transmission with the LDAP server. Disabled by default, which means that the password is sent in plaintext.

user *username*—Optional. Username of the LDAP account. If no username is specified, the system will use the configured domain controller's username.

password *password*—Optional. Specify the password for the account. If no password is specified, the system uses the configured domain controller's password.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [active-directory-access on page 304](#)
- [clear services user-identification active-directory-access on page 480](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics on page 553](#)
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping on page 556](#)
- [traceoptions \(Active Directory Access\) on page 435](#)
- [user-identification \(Services\) on page 449](#)
- [LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152](#)

user-identification (Services)

```

Syntax  user-identification {
            active-directory-access {
                domain domain-name {
                    user username;
                    password password;
                    domain-controller domain-controller-name {
                        address domain-controller-address;
                    }
                }
            }
            ip-user-mapping {
                discovery-method {
                    wmi {
                        event-log-scanning-interval seconds;
                        initial-event-log-timespan hours;
                    }
                }
            }
            user-group-mapping {
                ldap {
                    address ip-address {
                        port port;
                    }
                    authentication-algorithm {
                        simple;
                    }
                    base base;
                    ssl;
                    user username {
                        password password;
                    }
                }
            }
            authentication-entry-timeout minutes;
            filter {
                include address;
                exclude address;
            }
            no-on-demand-probe;
            wmi-timeout seconds;
            traceoptions {
                file file;
                flag {
                    active-directory-authentication;
                    all;
                    configuration;
                    db;
                    ip-user-mapping;
                    ip-user-probe;
                    ipc;
                    user-group-mapping;
                    wmic;
                }
            }
        }

```

```
level {  
  all;  
  error;  
  info;  
  notice;  
  verbose;  
  warning;  
}  
no-remote-trace;  
}  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit services]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.

Description Configure the integrated user firewall feature, including access to the Active Directory domain and domain controller, IP address-to-user mapping, and user-to-group mapping. One or two Active Directories are allowed under one domain. The IP address-to-user mapping and user-to-group mapping are configured per domain.

Options **authentication-entry-timeout *minutes***—Timeout interval starting from the Active Directory/domain controller login time, the last active session, or the last successful probe. A setting of 0 means the authentication does not need a timeout. We recommend that you configure a setting of 0 when you disable on-demand-probe to prevent someone from accessing the Internet without logging in again.

Range: 10 through 1440 minutes

Default: 30 minutes

filter—Optional. Range of IP addresses that needs to be monitored or not monitored.

include *address*—Include IP address or range. Maximum of 20 addresses.

exclude *address*—Exclude IP address or range. Maximum of 20 addresses.

no-on-demand-probe—Do not use traffic to discover user. Default is disabled.

wmi-timeout *seconds*—Optional. Configures the number of seconds that the domain PC has to respond to the SRX Series device's query through WMI/DCOM.

- If the PC responds within that timeframe to the WMI query, the SRX creates an authentication entry for this PC.
- If the PC does not respond within that timeframe, the WMI query failed. In the case of a failed query, if the SRX had an authentication entry about the queried PC before the WMI query, that authentication entry is deleted. If the SRX had no authentication entry before the WMI query, the SRX does not create an authentication entry.

Range: 3 through 120 seconds

Default: 10 seconds

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [active-directory-access on page 304](#)
- [traceoptions \(Active Directory Access\) on page 435](#)

webapi (System Services)

Syntax

```
webapi {  
  client ip-address;  
  (  
    http {  
      port port-number;  
    }  
    https {  
      certificate certificate-filename;  
      certificate-key local-certificate-key;  
      default-certificate  
      pki-local-certificate;  
      port port-number;  
    }  
    user {  
      name;  
      password password;  
    }  
    debug-log filename;  
    debug-level level;  
  )  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit system services]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Configure the Web API function daemon (webapi) component of the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature. The Web API daemon acts as a HTTP or HTTPS server. The SRX Series device exposes to the Aruba ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) the Web API that allows the CPPM, as a client, to send POST request messages to it that provide the SRX Series device with user authentication and identity information. The CPPM serves as the user authentication source for the SRX Series device.

The Web API function (webapi) facilitates efficient transmission of user authentication and identity information from the CPPM to the SRX Series device. The CPPM, which is the client in this relationship, initiates a session with the SRX Series device Web API daemon, which is the server in this relationship. However, the CPPM can do this only if you have configured the Web API function on the SRX Series device. For security reasons, the Web API daemon is not enabled by default.

The configuring statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

webapi-clear-text (Security)

Syntax	web-api-cleartext
Hierarchy Level	[edit security zones security-zone <i>zone</i> host-inbound-traffic system-services]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Enable the Web API (webapi) service over HTTP host inbound traffic on TCP port 8080 for unencrypted data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

webapi-ssl (Security)

Syntax	webapi-ssl
Hierarchy Level	[edit security zones security-zone <i>zone</i> host-inbound-traffic system-services]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Enable the Web API service over HTTPS host inbound traffic on TCP port 8443.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

web-authentication

Syntax	<pre>web-authentication { client-match <i>user-or-group-name</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. HTTPS for Web authentication is supported on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.
Description	Specify that the policy allows access to users who have previously been authenticated by Web authentication. Web authentication must be enabled on one of the addresses on the interface to which the HTTP or HTTPS request is redirected.
Options	client-match <i>user-or-group</i> —(Optional) Username or user group name.
Required Privilege Level	security —To view this statement in the configuration. security-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Understanding User Role Firewalls</i>

web-authentication (Access)

Syntax	<pre>web-authentication { banner { success <i>string</i>; } default-profile <i>profile-name</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication]
Release Information	<p>Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.</p> <p>HTTPS for Web authentication is supported on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.</p>
Description	<p>Specify that users go through the Web authentication process. The user uses HTTP or HTTPS to access an IP address on the device that is enabled for Web authentication. In this scenario, the user does not use HTTP or HTTPS to access the IP address of the protected resource. The user is prompted for a username and password, which are verified by the device. Subsequent traffic from the user or host to the protected resource is allowed or denied based on the results of this authentication. This method of authentication differs from pass-through authentication in that users need to access the protected resource directly after accessing the Web authentication IP address and being authenticated.</p>
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

web-authentication (Interfaces)

Syntax	<pre>web-authentication { http; https; redirect-to-https; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit interfaces <i>interface-name</i> unit <i>logical-unit-number</i> family <i>family-name</i> address <i>address</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.2. Support for https and redirect-to-https introduced for SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.
Description	Enable the Web authentication process for firewall user authentication.
Options	http —Enable HTTP service. https —Enable authentication through HTTPS. redirect-to-https —Redirect Web authentication to HTTPS.
Required Privilege Level	interface—To view this statement in the configuration. interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Understanding Interfaces</i>

web-management (System Services)

```
Syntax  web-management {
        http {
            interfaces interface-names ;
            port port;
        }
        https {
            interfaces interface-names;
            local-certificate name;
            pki-local-certificate name;
            system-generated-certificate name;
            port port;
        }
        management url management url;
        session {
            idle-timeout minutes;
            session-limit number;
        }
        traceoptions {
            file {
                filename;
                files number;
                match regular-expression;
                size maximum-file-size;
                (no-world-readable | world-readable);
            }
            flag flag;
            level level;
            no-remote-trace;
        }
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit system services]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Support for **https** introduced for SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 devices starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.

Description Configure settings for HTTP or HTTPS access. HTTP access allows management of the device using the J-Web interface. HTTPS access allows secure management of the device using the J-Web interface. With HTTPS access, communication is encrypted between your browser and the webserver for your device.



NOTE: On SRX340 and SRX345 devices, the factory-default configuration has a generic HTTP configuration. To use ge and fxp0 ports as management ports, you must use the set system services web-management http command. The Web management HTTP and HTTPS interfaces are changed to fxp0.0 and from ge-0/0/1.0 through ge-0/0/7.0.

Options **control**—Disable the SBC process.

- **max-threads**—Maximum simultaneous threads to handle requests.

Range: 0 through 16

http—Configure HTTP.

- **interface [value]**—Interface value that accepts HTTP access.
- **port number**—TCP port for incoming HTTP connections.

Range: 1 through 65,535

https—Configure HTTPS.

- **interface [value]**—Interface value that accept HTTP access.
- **port number**—TCP port for incoming HTTP connections.
Range: 1 through 65,535
- **local-certificate**—X.509 certificate to use from the configuration.
- **pki-local-certificate**—X.509 certificate to use from the PKI local store.
- **system-generated-certificate**—X.509 certificate generated automatically by the system.

management url *management url*—URL path for Web management access.

session—Configure the Web-management session.

- **idle-timout minutes**—Default timeout of Web-management sessions in minutes.
- **session-limit number**—Maximum number of Web-management sessions to allow.

traceoptions—Set the trace options.

- **file**—Configure the trace file information.
 - *filename*—Name of the file to receive the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name in quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory **/var/log**. By default, the name of the file is the name of the process being traced.
 - **files number**—Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named **trace-file** reaches its maximum size, it is renamed **trace-file.0**, then **trace-file.1**, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the **size maximum file-size** option.

Range: 2 through 1000 files

Default: 10 files

- **match regular-expression**—Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.

- **size *maximum-file-size***—Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB).

Range: 10 KB through 1 GB

Default: 128 KB

If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files *number*** option.

- **(world-readable | no-world-readable)**— By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation. The **world-readable** option enables any user to read the file. To explicitly set the default behavior, use the **no-world-readable** option.
- **flag *flag***—Specify which tracing operation to perform. To specify more than one tracing operation, include multiple **flag** statements. You can include the following flags.
 - **all**—Trace all areas.
 - **configuration**—Trace configuration.
 - **dynamic-vpn**—Trace dynamic VPN events.
 - **init**—Trace the daemon init process.
 - **mgd**—Trace MGD requests.
 - **webauth**—Trace Web authentication requests.
- **level *level*** —Specify the level of debugging output.
 - **all**—Match all levels.
 - **error**—Match error conditions.
 - **info**—Match informational messages.
 - **notice**—Match conditions that should be handled specially.
 - **verbose**—Match verbose messages.
 - **warning**—Match warning messages.
- **no-remote-trace**—Disable remote tracing.

Required Privilege	system—To view this statement in the configuration.
Level	system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7 • Dynamic VPN Overview
------------------------------	---

web-redirect

Syntax	web-redirect;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication pass-through user-firewall]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, support for user-firewall added on SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX Services Gateways.
Description	Optionally, redirect HTTP requests to the device's internal webserver by sending a redirect HTTP response to the client system to reconnect to the webserver for user authentication. The interface on which the client's request arrived is the interface to which the request is redirected.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding User Role Firewalls

web-redirect-to-https

Syntax	web-redirect-to-https;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> then permit firewall-authentication pass-through user-firewall]
Release Information	Statement introduced on on SRX5600 and SRX5800 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10, and on vSRX, SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways starting from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40. Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D70, support for user-firewall added on SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX Services Gateways.
Description	Redirect unauthenticated HTTP requests to the internal HTTPS webserver of the device.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• UTM Feature Guide for Security Devices• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

web-server (Services)

Syntax	<code>web-server <i>server-name</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Specify the name of the webserver configuration on the SRX Series device used for the user query integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement function. The webserver is the ClearPass server to which the SRX Series device connects to request authentication and identity information for an individual user.</p> <p>When information for the individual user is not posted to the SRX Series device by ClearPass through Web API POST request messages, the SRX Series device can request this information from the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) under certain circumstances. You must enable the user query function by configuring it.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

whitelist (Services)

Syntax	<code>whitelist [global-address-book-addresses];</code>
Hierarchy Level	<p>[edit services ssl proxy profile <i>profile-name</i>]</p> <p>[edit services ssl termination profile <i>profile-name</i>]</p>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.
Description	Specify the addresses exempted from the SSL proxy. This statement is supported on the SRX1500, SRX4100, SRX4200, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and vSRX.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>whitelist-address</i>—Specify address from the global address book.
Required Privilege Level	<p>services—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>services-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configuring SSL Proxy on page 21 Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7

wins-server (Access)

Syntax	<code>wins-server address</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access address-assignment pool <name> family (inet inet6) xauth-attributes]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Release 10.4 of Junos OS.
Description	Specify the wins-server IP address.
Required Privilege Level	access—To view this statement in the configuration. access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Junos OS Security Configuration Guide</i>

CHAPTER 26

Operational Commands

- clear network-access requests pending
- clear network-access requests statistics
- clear network-access securid-node-secret-file
- clear security firewall-authentication history
- clear security firewall-authentication history address
- clear security firewall-authentication history identifier
- clear security firewall-authentication users
- clear security firewall-authentication users address
- clear security firewall-authentication users identifier
- clear security user-identification local-authentication-table
- clear services user-identification active-directory-access
- clear services user-identification authentication-table
- request services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table delete
- request services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller
- request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe
- request services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
- request services user-identification authentication-table delete
- show network-access requests pending
- show network-access requests statistics
- show network-access securid-node-secret-file
- show security firewall-authentication history
- show security firewall-authentication history address
- show security firewall-authentication history identifier
- show security firewall-authentication users
- show security firewall-authentication users address
- show security firewall-authentication users identifier
- show security policies

- `show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query counters`
- `show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query status`
- `show services unified-access-control authentication-table`
- `show services user-identification authentication-table`
- `show services user-identification device-information table`
- `show services unified-access-control counters`
- `show services unified-access-control policies`
- `show services unified-access-control roles`
- `show services unified-access-control status`
- `show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table`
- `show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status`
- `show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics`
- `show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping`

clear network-access requests pending

Syntax	clear network-access requests pending <index <i>index-number</i> >
Release Information	Command introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Clear or cancel all pending authentication requests.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Clear all network access requests pending. • index <i>index-number</i> —Clear the specified authentication request. To display index numbers, use the show network-access requests pending command.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • show network-access requests pending on page 493
List of Sample Output	clear network-access requests pending on page 465

Sample Output

The following example displays the network access requests that are pending, clears the requests, and displays the results of the clear operation:

clear network-access requests pending

```

user@host> show network-access requests pending
Information about pending authentication entries
  Total pending authentication requests: 2
Index User                Status
 1    Sun                  Processing
 2    Sam                  Processed

user@host> clear network-access requests pending
user@host> show network-access requests pending
Information about pending authentication entries
  Total pending authentication requests: 2
Index User                Status
 1    Sun                  Cancelled by Admin
 2    Sam                  Cancelled by Admin

```

clear network-access requests statistics

Syntax	clear network-access requests statistics
Release Information	Command introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Clear general authentication statistics for the configured authentication type.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>authentication-order (Access Profile)</i>• show network-access requests statistics on page 495
Output Fields	This command produces no output.

clear network-access securid-node-secret-file

Syntax	clear network-access securid-node-secret-file
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.1.
Description	Delete the node secret file for the SecurID authentication type.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7• configuration-file on page 328• securid-server on page 408• show network-access securid-node-secret-file on page 497
List of Sample Output	clear network-access securid-node-secret-file on page 467
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear network-access securid-node-secret-file

```
user@host> clear network-access securid-node-secret-file
```

clear security firewall-authentication history

Syntax	clear security firewall-authentication history <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear all firewall authentication history information.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear all firewall authentication history on a specific node (device) in the cluster.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.• all —Clear all nodes.• local —Clear the local node.• primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	clear security firewall-authentication history on page 468 clear security firewall-authentication history node 1 on page 468
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication history

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication history
node0:
-----
node1:
-----
```

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication history node 1

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication history node 1
node1:
-----
```


clear security firewall-authentication history address

Syntax	clear security firewall-authentication history address <i>address</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear firewall authentication history for this source IP address.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • address <i>address</i> —Source IP address for which to clear firewall authentication history. • none—Clear all firewall authentication history for this address. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear firewall authentication history for this address on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all —Clear all nodes. • local —Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	clear security firewall-authentication history address 10.0.0.1 on page 469 clear security firewall-authentication history address 192.0.2.2 node 1 on page 469
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication history address 10.0.0.1

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication history address 10.0.0.1
node0:
```

```
node1:
```

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication history address 192.0.2.2 node 1

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication history address 192.0.2.2 node 1
```

node1:

clear security firewall-authentication history identifier

Syntax	clear security firewall-authentication history identifier <i>identifier</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear firewall authentication history information for the authentication with this identifier.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifier <i>identifier</i> —Identification number of the authentication for which to clear authentication history. • none—Clear all firewall authentication history information for the authentication with this identifier. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear firewall authentication history on a specific node for the authentication with this identifier. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all —Clear all nodes. • local —Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	clear security firewall-authentication history identifier 2 on page 471 clear security firewall-authentication history identifier 2 node 1 on page 472
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication history identifier 2

```

user@host> clear security firewall-authentication history identifier 2
node0:
-----
node1:
-----

```

Sample Output

`clear security firewall-authentication history identifier 2 node 1`

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication history identifier 2 node 1
node1:
```

clear security firewall-authentication users

Syntax	clear security firewall-authentication users <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear firewall authentication tables for all users.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear firewall authentication details for all users on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all —Clear all nodes. • local —Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7 • show security firewall-authentication users on page 506
List of Sample Output	clear security firewall-authentication users on page 473 clear security firewall-authentication users node 1 on page 473
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication users

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication users node 1
node0:
-----
node1:
-----
```

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication users node 1

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication users node 1
node1:
-----
```


clear security firewall-authentication users address

Syntax	clear security firewall-authentication users address <i>address</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear information about the users at the specified IP address that are currently authenticated.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • address <i>address</i>—IP address for which to clear user firewall authentication information. • none—Clear all the firewall authentication information for users at this IP address. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear user firewall authentication entries on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Clear all nodes. • local—Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	clear security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.11 on page 475 clear security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.11 node 1 on page 476
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.11

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.11
node0:
```

```
node1:
```

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.11 node 1

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.11 node 1
node1:
```

clear security firewall-authentication users identifier

Syntax	clear security firewall-authentication users identifier <i>identifier</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear firewall authentication details about the user with this identification number.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Identification number of the user for which to clear authentication details. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear the firewall authentication details on a specific node (device) in the cluster for the user with this identification number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all —Clear all nodes. • local —Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	clear security firewall-authentication users identifier 2 on page 477 clear security firewall-authentication users identifier 2 node 1 on page 477
Output Fields	When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication users identifier 2

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication users identifier 2
node0:
-----
node1:
-----
```

Sample Output

clear security firewall-authentication users identifier 2 node 1

```
user@host> clear security firewall-authentication users identifier 2 node 1
```

node1:

clear security user-identification local-authentication-table

Syntax	clear security user-identification local-authentication-table
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Description	This command removes all entries from the local authentication table.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Understanding AppSecure Services</i>• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	clear security user-identification local-authentication-table on page 479
Output Fields	When you enter this command, all entries are cleared from the local authentication table.

Sample Output

clear security user-identification local-authentication-table

```
user@host> clear security user-identification local-authentication-table
user@host> show security user-identification local-authentication-table all
Total entries: 0
```

clear services user-identification active-directory-access

Syntax	clear services user-identification active-directory-access (active-directory-authentication-table statistics (ip-user-mapping ip-user-probe user-group-mapping))
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Delete entries from the Active Directory authentication table or statistics related to integrated user firewall mappings.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• active-directory-authentication-table—Remove all entries from the Active Directory authentication table.• statistics—Remove the specified type of statistics:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ip-user-mapping—IP address-to-user mappings• ip-user-probe—PC probe statistics• user-group-mapping—User-to-group mappings
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ip-user-mapping on page 366• request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe on page 484• show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics on page 553• show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping on page 556• user-group-mapping on page 447• user-identification (Services) on page 449
Output Fields	This command produces no output.

clear services user-identification authentication-table

Syntax	<code>clear services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source authentication-source</code> (all active-directory aruba-clearpass)
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Clear the contents of the ClearPass authentication table. The ClearPass authentication table, which is created by the SRX Series device on the Packet Forwarding Engine, is populated with user authentication and identity information received from Aruba ClearPass. Aruba ClearPass is the authentication source for the integrated ClearPass feature. You must <code>aruba-clearpass</code> as the authentication source.
Options	<i>authentication-source</i> —For the SRX Series integrated ClearPass feature, you must specify <code>aruba-clearpass</code> to indicate that ClearPass is the authentication source and that the authentication table relies on user information from the ClearPass Policy Manager.
Additional Information	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	clear
List of Sample Output	clear services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source on page 481
Output Fields	<p>If there are no entries in the ClearPass authentication table, the following warning message is displayed after you enter the <code>clear</code> command.</p> <p>There is no authentication-table entry.</p> <p>If there are entries in the ClearPass authentication table, no messages are displayed after you enter the <code>clear</code> command.</p>

Sample Output

clear services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source

```
user@host> clear services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass
warning: "There is no authentication-table entry."
```

request services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table delete

Syntax request services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table delete
(domain *name* | ip-address *ip-address* | group *group-name* <domain *name*> | user *name*
<domain *name*>

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.

Description Delete entries from the active directory authentication table by domain, address, group, or user. This command provides the network administrator with flexibility and control over the table entries beyond what is automatically added to or deleted from the table. For example, if a person leaves the company, the corresponding username can be deleted; after a department reorganization, a group can be deleted.

- Options**
- **domain *name***—Delete the entries from the authentication table for the specified domain.
 - **ip-address *ip-address***—Delete the entry from the authentication table for the specified IP address.
 - **group *group-name***—Delete the entries from the authentication table for the specified group.
 - **domain *name***—Delete the group only from the specified domain.
 - **user *name***—Delete the entries from the authentication table for the specified username.
 - **domain *name***—Delete the user only from the specified domain.

Required Privilege Level maintenance

- Related Documentation**
- [show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table on page 546](#)
 - [user-identification \(Services\) on page 449](#)
 - [Understanding Active Directory Authentication Tables on page 146](#)

Output Fields This command produces no output.

request services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller

Syntax	request services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller discovery domain <i>name</i>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Discover and display the name and address of all domain controllers in the specified domain.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • domain <i>name</i>—Name of the domain for which to get and display domain controller names and addresses.
Required Privilege Level	maintenance
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • active-directory-access on page 304 • show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status on page 550 • user-identification (Services) on page 449
List of Sample Output	request services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller discovery domain <domain-name> on page 483
Output Fields	This command displays the discovered domain controllers.

Sample Output

[request services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller discovery domain <domain-name>](#)

```
user@host> request services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller
discovery domain example.net
Domain: example.net
Domain controller: example-dc.example.net
Address: 192.0.2.2
```

request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe

Syntax	request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe address <i>ip-address</i> <domain <i>name</i> >
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Probe the PC at the specified IP address to get an authentication entry, which is used for the integrated user firewall feature. You can display the authentication table to see the results. If the probe succeeded, there will be a valid authentication entry. If the probe failed, there will be an invalid authentication entry.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• address <i>ip-address</i>—Probe the PC at this IP address.• domain <i>name</i>—Probe the IP address in the specified domain.
Required Privilege Level	maintenance
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear services user-identification active-directory-access on page 480• show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table on page 546• show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics on page 553• user-identification (Services) on page 449
List of Sample Output	show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table address <ip-address> on page 484
Output Fields	The following command displays the results of the IP address probe:

Sample Output

[show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table address <ip-address>](#)

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table address 192.0.2.3
Domain: example.net
Source-ip: 192.0.2.3
Username: user1
Groups:group1
State: Valid
Source: wmic
Access start date: 2014-03-10
Access start time: 13:59:56
Age time: 1437
```


[request services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query](#)

Syntax	<code>request services user-identification authentication-source <i>authentication-source</i> user-query address <i>ip-address</i></code>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Manually send to the ClearPass website a request for user authentication and identity information for an individual user. The command specifies the IP address of the user's device to identify the user whose information you want to obtain. If the user query command executes successfully, an entry for the user (IP address) has been created in the ClearPass authentication table, and no output is displayed.</p> <p>The user query function is part of the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature. The user query function, if configured, allows the SRX Series device to send requests for individual user information. This command also allows you to manually send requests. Normally administrators send query requests manually to troubleshoot issues.</p> <p>The user query function supplements use of the Web API function. The SRX Series device exposes to ClearPass a Web API that ClearPass uses to send POST request messages to the SRX Series device. These messages contain user authentication and identity information.</p>
Options	<i>ip-address</i> —The IP address of the user's device for whom you are manually requesting authentication information.
Required Privilege Level	maintenance
List of Sample Output	request services user-identification authentication-source authentication-source user-query address ip-address on page 485

Sample Output

```
request services user-identification authentication-source authentication-source user-query address ip-address

user@host> request services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query
address 40.0.0.1
```

request services user-identification authentication-table delete

Syntax	<code>request services user-identification authentication-table delete (ip-address <i>ip-address</i> authentication-source (all active-directory <i>authentication-source</i> (domain <i>domain-name</i> group <i>group-name</i> user <i>user-name</i>))</code>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Delete entries from the ClearPass authentication table based on the IP address of the user's device, or on the authentication source and the name of a domain, a group, or a user. When only the authentication source is specified, the entire ClearPass authentication table is deleted. For the integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature, the authentication source is always aruba-clearpass.
Options	<p><i>ip-address</i>—Deletes a user authentication entry from the ClearPass authentication table, and the Active Directory (AD) table, based on the IP address of the user's device.</p> <p><i>authentication-source</i> —Deletes user entries from the ClearPass authentication table. In the CLI, ClearPass as the authentication source is referred to by the value <code>aruba-clearpass</code> as is the ClearPass authentication table. To identify the user entries to be deleted, you specify a domain, a group, or a username.</p> <p><i>domain-name</i>—Deletes from the ClearPass authentication table user entries for users who belong to the specified domain.</p> <p><i>group group-name</i>—Deletes the entry entry from the ClearPass authentication table for users who belong to the group, regardless of whether they belong to other groups.</p> <p><i>user user-name</i>—Deletes the entry for the specified user from the ClearPass authentication table.</p>
Required Privilege Level	maintenance
List of Sample Output	<p>request services user-identification authentication-table delete ip-address on page 487</p> <p>request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source aruba-clearpass domain on page 487</p> <p>request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source aruba-clearpass group on page 488</p> <p>request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source aruba-clearpass on page 490</p>
Output Fields	The following examples cover how to delete various user entries from the ClearPass authentication table based on the specified parameter. It also shows how to check to ensure that the user entries were deleted successfully.

Sample Output

request services user-identification authentication-table delete ip-address

The following command deletes the entry for the user whose device IP address is specified.

```
user@host> request services user-identification authentication-table delete ip-address 50.0.0.1
```

Before you delete the entry:

To ensure that the entry exists in the ClearPass authentication table, use the following command to display the entry for the user. Note that the ClearPass authentication table includes the user entry with the IP address 50.0.0.1.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table ip-address 50.0.0.1
```

Domain: GLOBAL

Source-ip: 50.0.0.1

Username: guest1

Groups:posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2015-12-14

Access start time: 17:07:23

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47

Age time: 0

After you delete the user entry associated with the IP address, enter the command again to verify that the entry has been deleted.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table ip-address 50.0.0.1
```

warning: "This IP address isn't in authentication table."

request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source aruba-clearpass domain

The following command deletes the specified domain.

```
user@host> request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source domain global
```

Before you delete the domain contents from the ClearPass authentication table, use the following command to display the domain information to ensure that it exists. Note that the ClearPass authentication table includes the global domain.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass domain global extensive
```

Domain: GLOBAL

Total entries: 6

Source-ip: 10.0.0.1

Username: viki2

Groups:posture-healthy, accounting-grp, accounting-grp-and-company-device, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]

Groups referenced by policy:accounting-grp-and-company-device

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2016-03-08

Access start time: 17:20:30

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:02:48

Age time: 0

Source-ip: 20.0.0.1

Username: abew1

Groups:posture-unknown, marketing-access-limited-grp, [user authenticated]

```
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-limited-grp
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:31:40
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:18:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 30.0.0.1
Username: jxchan
Groups:posture-healthy, marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
marketing-general, sales-limited, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:22:48
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:46:21
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 40.0.0.1
Username: lchen1
Groups:posture-healthy, human-resources-grp, accounting-limited,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:21:37
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:41:18
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 50.0.0.1
Username: guest1
Groups:posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:10
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 50.0.0.2
Username: guest2
Groups:posture-healthy, guest-device-byod, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:21
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:52:44
Age time: 0
```

After you delete the domain, use the command again to verify that the domain and its user members was deleted.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass domain global
warning: "There is no related auth entry in authentication-table."
```

request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source aruba-clearpass group

The following command deletes the entries for any users who belong to the group posture-healthy.

```
user@host> request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source
aruba-clearpass group posture-healthy
```

Before you delete the group contents from the ClearPass authentication table, use the following command to display it to ensure that the group is used in some user entries. Notice that the appropriate user entries contain the posture-healthy group.

```
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source-ip: 10.0.0.1
  Username: viki2
  Groups: posture-healthy, accounting-grp, accounting-grp-and-company-device,
  corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
  Groups referenced by policy: accounting-grp-and-company-device
  State: Valid
  Source: Aruba ClearPass
  Access start date: 2016-03-08
  Access start time: 17:20:30
  Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:02:48
  Age time: 0
Source-ip: 20.0.0.1
  Username: abew1
  Groups: posture-unknown, marketing-access-limited-grp, [user authenticated]
  Groups referenced by policy: marketing-access-limited-grp
  State: Valid
  Source: Aruba ClearPass
  Access start date: 2016-03-08
  Access start time: 17:31:40
  Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:18:48
  Age time: 0
Source-ip: 30.0.0.1
  Username: jxchan
  Groups: posture-healthy, marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
  marketing-general, sales-limited, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
  Groups referenced by policy: marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group
  State: Valid
  Source: Aruba ClearPass
  Access start date: 2016-03-08
  Access start time: 17:22:48
  Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:46:21
  Age time: 0
Source-ip: 40.0.0.1
  Username: lchen1
  Groups: posture-healthy, human-resources-grp, accounting-limited,
  corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
  State: Valid
  Source: Aruba ClearPass
  Access start date: 2016-03-08
  Access start time: 17:21:37
  Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:41:18
  Age time: 0
Source-ip: 50.0.0.1
  Username: guest1
  Groups: posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]
  State: Valid
  Source: Aruba ClearPass
  Access start date: 2016-03-08
  Access start time: 17:23:10
  Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47
  Age time: 0
Source-ip: 50.0.0.2
```

```
Username: guest2
Groups:posture-healthy, guest-device-byod, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:21
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:52:44
Age time: 0
```

Enter the **show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass group posture-healthy** to display the entries for the users who belong to the group posture-healthy.

Notice that the group name does not show up in the column for groups referenced by policy because it is not one. Notice, too, that the output contains information for only those users who belong to the group. It does not include an entry for the user abew1, who does not belong to the group.

```
Domain: GLOBAL
Source IP      Username      groups(Ref by policy)      state
10.0.0.1       viki2         accounting-grp-and-company-dev Valid
30.0.0.1       jxchan        marketing-access-for-pcs-limit Valid
40.0.0.1       lchen1        corporate-limited          Valid
50.0.0.1       guest1        [user authenticated]       Valid
50.0.0.2       guest2        [user authenticated]       Valid
```

After you delete the group, use the command again to verify that it has been deleted.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass group posture-healthy
warning: "There is no related auth entry in authentication-table."
```

For further verification, you can use the following command to check the entry for one of the users who belonged to the group:

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass user viki2
warning: "There is no related auth entry in authentication-table."
```

request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source aruba-clearpass

The following command deletes the ClearPass authentication table (aruba-clearpass).

```
user@host> request services user-identification authentication-table delete authentication-source
aruba-clearpass
```

Before you delete the ClearPass authentication table, use the following command to display it to ensure that the table exists.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source-ip: 10.0.0.1
Username: viki2
Groups:posture-healthy, accounting-grp, accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:accounting-grp-and-company-device
```

```

State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:20:30
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:02:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 20.0.0.1
Username: abew1
Groups:posture-unknown, marketing-access-limited-grp, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-limited-grp
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:31:40
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:18:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 30.0.0.1
Username: jxchan
Groups:posture-healthy, marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
marketing-general, sales-limited, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:22:48
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:46:21
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 40.0.0.1
Username: lchen1
Groups:posture-healthy, human-resources-grp, accounting-limited,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:21:37
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:41:18
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 50.0.0.1
Username: guest1
Groups:posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:10
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 50.0.0.2
Username: guest2
Groups:posture-healthy, guest-device-byod, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:21
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:52:44
Age time: 0

```

To verify that you deleted the authentication table successfully, enter the command again:

```

user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass

```

warning: "There is no authentication-table entry."

show network-access requests pending

Syntax	show network-access requests pending <detail> <index <i>number</i> >
Release Information	Command introduced in Release 8.5 of Junos OS.
Description	Display the status of pending authentication requests.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Show pending authentication requests. • show network-access requests pendingshow network-access requests pending detail—Display detailed information about all pending requests. • <i>index number</i>—(Optional) Display detailed information about the request specified by this index number. Use the command without options to obtain a list of requests and index numbers.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear network-access requests pending on page 465
List of Sample Output	show network-access requests pending on page 494 show network-access requests pending detail on page 494 show network-access requests pending index 1 on page 494
Output Fields	Table 27 on page 493 lists the output fields for the show network-access requests pending command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 27: show network-access requests pending Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Index	Internal number identifying the pending request. Use this number to obtain more information on the record.
User	Originator of authentication request.

Table 27: show network-access requests pending Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Status	<p>The pending requests are requests and responses that are not yet sent back to the respective clients. The pending requests can be in one of the following states:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Processing: This request is being processed by the device. The authentication process has started but is not complete. • Waiting on Auth Server: The request is sent to an external authentication server, and the device is waiting for the response. • Processed: This request has completed authentication (success or failure). The results are not yet forwarded back to the client. • Request cancelled by Admin: This request was cancelled by the Admin. The reply with cancel code is not yet sent back to the client.
Profile	<p>The profile determines how the user is authenticated.</p> <p>Local clients defined with the statement access profile client are authenticated with the password authentication. Clients configured external to the device, on a RADIUS or LDAP server are authenticated with RADIUS or LDAP authentication.</p>

Sample Output

show network-access requests pending

```

user@host> show network-access requests pending
Information about pending authentication entries
  Total pending authentication requests: 2
Index  User              Status
 1     Sun              Processing
 2     Sam              Processed

```

Sample Output

show network-access requests pending detail

```

user@host> show network-access requests pending detail
Information about pending authentication entries
  Total pending authentication requests: 2
Index: 1  User: Sun
  Status: Processing
  Profile: Sunnyvale-firewall-users
Index: 2  User: Sam
  Status: Processed
  Profile: Westford-profile

```

Sample Output

show network-access requests pending index 1

```

user@host> show network-access requests pending index 1
Index: 1  User: Sun
  Status: Processing
  Profile: Sunnyvale-firewall-users

```

show network-access requests statistics

Syntax	show network-access requests statistics
Release Information	Command modified in Release 9.1 of Junos OS.
Description	Display authentication statistics for the configured authentication type.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> clear network-access requests statistics on page 466
Output Fields	Table 28 on page 495 lists the output fields for the network-access requests statistics command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 28: show network-access requests statistics Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Total requests received	Total number of authentication requests that the device received from clients.
Total responses sent	Total number of authentication responses that the device sent to the clients.
Success responses	Total number of clients that authenticated successfully.
Failure responses	Total number of clients that failed to authenticate.

show network-access requests statistics

```

user@host> show network-access requests statistics
General authentication statistics
  Total requests received: 100
  Total responses sent: 70
Radius authentication statistics
  Total requests received: 40
  Success responses: 20
  Failure responses: 20
LDAP authentication statistics
  Total requests received: 30
  Success responses: 15
  Failure responses: 15
Local authentication statistics
  Total requests received: 5
  Success responses: 2
  Failure responses: 3
Securid authentication statistics
  Total requests received: 15
  Success responses: 3
  Failure responses: 12

```


show network-access securid-node-secret-file

Syntax	<code>show network-access securid-node-secret-file</code>
Release Information	Command introduced in Release 9.1 of Junos OS.
Description	Display the path to the node secret file for the SecurID authentication type.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • configuration-file on page 328 • securid-server on page 408 • clear network-access securid-node-secret-file on page 467
List of Sample Output	show network-access securid-node-secret-file on page 497
Output Fields	Table 29 on page 497 lists the output fields for the network-access securid-node-secret-file command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 29: show network-access securid-node-secret-file Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
SecurID Server	Name of the SecurID authentication server.
Node Secret File	Path to the node secret file.

Sample Output

show network-access securid-node-secret-file

```

user@host> show network-access securid-node-secret-file
SecurID server node secret file:
SecurID Server      Node Secret File
ace-server1         /var/db/securid/ace-server1/node-secret

```

show security firewall-authentication history

Syntax	show security firewall-authentication history <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display security firewall authentication history information.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display history of firewall authentication information. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display all firewall authentication history on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Understanding Logical System Firewall Authentication</i> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show security firewall-authentication history on page 499 show security firewall-authentication history node all on page 499
Output Fields	Table 30 on page 498 lists the output fields for the show security firewall-authentication history command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 30: show security firewall-authentication history Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Authentications	Number of authentications.
Id	Identification number.
Source IP	IP address of the authentication source.
Date	Authentication date.
Time	Authentication time.

Table 30: show security firewall-authentication history Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Duration	Authentication duration.
Status	Authentication status success or failure.
User	Name of the user.

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication history

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history
History of firewall authentication data:
  Authentications: 1
      Id Source Ip      Date      Time      Duration  Status  User
      1 203.0.113.1     2007-04-03 11:43:06  00:00:45  Success hello

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication history node all

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history node all
node0:
-----
History of firewall authentication data:
  Authentications: 2
  Id Source Ip      Date      Time      Duration  Status  User
  1 203.0.113.1     2008-01-04 12:00:10  0:05:49  Success  local1
  2 203.0.113.1     2008-01-04 14:36:52  0:01:03  Success  local1
node1:
-----
History of firewall authentication data:
  Authentications: 1
      Id Source Ip      Date      Time      Duration  Status  User
      203.0.113.1     2008-01-04 14:59:43  1193046:06: Success local1

```

show security firewall-authentication history address

Syntax	show security firewall-authentication history address <i>ip-address</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display security firewall authentication history for this source IP address.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • address <i>ip-address</i> —IP address of the authentication source. • none—Display all firewall authentication history for this address. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display firewall authentication history for this address on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show security firewall-authentication history address 198.51.100.17 on page 501 show security firewall-authentication history address 198.51.100.17 node local on page 501
Output Fields	Table 31 on page 500 lists the output fields for the show security firewall-authentication history address command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 31: show security firewall-authentication history address Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Username	User ID.
Source IP	IP address of the authentication source.
Authentication state	Status of authentication (success or failure).
Authentication method	Path chosen for authentication.

Table 31: show security firewall-authentication history address Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Access start date	Date when user authenticated.
Access start time	Time when user authenticated.
Duration of user access	Time duration of the accessing firewall.
Policy name	Name of the policy.
Source zone	User traffic received from the zone.
Destination zone	User traffic destined to the zone.
Access profile	Name of profile used for authentication.
Bytes sent by this user	Number of bytes sent by the user.
Bytes received by this user	Number of bytes received by the user.

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication history address 198.51.100.17

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history address 198.51.100.17
Username: u1
Source IP: 198.51.100.17
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using HTTP
Access start date: 2007-09-12
Access start time: 15:33:29
Duration of user access: 0:00:48
Policy name: Z1-Z2
Source zone: Z1
Destination zone: Z2
Access profile: profile-local
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 449

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication history address 198.51.100.17 node local

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history address 198.51.100.17 node local
node0:
-----
Username: local1
Source IP: 198.51.100.17
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access start date: 2008-01-04
Access start time: 12:00:10
Duration of user access: 0:05:49

```

Policy name: POL1
Source zone: z1
Destination zone: z2
Access profile: p1
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 0
Username: local1
Source IP: 198.51.100.17
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access start date: 2008-01-04
Access start time: 14:36:52
Duration of user access: 0:01:03
Policy name: POL1
Source zone: z1
Destination zone: z2
Access profile: p1
Bytes sent by this user: 2178
Bytes received by this user: 4172

show security firewall-authentication history identifier

Syntax	show security firewall-authentication history identifier <i>identifier</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display security firewall authentication history information for the authentication with this identifier.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifier <i>identifier</i>—Identifying number of the authentication process. • none—Display all firewall authentication history information for the authentication with this identifier. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display firewall authentication history on a specific node for the authentication with this identifier. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1 on page 504 show security firewall-authentication identifier 1 node primary on page 504
Output Fields	Table 32 on page 503 lists the output fields for the show security firewall-authentication history identifier command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 32: show security firewall-authentication history identifier Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Username	User ID.
Source IP	IP address of the authentication source.
Authentication state	Status of authentication (success or failure).

Table 32: show security firewall-authentication history identifier Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Authentication method	Path chosen for authentication.
Access start date	Date when user authenticated.
Access start time	Time when user authenticated.
Duration of user access	Time duration of the accessing firewall.
Policy index	Identification number of the policy.
Policy name	Name of the policy.
Source zone	User traffic received from the zone.
Destination zone	User traffic destined to the zone.
Access profile	Name of profile used for authentication.
Bytes sent by this user	Number of bytes sent by the user.
Bytes received by this user	Number of bytes received by the user.
Client-groups	Name of the client group.

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1
Username: hello
Source IP: 192.0.2.5
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access start date: 2007-04-03
Access start time: 11:43:06
Duration of user access: 00:00:45
Policy index: 4
Source zone: z2
Destination zone: z1
Access profile: profile1
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 1050
Client-groups: Sunnyvale Bangalore

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication identifier 1 node primary

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1 node primary

```

node0:

Username: local1
Source IP: 192.0.2.5
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access start date: 2008-01-04
Access start time: 12:00:10
Duration of user access: 0:05:49
Policy name: POL1
Source zone: z1
Destination zone: z2
Access profile: p1
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 0

show security firewall-authentication users

Syntax	show security firewall-authentication users <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary) >
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display firewall authentication details about all users.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display details about all firewall authentication users. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display firewall authentication details for all users on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show security firewall-authentication users on page 507 show security firewall-authentication users node 0 on page 507 show security firewall-authentication users node all on page 507
Output Fields	Table 33 on page 506 lists the output fields for the show security firewall-authentication users command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 33: show security firewall-authentication users Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Total users in table	Gives count of how many entries/users the command will display.
Id	Identification number.
Source IP	IP address of the authentication source.
Src zone	User traffic received from the zone.
Dst zone	User traffic destined to the zone.

Table 33: show security firewall-authentication users Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Profile	Name of profile used for authentication.
Age	Idle timeout for the user.
Status	Authentication status success or failure.
User	Name of the user.

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users
Firewall authentication data:
  Total users in table: 1
      Id Source Ip      Src zone Dst zone Profile  Age Status  User
      1 192.0.2.5/24    z1      z2      p1         0 Success local1

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users node 0

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users node 0
node0:
-----
Firewall authentication data:
  Total users in table: 1
      Id Source Ip      Src zone Dst zone Profile  Age Status  User
      3 192.0.2.5/24    z1      z2      p1         1 Success local1

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users node all

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users node all
node0:
-----
Firewall authentication data:
  Total users in table: 1
      Id Source Ip      Src zone Dst zone Profile  Age Status  User
      3 192.0.2.5      z1      z2      p1         1 Success local1

node1:
-----
Firewall authentication data:
  Total users in table: 1
      Id Source Ip      Src zone Dst zone Profile  Age Status  User
      2 192.0.2.5      z1      z2      p1         1 Success local1

```

show security firewall-authentication users address

Syntax	show security firewall-authentication users address <i>ip-address</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display information about the users at the specified IP address that are currently authenticated.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • address <i>ip-address</i>—IP address of the authentication source. • none—Display all the firewall authentication information for users at this IP address. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display user firewall authentication entries on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Understanding User Role Firewalls</i>
List of Sample Output	show security firewall-authentication users address 192.0.2.9 on page 509 show security firewall-authentication users address 192.0.2.9 node local on page 509 show security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.29 on page 510
Output Fields	Table 34 on page 508 lists the output fields for the show security firewall-authentication users address command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 34: show security firewall-authentication users address Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Username	User ID.
Source IP	IP address of the authentication source.
Authentication state	Status of authentication (success or failure).

Table 34: show security firewall-authentication users address Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Authentication method	Path chosen for authentication.
Access time remaining	Duration for which the connection exists.
Lsys	The logical system where the traffic was received.
Source zone	User traffic received from the zone.
Destination zone	User traffic destined to the zone.
Policy index	Identification number of the policy.
Policy name	Name of the policy.
Access profile	Name of profile used for authentication.
Interface Name	Name of the interface.
Bytes sent by this user	Number of bytes sent by the user.
Bytes received by this user	Number of bytes received by the user.
Client-groups	Name of the client group.

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users address 192.0.2.9

```

user@host>show security firewall-authentication users address 192.0.2.9
Username: hello
Source IP: 192.0.2.9
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access time remaining: 0
Source zone: z2
Destination zone: z1
Policy index: 5
Access profile: profile1
Interface Name: ge-0/0/2.0
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 0
Client-groups: my-group1-example, my-group2-example

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users address 192.0.2.9 node local

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users address 192.0.2.9 node local
node0:
-----

```

```
Username: local1
Source IP: 192.0.2.9
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Age: 2
Access time remaining: 4
Source zone: z1
Destination zone: z2
Policy name: POL1
Access profile: p1
Interface Name: reth1.0
Bytes sent by this user: 614
Bytes received by this user: 1880
```

show security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.29

```
user@host> show security firewall-authentication users address 198.51.100.29
Username: hello
Source IP: 198.51.100.29/24
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: User-firewall
Age: 0
Access time remaining: 10
Lsys: root-logical-system
Source zone: N/A
Destination zone: N/A
Access profile: test
```

show security firewall-authentication users identifier

Syntax	show security firewall-authentication users identifier <i>identifier</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display firewall authentication details about the user with this identification number.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • identifier <i>identifier</i>—Identification number of the user for which to display authentication details. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display the firewall authentication details security firewall authentication entry on a specific node (device) in the cluster for the user with this identification number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3 on page 512 show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3 node primary on page 512
Output Fields	Table 35 on page 511 lists the output fields for the show security firewall-authentication users identifier command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 35: show security firewall-authentication users identifier Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Username	User ID.
Source IP	IP address of the authentication source.
Authentication state	Status of authentication (success or failure).
Authentication method	Path chosen for authentication.

Table 35: show security firewall-authentication users identifier Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Age	Idle timeout for the user.
Access time remaining	Duration for which the connection exists.
Source zone	User traffic received from the zone.
Destination Zone	User traffic destined to the zone.
Policy Name	Name of the policy.
Access profile	Name of profile used for authentication.
Interface Name	Name of the interface
Bytes sent by this user	Number of bytes sent by the user.
Bytes received by this user	Number of bytes received by the user.

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3
Username: u1
Source IP: 198.51.100.39
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using HTTP
Age: 1
Access time remaining: 254
Source zone: Z1
Destination zone: Z2
Policy name: Z1-Z2
Access profile: profile-local
Interface Name: ge-0/0/1.0
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 449

```

Sample Output

show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3 node primary

```

user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3 node primary
node0:
-----
Username: local1
Source IP: 198.51.100.39
Authentication state: Success
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Age: 1
Access time remaining: 5
Source zone: z1

```

```
Destination zone: z2  
Policy name: POL1  
Access profile: p1  
Interface Name: reth1.0  
Bytes sent by this user: 614  
Bytes received by this user: 1880
```

show security policies

Syntax	show security policies none <detail> policy-name <i>policy-name</i> <global>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2. Support for IPv6 addresses added in Junos OS Release 10.2. Support for wildcard addresses added in Junos OS Release 11.1. Support for global policy added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for services offloading added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Support for source-identities added in Junos OS Release 12.1. The Description output field added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for negated address added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. The output fields for Policy Statistics expanded, and the output fields for the global and policy-name options expanded to include from-zone and to-zone global match criteria in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10. Support for the initial-tcp-mss and reverse-tcp-mss options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20. Output field and description for source-end-user-profile option added in Junos OS Release 15.1x49-D70.
Description	Display a summary of all security policies configured on the device. If a particular policy is specified, display information specific to that policy.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• none—Display basic information about all configured policies.• detail—(Optional) Display a detailed view of all of the policies configured on the device.• policy-name <i>policy-name</i>—(Optional) Display information about a specified policy.• global—(Optional) Display information about global policies.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Rules</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Elements</i>
List of Sample Output	show security policies on page 517 show security policies policy-name detail on page 518 show security policies (Services-Offload) on page 519 show security policies (Device Identity) on page 519 show security policies detail on page 519 show security policies detail (TCP Options) on page 520 show security policies policy-name (Negated Address) on page 521 show security policies policy-name detail (Negated Address) on page 521 show security policies global on page 521

Output Fields Table 36 on page 515 lists the output fields for the **show security policies** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 36: show security policies Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
From zone	Name of the source zone.
To zone	Name of the destination zone.
Policy	Name of the applicable policy.
Description	Description of the applicable policy.
State	Status of the policy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • enabled: The policy can be used in the policy lookup process, which determines access rights for a packet and the action taken in regard to it. • disabled: The policy cannot be used in the policy lookup process, and therefore it is not available for access control.
Index	Internal number associated with the policy.
Sequence number	Number of the policy within a given context. For example, three policies that are applicable in a from-zoneA-to-zoneB context might be ordered with sequence numbers 1, 2, 3. Also, in a from-zoneC-to-zoneD context, four policies might have sequence numbers 1, 2, 3, 4.
Source addresses	For standard display mode, the names of the source addresses for a policy. Address sets are resolved to their individual names. For detail display mode, the names and corresponding IP addresses of the source addresses for a policy. Address sets are resolved to their individual address name-IP address pairs.
Destination addresses	Name of the destination address (or address set) as it was entered in the destination zone's address book. A packet's destination address must match this value for the policy to apply to it.
source-end-user-profile	Name of the device identity profile (referred to as end-user-profile in the CLI) that contains attributes, or characteristics of a device. Specification of the device identity profile in the source-end-user-profile field is part of the device identity feature. If a device matches the attributes specified in the profile and other security policy parameters, then the security policy's action is applied to traffic issuing from the device.
Source addresses (excluded)	Name of the source address excluded from the policy.
Destination addresses (excluded)	Name of the destination address excluded from the policy.
Source identities	One or more user roles specified for a policy.

Table 36: show security policies Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Applications	<p>Name of a preconfigured or custom application whose type the packet matches, as specified at configuration time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP protocol: The Internet protocol used by the application—for example, TCP, UDP, ICMP. • ALG: If an ALG is explicitly associated with the policy, the name of the ALG is displayed. If application-protocol ignore is configured, ignore is displayed. Otherwise, 0 is displayed. However, even if this command shows ALG: 0, ALGs might be triggered for packets destined to well-known ports on which ALGs are listening, unless ALGs are explicitly disabled or when application-protocol ignore is not configured for custom applications. • Inactivity timeout: Elapsed time without activity after which the application is terminated. • Source port range: The low-high source port range for the session application.
Destination Address Translation	<p>Status of the destination address translation traffic:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • drop translated—Drop the packets with translated destination addresses. • drop untranslated—Drop the packets without translated destination addresses.
Application Firewall	<p>An application firewall includes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rule-set—Name of the rule set. • Rule—Name of the rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dynamic applications—Name of the applications. • Dynamic application groups—Name of the application groups. • Action—The action taken with respect to a packet that matches the application firewall rule set. Actions include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • permit • deny • Default rule—The default rule applied when the identified application is not specified in any rules of the rule set.
Action or Action-type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The action taken in regard to a packet that matches the policy's tuples. Actions include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • permit • firewall-authentication • tunnel ipsec-vpn <i>vpn-name</i> • pair-policy <i>pair-policy-name</i> • source-nat pool <i>pool-name</i> • pool-set <i>pool-set-name</i> • interface • destination-nat <i>name</i> • deny • reject • services-offload
Session log	<p>Session log entry that indicates whether the at-create and at-close flags were set at configuration time to log session information.</p>

Table 36: show security policies Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Scheduler name	Name of a preconfigured scheduler whose schedule determines when the policy is active and can be used as a possible match for traffic.
Policy statistics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input bytes—The total number of bytes presented for processing by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of bytes presented for processing by the device from the initial direction. • Reply direction—The number of bytes presented for processing by the device from the reply direction. • Output bytes—The total number of bytes actually processed by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of bytes from the initial direction actually processed by the device. • Reply direction—The number of bytes from the reply direction actually processed by the device. • Input packets—The total number of packets presented for processing by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of packets presented for processing by the device from the initial direction. • Reply direction—The number of packets presented for processing by the device from the reply direction. • Output packets—The total number of packets actually processed by the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial direction—The number of packets actually processed by the device from the initial direction. • Reply direction—The number of packets actually processed by the device from the reply direction. • Session rate—The total number of active and deleted sessions. • Active sessions—The number of sessions currently present because of access control lookups that used this policy. • Session deletions—The number of sessions deleted since system startup. • Policy lookups—The number of times the policy was accessed to check for a match.
Per policy TCP Options	Configured syn and sequence checks, and the configured TCP MSS value for the initial direction and /or the reverse direction.

Sample Output

show security policies

```

user@host> show security policies
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses:
sa-1-ipv4: 198.51.100.11/24
sa-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
sa-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::22/32
sa-4-wc: 203.0.113.1/255.255.0.255
Destination addresses:
da-1-ipv4: 2.2.2.2/24
da-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::8/32
da-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
da-4-wc: 192.168.22.11/255.255.0.255

```

```

Source identities: role1, role2, role4
Applications: any
Action: permit, application services, log, scheduled
Application firewall : my_ruleset1
Policy: p2, State: enabled, Index: 5, Sequence number: 2
Source addresses:
sa-1-ipv4: 198.51.100.11/24
sa-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
sa-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::22/32
Destination addresses:
da-1-ipv4: 2.2.2.2/24
da-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
da-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
Source identities: role1, role4
Applications: any
Action: deny, scheduled

```

show security policies policy-name detail

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name p1 detail
Policy: p1, action-type: permit, State: enabled, Index: 4
Description: The policy p1 is for the sales team
Sequence number: 1
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses:
sa-1-ipv4: 198.51.100.11/24
sa-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
sa-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
sa-4-wc: 203.0.113.1/255.255.0.255
Destination addresses:
da-1-ipv4: 192.0.2.0/24
da-2-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::1/32
da-3-ipv6: 2001:db8:a0b:12f0::9/32
da-4-wc: 192.168.22.11/255.255.0.255
Source identities:
role1
role2
role4
Application: any
IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
Source port range: [0-0]
Destination port range: [0-0]
Destination Address Translation: drop translated
Application firewall :
Rule-set: my_ruleset1
Rule: rule1
Dynamic Applications: junos:FACEBOOK-ACCESS, junos:YMSG
Dynamic Application groups: junos:web, junos:chat
Action: deny
Default rule: permit
Session log: at-create, at-close
Scheduler name: sch20
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No
Policy statistics:
Input bytes      : 18144      545 bps
Initial direction: 9072       272 bps
Replay direction : 9072       272 bps
Output bytes     : 18144      545 bps
Initial direction: 9072       272 bps
Replay direction : 9072       272 bps
Input packets    : 216        6 pps

```

Initial direction:	108	3 bps
Reply direction :	108	3 bps
Output packets :	216	6 pps
Initial direction:	108	3 bps
Reply direction :	108	3 bps
Session rate :	108	3 sps
Active sessions :	93	
Session deletions :	15	
Policy lookups :	108	

show security policies (Services-Offload)

```

user@host> show security policies
Default policy: deny-all
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
  Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
    Source addresses: any
    Destination addresses: any
    Source identities: role1, role2, role4
    Applications: any
    Action: permit, services-offload, count
From zone: untrust, To zone: trust
  Policy: p2, State: enabled, Index: 5, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
    Source addresses: any
    Destination addresses: any
    Source identities: role1, role2, role4
    Applications: any
    Action: permit, services-offload

```

show security policies (Device Identity)

```

user@host> show security policies
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
  Policy: dev-id-marketing, State: enabled, Index: 5, Scope Policy: 0,
Sequence number: 1
    Source addresses: any
    Destination addresses: any
    source-end-user-profile: marketing-profile
    Applications: any
    Action: permit

```

show security policies detail

```

user@host> show security policies detail
Default policy: deny-all
Policy: p1, action-type: permit, services-offload:enabled , State: enabled, Index:
4, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Description: The policy p1 is for the sales team
Sequence number: 1
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Destination addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Source identities:
  role1
  role2

```

```

role4
Application: any
  IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
  Source port range: [0-0]
  Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No
Policy statistics:
  Input bytes      :          18144          545 bps
  Initial direction:          9072          272 bps
  Reply direction  :          9072          272 bps
  Output bytes     :          18144          545 bps
  Initial direction:          9072          272 bps
  Reply direction  :          9072          272 bps
  Input packets    :           216           6 pps
  Initial direction:          108           3 bps
  Reply direction  :          108           3 bps
  Output packets   :           216           6 pps
  Initial direction:          108           3 bps
  Reply direction  :          108           3 bps
  Session rate     :          108           3 sps
  Active sessions  :           93
  Session deletions:           15
  Policy lookups   :          108
Policy: p2, action-type: permit, services-offload:enabled , State: enabled, Index:
5, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Description: The policy p2 is for the sales team
Sequence number: 1
From zone: untrust, To zone: trust
Source addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Destination addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Source identities:
role1
role2
role4
Application: any
  IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
  Source port range: [0-0]
  Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No

```

show security policies detail (TCP Options)

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name policy1 detail
node0:
-----
Policy: policy1, action-type: permit, State: enabled, Index: 7, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Sequence number: 2
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Destination addresses:
  any-ipv4(global): 0.0.0.0/0
  any-ipv6(global): ::/0
Application: any

```

```

IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
Source port range: [0-0]
Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No
Per policy TCP MSS: initial: 800, reverse: 900

```

show security policies policy-name (Negated Address)

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name p1
node0:
-----
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Policy: p1, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses(excluded): as1
Destination addresses(excluded): as2
Applications: any
Action: permit

```

show security policies policy-name detail (Negated Address)

```

user@host> show security policies policy-name p1 detail
node0:
-----
Policy: p1, action-type: permit, State: enabled, Index: 4, Scope Policy: 0
Policy Type: Configured
Sequence number: 1
From zone: trust, To zone: untrust
Source addresses(excluded):
  ad1(ad): 255.255.255.255/32
  ad2(ad): 198.51.100.1/24
  ad3(ad): 198.51.100.6 ~ 198.51.100.56
  ad4(ad): 192.0.2.8/24
  ad5(ad): 198.51.100.99 ~ 198.51.100.199
  ad6(ad): 203.0.113.9/24
  ad7(ad): 203.0.113.23/24
Destination addresses(excluded):
  ad13(ad2): 198.51.100.76/24
  ad12(ad2): 198.51.100.88/24
  ad11(ad2): 192.0.2.23 ~ 192.0.2.66
  ad10(ad2): 192.0.2.93
  ad9(ad2): 203.0.113.76 ~ 203.0.113.106
  ad8(ad2): 203.0.113.199
Application: any
IP protocol: 0, ALG: 0, Inactivity timeout: 0
Source port range: [0-0]
Destination port range: [0-0]
Per policy TCP Options: SYN check: No, SEQ check: No

```

show security policies global

```

user@host> show security policies global policy-name Pa
node0:
-----
Global policies:
Policy: Pa, State: enabled, Index: 5, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
From zones: zone1, zone2
To zones: zone3, zone4 Source addresses: any
Destination addresses: any
Applications: any

```

Action: permit

show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query counters

Syntax	show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query counters
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	<p>Display statistics on the counters maintained by the user query function. The output identifies the ClearPass webserver as the destination of the user query requests. It displays the number of requests sent from the SRX Series device to the ClearPass webserver and the number of responses that the SRX Series device received from it. You can use this command to identify that a problem exists—the number of responses received is less than the number of requests sent.—and then analyze and correct it.</p> <p>If there are no problems with the communication between the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) and the SRX Series device, the number of requests sent is equal to the number of responses received and the number of error responses.</p> <p><i>number-of-requests = number-of-responses + error-message-responses</i></p> <p>The user query function is part of the SRX Series integrated ClearPass authentication and enforcement feature. The SRX Series device can automatically send requests for individual user authentication and identity information to ClearPass in the event that ClearPass does not post that information to it. For this to occur, you must have configured the user query function.</p> <p>The SRX Series device exposes to ClearPass a Web API (webapi) that ClearPass uses to send POST request messages to it automatically. These messages contain user authentication and identity information.</p> <p>The user query function supplements use of the SRX Series Web API function.</p>
Options	authentication-source —Specify aruba-clearpass to identifies Aruba ClearPass as the authentication source.
Required Privilege Level	view
Output Fields	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Webserver Address—The IP address of the ClearPass webserver. • Access token—The token string that the SRX Series device obtains from ClearPass which allows the SRX Series device to query the ClearPass webserver for an individual user's authentication and identity information. • Requests sent number—A counter that shows the number of individual user authentication information queries that the SRX Series device sent to the ClearPass webserver. • Total response received number—A counter that shows the number of returns from the ClearPass webserver in response to the individual user authentication information

queries that the SRX Series device sent to it. The number of responses should match the number of requests unless an error occurred.

- Error response received number—The number errors that occurred in relation to requests.
- Time of last response—A timestamp showing when the last response from the ClearPass webserver was received.

Sample Output

show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query counters

```
user@host> show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query counters
```

```
Web server Address: 4.0.0.20
Access token: 433feffae5c3eb3ff8ffdc49f968b03437ca1ce5
Request sent number: 7
Total response received number: 7
Error response received number: 0
Time of last response: 2000-01-01 11:57:17
```


show service user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user-query status

Syntax	show service user-identification authentication-source <i>authentication-source</i> user-query status
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D30.
Description	Checks to determine if the ClearPass webserver is online. The SRX Series device sends user query requests to the ClearPass webserver. The user query function is part of the SRX Series ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature.
Options	<i>authentication-source</i> —Identifies the authentication source. For the integrated ClearPass feature, you must specify the predefined term aruba-clearpass to determine if the ClearPass webserver is online.
Required Privilege Level	view
List of Sample Output	command-name (optional-text) on page 525 command-name (optional-text) on page 525 command-name (optional-text) on page 525

Output Fields

Sample Output

command-name (optional-text)

```
user@host> command-name option1 option2
Paste router command output here
```

command-name (optional-text)

```
user@host> command-name option1 option2
Paste
router command output here
```

command-name (optional-text)

```
user@host> command-name option1 option2
Paste router command
output here
```

show services unified-access-control authentication-table

Syntax	show services unified-access-control authentication-table
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4. Options updated in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Description	<p>Display a summary of the authentication table entries configured from the IC Series UAC Appliance. Authentication tables store mappings between traffic sessions and Unified Access Control (UAC) roles. The IC Series appliance uses the roles specified in the mappings to help determine which UAC policies to apply to a session.</p> <p>Use this command when you have configured the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a UAC deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series appliance.</p> <p>You can also use this command to display the content of the authentication table in a user role firewall implementation. The table, pushed from a supporting UAC device, provides the user roles associated with incoming traffic.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• detail—Display a detailed view of all authentication table entries.• extended—Display a view of all authentication table entries with the user roles listed.• identifier <i>id</i>—Display all authentication table entries with the specified identifier number.• ip <i>source-ip-address</i>—Display any authentication table entry for the specified IP address.• role <i>role-name</i>—Display all authentication table entries for the specified role name.• user <i>username</i>—Display all authentication table entries for the specified user.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	<p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table on page 526</p> <p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table detail on page 527</p> <p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table extended on page 527</p> <p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table identifier <i>id</i> on page 527</p> <p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table ip on page 527</p> <p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table role on page 527</p> <p>show services unified-access-control authentication-table user <i>username</i> on page 527</p>

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control authentication-table

```
user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table
```

Id	Source IP	Username	Age	Role identifier
1	198.51.100.22	user1	0	0000000001.000005.0
Total: 1				

show services unified-access-control authentication-table detail

```

user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table detail
Identifier: 1
Source IP: 198.51.100.22
Username: john
Age: 0
Role identifier      Role name
0000000001.000005.0 Users
1113249951.100616.0 PersonalFirewall
1183670148.427197.0 UAC
Total: 1

```

show services unified-access-control authentication-table extended

```

user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table extended
Id   Source IP   Username   Age   Role name
3    10.214.161.195   johna     60    Users, PersonalFirewall
6    10.214.161.183   mayb     60    role-1
Total: 2

```

show services unified-access-control authentication-table identifier id

```

user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table identifier 1
Identifier: 1
Source IP: 10.214.161.195
Username: johna
Age: 0
Role identifier      Role name
0000000001.000005.0 Users
1113249951.100616.0 PersonalFirewall
1183670148.427197.0 UAC
Total: 1

```

show services unified-access-control authentication-table ip

```

user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table ip 10.214.161.183
Id   Source IP   Username   Age   Role identifier
8    10.214.161.183   mayb     0     1420298444.225667.0
Total: 1

```

show services unified-access-control authentication-table role

```

user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table role role-1
Id   Source IP   Username   Age   Role identifier
6    10.214.161.183   maybe    60    1420298444.225667.0
Total: 1

```

show services unified-access-control authentication-table user username

```

user@host>show services unified-access-control authentication-table user prasanta
Id   Source IP   Username   Age   Role identifier
7    10.214.161.195   paul1     0     0000000001.000005.0
Total: 1

```


show services user-identification authentication-table

Syntax show services user-identification authentication-table ip-address *ip-address* | authentication-source *authentication-source* (brief | domain *domain-name* (<enter> | brief | extensive) | group *group-name* (<enter> | brief | extensive) | user *user-name* (<enter> | brief | extensive)) all | active directory

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS release 12.3X48-D30.

Description Display the ClearPass authentication table contents for an individual user based on the IP address of the user's device, the entire ClearPass authentication table contents, users who belong to a domain, users who belong to a group, or a user's entry based on the user's name.

The ClearPass authentication table user entries include authentication and identity information that the SRX Series device obtains from the ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM). ClearPass, which is the authentication source for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature, posts the user authentication information to the SRX Series device. The SRX Series device UserID daemon synchronizes the ClearPass user authentication information from the Routing Engine authentication table, which includes entries from other authentication sources, to the ClearPass authentication table on the Packet Forwarding Engine.

To supplement posting from the ClearPass authentication table, the SRX Series device supports a user query function that allows you to obtain authentication information for an individual user.

Options *ip-address*—Displays information for a user identified by the IP address of their device.

authentication-source—The authentication source for the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature. For this feature, you must specify the value *aruba-clearpass*.

Specify the following identifiers to control the degree and kind of information to display:

brief—The show command displays brief information for ClearPass authentication table user entries. For each domain, it displays the domain name and the number of users who belong to it. For each user, it shows the user's device IP address, username, groups that the user belongs to that are referenced by a security policy, and the state of the user entry.

domain —Specifies the name of domain whose user member information you want to view. You can specify extensive with domain to show extensive information for user entries for all of its members.

extensive—Shows extensive information for the ClearPass authentication table user entries. For each domain, extensive displays the domain name and the number of users who belong to it. For each user, it shows the user's device IP address, username, the groups that the user belongs to, the groups that the user belongs to that are

referenced by a security policy, the state of the user entry, the authentication source (Aruba ClearPass), the access start date and time, a timestamp showing the last time the entry was updated, and the age after which time the entry expires.

You can specify `extensive` without a qualifying identifier to display extensive information for all of the table's user entries. You can specify it in conjunction with `domain`, `group`, or `user` to display extensive information for that category of users—that is, all members of the domain, all users who belong to the group, or an individual user identified by their username.

group—Specifies the name of the group whose member information you want to view. You can specify `extensive` with `group` to show extensive information for users who belong to the group.

user—Specifies the name of the user whose information you want to view. You can specify `extensive` to show extensive information for that user.

Default: `brief`

Required Privilege Level

`view`

List of Sample Output

[show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass on page 531](#)

[show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass domain on page 533](#)

[show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass group on page 534](#)

[show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass user on page 536](#)

Field Name	Field Description
Domain Output Fields	Name of the domain that the users belong to. If the CPPM does not send domain information to the SRX Series device for a user, the user belongs to the GLOBAL domain.
Total entries	Number of user entries in the ClearPass authentication table by domain.
For each entry:	
Source IP	The IP address of the user's device. If a user is logged in to the network with more than one device, a separate entry is created for the user for each device. It showing the devices IP address.
username	The name by which the user is logged in to the network.
Groups	A list of the groups that the user belongs to. The list can include a group that identifies the device posture.
State	<p>The state of the entry. There are four states for an authentication entry: initial, valid, invalid, and pending.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An initial state is a temporary state, and it can be created from either a valid or an invalid entry. • A valid state indicates that the authentication entry has a valid IP address, domain, and username. • An invalid state indicates that the entry does not have a valid IP address, domain, and username. This can happen when the SRX Series device does not receive a query response from the CPPM. If the entry is invalid, it is put in the null domain. • A pending state indicates that the entry was created after the user query was sent and before the response was received.
Source	The name of the authentication source. For the Integrated ClearPass Authentication and Enforcement feature, this value is always aruba-clearpass.
Access start date	The date when the authentication entry was created by the SRX Series device.
Access start time	The time when the authentication entry was created by the SRX Series device.
Last updated timestamp	The time when ClearPass creates the user information. This value is taken from the timestamp field in the user information posted by ClearPass to the SRX Series device.
Age time:	The time after which the entry expires, as configured by the authentication-entry-timeout statement. If a value of 0 was specified, the entry never expires. When an expiration time is reached, the SRX Series device deletes the user entry from the ClearPass authentication table.

Sample Output

show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass

Note that in the following example, the output would show the same results whether or not you specified brief. (The default behavior is to display brief output.)

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass brief
```

In this case, if there was more than one domain configured, the output would show the following kind of information for each domain.

```
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source IP      Username      groups(Ref by policy)      state
203.0.113.21   viki2         accounting-grp-and-company-dev Valid
203.0.113.89   abew1         marketing-access-limited-grp Valid
203.0.113.52   jxchan        marketing-access-for-pcs-limit Valid
203.0.113.53   lchen1        corporate-limited          Valid
203.0.113.54   guest1        Valid
203.0.113.55   guest2        Valid
```

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass extensive
```

```
Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source-ip: 203.0.113.21
Username: viki2
Groups:posture-healthy, accounting-grp, accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:20:30
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:02:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.89
Username: abew1
Groups:posture-unknown, marketing-access-limited-grp, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-limited-grp
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:31:40
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:18:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.52
Username: jxchan
Groups:posture-healthy, marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
marketing-general, sales-limited, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
corporate-limited
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:22:48
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:46:21
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.53
Username: lchen1
Groups:posture-healthy, human-resources-grp, accounting-limited,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:corporate-limited
```



```

State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:21:37
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:41:18
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.54
Username: guest1
Groups:posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:10
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.55
Username: guest2
Groups:posture-healthy, guest-device-byod, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:21
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:52:44
Age time: 0

```

show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass domain

Note that in the following example the output would show the same results whether or not you specified brief. The default behavior is to display brief output.

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass domain GLOBAL brief
```

```

Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source IP      Username      groups(Ref by policy)      state
203.0.113.21   viki2        accounting-grp-and-company-dev Valid
203.0.113.89   abew1        marketing-access-limited-grp Valid
203.0.113.52   jxchan       marketing-access-for-pcs-limit Valid
203.0.113.53   lchen1       corporate-limited          Valid
203.0.113.54   guest1       Valid
203.0.113.55   guest2       Valid

```

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass domain GLOBAL extensive
```

```

Domain: GLOBAL
Total entries: 6
Source-ip: 203.0.113.21
Username: viki2
Groups:posture-healthy, accounting-grp, accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:20:30
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:02:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.89

```

```

Username: abew1
Groups:posture-unknown, marketing-access-limited-grp, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-limited-grp
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:31:40
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:18:48
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.52
Username: jxchan
Groups:posture-healthy, marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
marketing-general, sales-limited, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
corporate-limited
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:22:48
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:46:21
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.53
Username: lchen1
Groups:posture-healthy, human-resources-grp, accounting-limited,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]
Groups referenced by policy:corporate-limited
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:21:37
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:41:18
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.54
Username: guest1
Groups:posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:10
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47
Age time: 0
Source-ip: 203.0.113.55
Username: guest2
Groups:posture-healthy, guest-device-byod, [user authenticated]
State: Valid
Source: Aruba ClearPass
Access start date: 2016-03-08
Access start time: 17:23:21
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:52:44
Age time: 0

```

show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass group

Note that in the following example, the output would show the same results whether or not you specified brief. (The default behavior is to display brief output.)

```

user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass group posture-healthy brief

```

```

Domain: GLOBAL

```

Source IP	Username	groups(Ref by policy)	state
203.0.113.21	viki2	accounting-grp-and-company-dev	Valid
203.0.113.52	jxchan	marketing-access-for-pcs-limit	Valid
203.0.113.53	lchen1	corporate-limited	Valid
203.0.113.54	guest1		Valid
203.0.113.55	guest2		Valid

user@host> show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source
aruba-clearpass group posture-healthy extensive

Domain: GLOBAL

Source-ip: 203.0.113.21

Username: viki2

Groups:posture-healthy, accounting-grp, accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]

Groups referenced by policy:accounting-grp-and-company-device,
corporate-limited

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2016-03-08

Access start time: 17:20:30

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:02:48

Age time: 0

Source-ip: 203.0.113.52

Username: jxchan

Groups:posture-healthy, marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
marketing-general, sales-limited, corporate-limited, [user authenticated]

Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-for-pcs-limited-group,
corporate-limited

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2016-03-08

Access start time: 17:22:48

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:46:21

Age time: 0

Source-ip: 203.0.113.53

Username: lchen1

Groups:posture-healthy, human-resources-grp, accounting-limited,
corporate-limited, [user authenticated]

Groups referenced by policy:corporate-limited

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2016-03-08

Access start time: 17:21:37

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:41:18

Age time: 0

Source-ip: 203.0.113.54

Username: guest1

Groups:posture-healthy, guest, [user authenticated]

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2016-03-08

Access start time: 17:23:10

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:50:47

Age time: 0

Source-ip: 203.0.113.55

Username: guest2

Groups:posture-healthy, guest-device-byod, [user authenticated]

State: Valid

Source: Aruba ClearPass

Access start date: 2016-03-08

Access start time: 17:23:21

Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 05:52:44
Age time: 0

Sample Output

show services user-identification authentication-table authentication-source aruba-clearpass user

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user brief  
abew1
```

Domain: GLOBAL			
Source IP	Username	groups(Ref by policy)	state
203.0.113.89	abew1	marketing-access-limited-grp	Valid

```
user@host> show services user-identification authentication-source aruba-clearpass user  
extensive abew1
```

```
Domain: GLOBAL  
Source-ip: 203.0.113.89  
Username: abew1  
Groups:posture-unknown, marketing-access-limited-grp, [user authenticated]  
Groups referenced by policy:marketing-access-limited-grp  
State: Valid  
Source: Aruba ClearPass  
Access start date: 2016-03-08  
Access start time: 17:31:40  
Last updated timestamp: 2015-12-22 04:18:48  
Age time: 0
```

show services user-identification device-information table

Syntax	show services user-identification device-information table all (brief domain extensive) device-id <i>device-id</i> (brief domain extensive) ip-address <i>ip-address</i>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 5.1X49-D70.
Description	<p>Display the contents of the device identity authentication table. The device identity authentication table includes entries for authenticated devices whose information is obtained from external authentication sources. A device identity entry contains the device's IP address, the device ID, and a list of groups that the device belongs to. It also contains attributes that are configured in the device identity profile—for example, the type of device, the vendor, and the operating system that is running on the device and its version.</p> <p>The device identity authentication table is separate from the Active Directory authentication table or any other local authentication table that is used for Junos OS features, or for specific third-party authentication sources. Also, unlike local user authentication tables, which are specific to an authentication source, the device identity authentication table holds device identity information for devices authenticated by different sources.</p> <p>Only one authentication source, such as Active Directory, can be active at a time. A result of this requirement is that there is less demand on the system to process information.</p>
Options	<p>all—Display information for all authenticated devices with entries in the table.</p> <p>device-id—Display information for the authenticated device whose device ID is specified.</p> <p>ip-address—Display information for the authenticated device whose IP address is specified.</p> <p>brief—Display terse information for the entries in the device identity authentication table entries. You can specify brief as a keyword to the parameters all and device-id.</p> <p>domain —Display the name of domain and information for all authenticated devices that belong to the domain. You can specify domain as a keyword to the parameters all and device-id.</p> <p>extensive—Display extensive information for all of the authenticated devices for which there are table entries. It displays the domain name, the IP address of the device, the device's ID, the device category and vendor, the device type, and the operating system running on the device and its version.</p>
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding the Device Identity Attributes and Profiles for the Integrated User Firewall Device Identity Authentication Feature on page 194

- [Understanding the Device Identity Authentication Table and Its Entries on page 198](#)
- [Understanding Access Control to Network Resources Based on Device Identity Information on page 191](#)
- [authentication-source \(Services User Identification Device Identity\) on page 316](#)
- [source-end-user-profile on page 413](#)

Table 37 show services user-identification device-information table Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Domain name	The name of the domain to which the devices belong.
NOTE: For each authenticated device, the following information is displayed when the parameter all is specified after table and it is modified by the keyword extensive .	
Source IP address	The IP address of the device.
Device ID	The ID assigned to the device.
Device-Groups	The groups to which the device belongs.
device-category	The kind of device. For example, the device might be a laptop. You configured this value as part of the device identity profile.
device-vendor	The maker of the device. For example, the device vendor might be Lenovo.
device-type	The device type. If this device is a laptop made by Lenovo, it might be of type thinkpad-t430.
device-os	The operating system that is running on the device. The operating system might be Windows.
device-os-version	The version of the operating system running on the device. For example, for Windows, this might be 7.1.
Location1	The location where the device is being used. The location might be specified as United States.
Referred by	The security policy that refers to the device in its source-end-user-profile field. The source-end-user-profile that you configure might pertain to a group of devices or a single device.

Sample Output

show services user-identification device-information table

```

user@host> show services user-identification device-information table all extensive
Domain: example.net
Total entries: 3
Source IP:192.0.2.11
Device ID: dev01
Device-Groups: device_group01, device_group02, device_group03, device_group04,

```

```
device_group05
  device-category: laptop
  device-vendor: lenovo
  device-type: thinkpad-t430
  device-os: windows
  device-os-version: 7.1
  Location1: us1
  Referred by: My-pf_0
Source IP: 192.0.2.12
Device ID: dev02
Device-Groups: device_group06, device_group07, device_group08, device_group09,
device_group10
  device-category: laptop
  device-vendor: lenovo
  device-type: thinkpad-t430
  device-os: windows
  device-os-version: 7.1
  Location1: us1
  Referred by: My-pf_0
Source IP: 192.0.2.14
Device ID: dev03
Device-Groups: device_group01, device_group02, device_group03, device_group04,
device_group05
  device-category: laptop
  device-vendor: lenovo
  device-type: thinkpad-t430
  device-os: windows
  device-os-version: 7.1
  Location1: us1
  Referred by: My-pf_0
```

show services unified-access-control counters

Syntax `show services unified-access-control counters`

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10.

Description Display the number of sessions allowed, denied, and terminated by the Unified Access Control (UAC) service when invoked by a firewall policy with the uac-policy action. Counts are reported for each action taken by UAC. Sessions that were allowed, denied, or terminated by other firewall policy actions are not included in these statistics.

On SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices, UAC counts are grouped and displayed for each PIC on the device. On SRX 300, SRX 320, SRX 340, SRX 345 SRX Series devices, UAC counts are accumulated by device only. There is no PIC specification on these devices.

Required Privilege Level view

Related Documentation

- [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)

List of Sample Output [show services unified-access-control counters on page 541](#)

Output Fields [Table 38 on page 540](#) lists the output fields for the **show services unified-access-control counters** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 38: show services unified-access-control counters Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
PIC	If applicable, the number of each PIC implementing UAC. UAC statistics are grouped by PIC.
Sessions allowed	The sessions permitted by UAC when invoked by a user role firewall policy.
Policy action	Number of sessions permitted by UAC based on the UAC policy action.
Timeout action	Number of sessions permitted by the timeout action while the SRX was disconnected from the UAC device.
Sessions denied	The sessions denied by UAC when invoked by a user role firewall policy.
Unauthenticated	Number of sessions denied by UAC because the user was not authenticated.
Policy action	Number of sessions denied by UAC based on the UAC policy action.
Policy not matched	Number of sessions denied because no UAC policy match was found.

Table 38: show services unified-access-control counters Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Timeout action	Number of sessions denied by the timeout action while the SRX was disconnected from the access control device.
Sessions terminated	The sessions originally permitted that were later terminated.
Reevaluation	Number of sessions terminated due to a change in the UAC user roles associated with the session.
Signout	Number of sessions terminated due to the user signing out.

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control counters

```

user@host> show services unified-access-control counters
PIC: fpc2.pic0
  Sessions allowed
    Policy action: 0
    Timeout action: 0
  Sessions denied
    Unauthenticated: 0
    Policy action: 0
    Policy not matched: 0
    Timeout action: 0
  Sessions terminated
    Reevaluation: 0
    Signout: 0

```

Statistics on SRX 300, SRX 320, SRX 340, and SRX 345 devices are accumulated by device only. There is no PIC specification on these devices.

```

user@host> show services unified-access-control counters
Sessions allowed
  Policy action: 0
  Timeout action: 0
Sessions denied
  Unauthenticated: 0
  Policy action: 0
  Policy not matched: 0
  Timeout action: 0
Sessions terminated
  Reevaluation: 0
  Signout: 0

```

show services unified-access-control policies

Syntax	show services unified-access-control policies
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.
Description	<p>Display a summary of resource access policies configured from the IC Series UAC Appliance.</p> <p>Use this command when you have configured the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series appliance.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> detail—Display a detailed view of all policies. identifier <i>id</i>—Display information about a specific policy by identification number.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show services unified-access-control policies on page 542 show services unified-access-control policies detail on page 542 show services unified-access-control policies identifier 1 on page 543

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control policies

```

user@host> services unified-access-control policies
Id      Resource                Action Apply      Role identifier
1       10.100.15.0/24:*        allow selected  1113249951.100616.0
2       10.100.17.0/24:*        deny  all

```

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control policies detail

```

user@host> services unified-access-control policies detail
Identifier: 1
Resource: 10.100.15.0/24:*
Resource: 10.100.16.23-10.100.16.60:*
Action: allow
Apply: selected
Role identifier      Role name
1113249951.100616.0 Personal Firewall
1112927873.881659.0 Antivirus
1183670148.427197.0 UAC
Identifier: 2

```

```
Resource: 10.100.17.0/24:*
Resource: 10.100.16.23-10.100.16.60:*
Resource: 10.100.18.0/24:*
Action: deny
Apply: all
```

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control policies identifier 1

```
user@host> show services unified-access-control policies identifier 1
Identifier: 1
Resource: 10.100.15.0/24:*
Resource: 10.100.16.23-10.100.16.60:*
Action: allow
Apply: selected
Role identifier      Role name
1113249951.100616.0 Personal Firewall
1112927873.881659.0 Antivirus
1183670148.427197.0 UAC
```

show services unified-access-control roles

Syntax	show services unified-access-control roles
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Description	When implementing user role firewall, display a summary of the roles that have been pushed to the SRX Series device from the access control service.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Security Basics Guide for Security Devices</i> Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7
List of Sample Output	show services unified-access-control roles on page 544
Output Fields	Table 39 on page 544 lists the output fields for the show services unified-access-control roles command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 39: show services unified-access-control roles Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Name	Name of the user role.
Identifier	Unique identifier associated with the specified user role.
Total	Total number of user roles specified in the table.

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control roles

```

user@host> show services unified-access-control roles
Name                               Identifier
Users                             0000000001.000005.0
admin-1                           1420298444.225667.0
Total: 2

```

show services unified-access-control status

Syntax show services unified-access-control status

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.4.

Description Display the status of the connection between the SRX Series device and the IC Series UAC Appliance as well as statistics to help debug connections to the IC Series appliance.

Use this command when you have configured the SRX Series device to act as a Junos OS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment. When deployed as a Junos OS Enforcer, the SRX Series device enforces the policies that are defined on the UAC's IC Series appliance.

Required Privilege Level view

Related Documentation • [Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 7](#)

List of Sample Output [show services unified-access-control status on page 545](#)

Sample Output

show services unified-access-control status

```
user@host> show services unified-access-control status
Host      Address      Port  Interface  State
dev106vm26 10.64.11.106 11123 ge-0/0/0.0 connected
dev107vm26 10.64.11.106 11123 ge-0/0/0.0 closed
```

show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table

Syntax	show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table (all group <i>name</i> ip-address <i>ip-address</i> user <i>name</i> <domain <i>name</i> > <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)> <brief extensive>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Display information about all entries in the Active Directory authentication table used in the integrated user firewall feature, or for a specific group, IP address or user.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Summary of the authentication entry information.• group <i>group-name</i>—Display the entries from the authentication table for the specified group.• ip-address <i>ip-address</i>—Display the entries from the authentication table for the specified IP address.• user <i>name</i>—Display the entries from the authentication table for the specified username.• domain <i>name</i>—(Optional) Display the summary, group, or user entries for the specified domain.• node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display the summary, IP address, or user entries for a specific node.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.• all—Display information about all nodes.• local—Display information about the local node.• primary—Display information about the primary node.• brief extensive—Display the specified level of output (the default is brief).
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear services user-identification active-directory-access on page 480• show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status on page 550
List of Sample Output	show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table ip-address <ip-address> on page 547 show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all on page 548

[show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all domain on page 548](#)
[show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all extensive on page 548](#)

Output Fields Table 40 on page 547 lists the output fields for the **show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all extensive** command.

Table 40: show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all extensive Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Source IP	IP address for user who is logged in through the domain controller.
Username	ID of the user who is logged in through the domain controller.
Groups	Groups to which the user is associated in the domain controller.
State	States include the following: Pending—This IP address is being probed. Initial—The authentication entry is only received from the WMIC daemon, not pushed to the Packet Forwarding Engine. Valid—The authentication entry is pushed to the Packet Forwarding Engine. Invalid—The PC probe failed.
Access start date	Date that the authentication entry was created.
Access start time	Time that the authentication entry was created.
Age time	Number of minutes after which the authentication entry will time out.

Sample Output

[show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table ip-address <ip-address>](#)

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table ip-address 192.0.2.3
Domain: ad02.net
Source-ip: 192.0.2.3
Username: user1
Groups:group1
State: Valid
Source: wmic
Access start date: 2014-03-10
Access start time: 13:59:56
Age time: 1437
```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table all
Domain: www.engineering-example.net
Total count: 2
Source IP      Username      Groups        State
10.1.1.2       u2            r1, r3, r4    initial
10.1.1.3       u3            r5, r6, r4    pending

Domain: www.hr-example.net
Total count: 2
Source IP      Username      Groups        State
10.1.1.5       u4            r1, r3, r4    initial
10.1.1.6       u5            r5, r6, r4    pending
```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all domain

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table all domain www.mycompany-example.com
Domain: www.mycompany-example.com
Total count: 2
Source IP      Username      Groups        State
10.1.1.2       u2            r1, r3, r4    initial
10.1.1.3       u3            r5, r6, r4    pending
```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table all extensive

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access
active-directory-authentication-table all extensive
Domain: www.mycompany-example.com
Total entries: 2

Source IP: 10.1.1.2
Username: u2
Groups: r1, r3, r4
State: initial
Access start date: 2013-05-22
Access start time: 10:56:58
Age time: 20 min

Source IP: 10.1.1.3
Username: u3
Groups: r5, r6, r4
State: pending
Access start date: 2013-05-22
Access start time: 10:56:58
Age time: 20 min

Domain: www.hr-example.net
Total entries: 2

Source IP: 10.1.1.2
```


Username: u2
Groups: r1, r3, r4
State: initial
Access start date: 2013-05-22
Access start time: 10:56:58
Age time: 20 min

Source IP: 10.1.1.3
Username: u3
Groups: r5, r6, r4
State: pending
Access start date: 2013-05-22
Access start time: 10:56:58
Age time: 20

show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status

Syntax	show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status <domain <i>name</i> > <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)> <brief extensive>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Display status information for the Active Directory domain controllers configured for the integrated user firewall feature.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • domain <i>name</i>—(Optional) Display the status of the domain controllers for a specific domain. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display the status of the domain controllers for a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node. • brief extensive—Display the specified level of output (the default is brief).
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • active-directory-access on page 304 • show services user-identification active-directory-access active-directory-authentication-table on page 546
List of Sample Output	show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status on page 551 show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status brief domain on page 551 show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status extensive domain on page 551
Output Fields	Table 41 on page 550 lists the output fields for the show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status command.

Table 41: show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Domain controller	Domain controller name.

Table 41: show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller Output Fields (*continued*)

Field Name	Field Description
Address	IP address of the domain controller.
Status	Connection status of the domain controller: connected or disconnected.
Reason	Reason for a disconnected status: network issue, authentication failed, or host unreachable.

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status

Displays brief information for domain controllers in all configured domains.

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status
Domain: example-domain-controller.com
  Domain controller  Address      Status
  DC1               203.0.113.51 Connected
  DC2               203.0.113.12 Connected
  DC3               203.0.113.6  Connected
  DC4               203.0.113.11 Disconnected
  DC5               203.0.113.7  Disconnected

Domain: example-domain
  Domain controller  Address      Status
  example-domain10   10.1.1.1     Disconnected
  example-domain20   10.2.2.2     Disconnected
  example-domain30   10.3.3.3     Disconnected
```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status brief domain

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status
brief domain example-domain-controller.com
Domain: example-domain-controller.com
  Domain controller  Address      Status
  DC1               203.0.113.51 Connected
  DC2               203.0.113.12 Connected
  DC3               203.0.113.6  Connected
  DC4               203.0.113.11 Disconnected
  DC5               203.0.113.7  Disconnected
```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status extensive domain

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access domain-controller status
extensive domain example-domain
Domain: example-domain
  Domain controller: example-domain10
```

Address: 10.1.1.1
Status: Disconnected
Reason: Network issue
Domain controller: example-domain20
Address: 10.2.2.2
Status: Disconnected
Reason: Authentication failed
Domain controller: example-domain30
Address: 10.3.3.3
Status: Disconnected
Reason: Host unreachable

show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics

Syntax	show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics (ip-user-mapping ip-user-probe user-group-mapping) <domain <i>name</i> >
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Display statistics about IP address-to-user mapping, user-to-group mapping, and IP user probes used for the integrated user firewall feature. If two domains are configured, output is provided per domain.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ip-user-mapping—Number of total queries and failed queries to the event log on the domain controller for address-to-user mappings. Includes additional information, such as the log scan interval and the timestamp of the last event read. • ip-user-probe—Number of total PC probes and failed probes. • user-group-mapping—Number of total queries and failed queries to the LDAP server for user-to-group mappings • domain <i>name</i>—(Optional) Display the statistics for the specified domain.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • clear services user-identification active-directory-access on page 480 • ip-user-mapping on page 366 • request services user-identification active-directory-access ip-user-probe on page 484 • user-group-mapping on page 447
List of Sample Output	show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping on page 554 show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe on page 555 show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping on page 555
Output Fields	Table 42 on page 553 lists the output fields for the show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping command.

Table 42: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Host	IP address of the domain controller.

Table 42: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Initial event log timespan	When the feature is first deployed, the number of previous hours for which the event log on the domain controller is read. A one means the last hour of the event log is read.
Eventlog scan interval	Number of seconds between event log scans.
Total log query number	Count of the queries on the event log.
Failed log query number	Count of the failed queries on the event log.
Log read number	Count of the times the event log was read.
Latest timestamp	Year:month:date:hours:minutes:seconds is the timestamp taken from the event log.

[Table 43 on page 554](#) lists the output fields for the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe** command.

Table 43: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Total user probe number	Count of the probes of IP addresses to get IP address-to-user mappings.
Failed user probe number	Count of failed probe attempts.

[Table 44 on page 554](#) lists the output fields for the **show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping** command.

Table 44: show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Host	IP address and port being queried.
Total query number	Count of queries.
Failed query number	Count of failed query attempts.

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-mapping
Domain: example-domain1.com
Host: 192.0.2.192
```

```

Initial event log timespan : 1
Eventlog scan interval : 60
Total log query number : 240
Failed log query number : 0
Log read number : 838
Latest timestamp :2013-10-11:15:11:54
Host: 192.0.2.50
Initial event log timespan : 1
Eventlog scan interval : 60
Total log query number : 273
Failed log query number : 0
Log read number : 2012
Latest timestamp :2013-10-11:15:11:23
Domain: example-domain2.com
Host: 192.0.2.39
Initial event log timespan : 1
Eventlog scan interval : 10
Total log query number : 1596
Failed log query number : 0
Log read number : 6691
Latest timestamp :2013-10-11:15:25:03
Host: 192.0.2.1
Initial event log timespan : 1
Eventlog scan interval : 10
Total log query number : 2628
Failed log query number : 0
Log read number : 114953
Latest timestamp :2013-10-11:15:24:01

```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe

```

user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics ip-user-probe
Domain: example-domain3.com
Total user probe number : 176116
Failed user probe number : 916
Domain: example-domain3.com
Total user probe number : 17632
Failed user probe number : 342

```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics user-group-mapping

```

user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access statistics
user-group-mapping
Domain: example-domain3.com
Host: 192.0.2.1 Port 389
Total query number : 176116
Failed query number : 916
Domain: example-domain3.com
Host: 192.0.2.5 Port 389
Total query number : 8965

```

show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping

Syntax	show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping (group <i>name</i> status user <i>name</i>) domain <i>name</i>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X47-D10.
Description	Display user-to-group mapping information used in the integrated user firewall feature. Note that the LDAP server is often part of the domain controller.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • group <i>group-name</i>—Display the users mapped to the specified group. • status—Display the status of the last query to the LDAP server for user-group mapping. • user <i>name</i>—Display the groups for the specified username. • domain <i>name</i>—(Optional) Display the group, status, or user information for the specified domain.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LDAP Functionality in Integrated User Firewall on page 152 • user-group-mapping on page 447
List of Sample Output	show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group domain on page 557 show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status on page 557 show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping user on page 558
Output Fields	Table 45 on page 556 lists the output fields for the show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group command.

Table 45: show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Domain	Domain of the specified group.
Users	Username mapped to the specified group.

[Table 46 on page 557](#) lists the output fields for the **show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status** command.

Table 46: show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Domain	Domain for which the status is displayed.
LDAP server	IP address of the LDAP server.
Port	Port number on the LDAP server.
Last-query-status	Status of the last query from the SRX Series device.
Last-query-time	Year-month-date:hour:minutes:seconds when the SRX device last queried the LDAP server.

Table 47 on page 557 lists the output fields for the **show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping user** command.

Table 47: show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping user Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Domain controller	Domain controller about which the user information is displayed.
Groups	Groups to which the user belongs.
Referenced by policy	Groups to which the user belongs and that are referenced by a firewall policy.

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group domain

```

user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group
finance domain www.apac-acme.net
show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping group
finance-group
Domain: example-domain.net
Users: user1, user2
Domain: example2.domain.net
Users: user3

```

Sample Output

show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status

```

user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping status
Domain: example-domain.net
LDAP server  Port      Last-query-status  Last-query-time
192.0.2.87    389      Query success      2014-02-07:15:50:52

Domain: example2.domain.net

```

LDAP server	Port	Last-query-status	Last-query-time
192.0.2.144	389	Idle	0

Sample Output

`show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping user`

```
user@host> show services user-identification active-directory-access user-group-mapping user
user1
Domain example-domain.net
Groups: Dev, NAT, SBU
Referenced by policy: SBU
Domain: example2.domain.net
Groups: HR, USA
```